

This book is a presentation of a bilingual text with student aids, built using open-source software. For information about how the book is intended to be used and why it's designed the way it is, see:

<https://bitbucket.org/ben-crowell/ransom/src/master/README.md>

rev. December 26, 2025

The Greek text is based on the edition by Marchant, 1910. The English translation is by Dakyns, 1909, via Project Gutenberg.

Text I've written, such as notes and glosses, is CC-BY-SA 4.0. Glosses taken verbatim from Cunliffe or White and Morgan are in the public domain, as are the LSJ dictionary entries. Glosses taken verbatim from Wiktionary are CC-BY-SA 3.0. US law does not allow copy-righting of grammatical facts such as part-of-speech tagging and does not give any additional protection to databases beyond the normal protection of copyright.

Text I've written, such as notes and glosses, is (c) 2025 Benjamin Crowell and CC-BY-SA 4.0. Glosses taken verbatim from Cunliffe or White and Morgan are in the public domain, as are the LSJ dictionary entries. Glosses taken verbatim from Wiktionary are CC-BY-SA 3.0. US law does not allow copy-righting of grammatical facts such as part-of-speech tagging and does not give any additional protection to databases beyond the normal protection of copyright.



*vocabulary*

**ἄθροίζω** press close together; (mid)  
muster

**ἀπομάχομαι** fight off

**βασίλεια** noblewoman

**βασίλειος** kingly

**δασμός** portion, tax, tribute

**διαπέμπω** send out/over

**ἐκπλήσσω** panic, be knocked out

~plectrum

**ἐννοέω** consider

**ἐνταῦθα** there, here

**κατασκέπτομαι** inspect, explore

~skeptic

**κατασκευή** fixed assets; condition

**οἰκοδομέω** build, build a house

**ὀκνέω** shrink from, hesitate; worry

**ὁμός** same ~homoerotic

**ὁμοῦ** together

**ὁμόω** unite ~homoerotic

**παραγίγνομαι** be beside, attend

~genus

**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

**συντάσσω** gather, assemble ~syntax

**τλάω** take upon oneself ~talent

**ὑποχωρέω** recoil ~heir

## 3

## 3.1

Ὁ Μὲν δὴ Κῦρος ἐν τούτοις ἦν· ὁ δὲ Ἀρμένιος ὡς ἤκουσε τοῦ ἀγγέλου τὰ παρὰ Κύρου, ἐξεπλάγη, ἐννοήσας ὅτι ἀδικοίη καὶ τὸν δασμὸν λείπων καὶ τὸ στράτευμα οὐ πέμπων, καὶ τὸ μέγιστον, ἐφοβείτο, ὅτι ὀφθήσεσθαι ἔμελλε τὰ βασιλεία οἰκοδομεῖν ἀρχόμενος ὡς ἂν ἱκανὰ ἀπομάχεσθαι εἴη. διὰ ταῦτα δὴ πάντα ὀκνῶν ἅμα μὲν διέπεμπεν ἀθροίζων τὴν ἑαυτοῦ δύναμιν, ἅμα δ' ἔπεμπεν εἰς τὰ ὄρη τὸν νεώτερον υἱὸν Σάβαριν καὶ τὰς γυναῖκας, τὴν τε ἑαυτοῦ καὶ τὴν τοῦ υἱοῦ, καὶ τὰς θυγατέρας· καὶ κόσμον δὲ καὶ κατασκευὴν τὴν πλείστου ἀξίαν συναπέπεμπε προπομποὺς δοὺς αὐτοῖς. αὐτὸς δὲ ἅμα μὲν κατασκεψομένους ἔπεμπε τί πράττοι Κῦρος, ἅμα δὲ συνέταττε τοὺς παραγιγνομένους τῶν Ἀρμενίων· καὶ ταχὺ παρήσαν ἄλλοι λέγοντες ὅτι καὶ δὴ αὐτὸς ὁμοῦ. ἐνταῦθα δὴ οὐκέτι ἔτλη εἰς χεῖρας ἐλθεῖν, ἀλλ' ὑπεχώρει. ὡς δὲ τοῦτ' εἶδον ποιήσαντα αὐτὸν οἱ Ἀρμένιοι,

## 3

## 3.1

Ὁ Μὲν δὴ Κῦρος ἐν τούτοις ἦν· ὁ δὲ Ἀρμένιος ὡς  
 ἤκουσε τοῦ |messenger ἀπαρὰ Κύρου, |panic, be|consider  
 |knocked out  
 ὅτι |be, do wrong; wrong|portion, |leave καὶ τὸ |army  
 |someone |tax,  
 οὐ πέμπων, καὶ τὸ μεγίστον, |tribute |scare, scare  
 , ὅτι ὀφθήσεται  
 ἐμελλε τὰ βασιλεία |build, build ἀρχόμενος ὡς ἂν |sufficient; fit, em-  
 |a house |powered  
 |fight off εἴη. διὰ ταῦτα δὴ πάντα |hesitate; ἅμα  
 |worry  
 μὲν |send out/over|press close together; τοῦ δύναμιν, ἅμα δ'  
 |(mid) muster  
 ἔπεμπεν εἰς τὰ |mountain |young; neuter: ἔν Σάβαριν καὶ  
 |recently  
 τὰς γυναῖκας, τήν τε ἑαυτοῦ καὶ τήν τοῦ υἱοῦ, καὶ τὰς  
 |daughter καὶ |order; καὶ |fixed assets; τήν πλείστου  
 |adornment |condition  
 ἀξίαν συναπέπεμπε προπομπούς δούς αὐτοῖς. αὐτὸς δὲ  
 ἅμα μὲν |inspect, explore ἔπεμπε τί πράττοι Κῦρος, ἅμα  
 δὲ |gather, τοὺς |be beside, attend τῶν Ἀρμενίων· καὶ  
 |assemble  
 ταχὺ παρήσαν ἄλλοι λέγοντες ὅτι καὶ δὴ αὐτὸς ὁμοῦ.  
 |there, here ἢ |no more|take upon oneself ἔλθειν, ἀλλ' |recoil  
 ὡς δὲ τοῦτ' εἶδον ποιήσαντα αὐτὸν οἱ Ἀρμένιοι,

**3****3.1**

Thus Cyrus made his preparations. But the Armenian, when he heard what the messenger had to say, was terror-stricken: he knew the wrong he had done in neglecting the tribute and withholding the troops, and, above all, he was afraid it would be discovered that he was beginning to put his palace in a fit state for defence. Therefore, with much trepidation, he began to collect his own forces, and at the same time he sent his younger son Sabaris into the hills with the women, his own wife, and the wife of his elder son and his daughters, taking the best of their ornaments and furniture with them and an escort to be their guide. Meanwhile he despatched a party to discover what Cyrus was doing, and organised all the Armenian contingents as they came in. But it was not long before other messengers arrived, saying that Cyrus himself was actually at hand. Then his courage forsook him; he dared not come to blows and he withdrew. As soon as the recruits

*vocabulary*

**ἄθροίζω** press close together; (mid)  
muster

**ἄλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix

**ἀπορέω** be confused, distressed

**ἄρnuμαι** get, win

**ἀφοράω** look away, at ~panorama

**διαδιδράσκω** escape

**διαθέω** run around

**ἕζομαι** act: set, seat; pass: sit down, sit  
up ~sit

**ἐκποδών** out of the way

**ἐμπίπτω** fall into; attack ~petal

**ἔρομαι** ask a question, ask about, go  
searching through

**καθίημι** (ιι) speed down upon; take  
down ~jet

**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon

**καταμένω** stay; not change

**καταφεύγω** resort to, flee to, appeal to  
~fugitive

**κῆρυξ** -κος (m) henchman, functionary

**κραυγή** screaming, shouting

**λιμός** (ι, f) famine

**λόφος** neck, crest on a helmet, hilltop

**μεστός** full

**περίστημι** be around; turn out  
~station

**ποῖ** whither? how long?

**πότερος** which, whichever of two

**προαγορεύω** declare, predict, order

**πρόειμι** to have been before, earlier  
~ion

**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

**ὑποπέμπω** send to, send secretly

**ὑποχωρέω** recoil ~heir

**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch  
~phylactery

διεδίδρασκον ἤδη ἕκαστος ἐπὶ τὰ ἑαυτοῦ, βουλόμενοι τὰ  
 ὄντα ἐκποδὼν ποιῆσθαι. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ὡς ἑώρα διαθεόντων  
 καὶ ἐλαυνόντων τὸ πεδῖον μεστόν, ὑποπέμπων ἔλεγεν ὅτι  
 οὐδενὶ πολέμιος εἴη τῶν μενόντων. εἰ δέ τινα φεύγοντα  
 λήψοιτο, προηγόρευεν ὅτι ὡς πολεμῖω χρήσοιτο. οὕτω  
 δὴ οἱ μὲν πολλοὶ κατέμενον, ἦσαν δ' οἱ ὑπεχώρουν σὺν τῷ  
 βασιλεῖ. ἐπεὶ δ' οἱ σὺν ταῖς γυναιξὶ προϊόντες ἐνέπεσον εἰς  
 τοὺς ἐν τῷ ὄρει, κραυγὴν τε εὐθὺς ἐποίουν καὶ φεύγοντες  
 ἠλίσκοντο πολλοὶ γε αὐτῶν. τέλος δὲ καὶ ὁ παῖς καὶ αἱ  
 γυναῖκες καὶ αἱ θυγατέρες ἐάλωσαν, καὶ χρήματα ὅσα  
 σὺν αὐτοῖς ἀγόμενα ἔτυχεν. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς αὐτός, ὡς  
 ᾗσθητο τὰ γινόμενα, ἀπορῶν ποῖ τράποιτο ἐπὶ λόφον  
 τινὰ καταφεύγει. ὁ δ' αὖ Κῦρος ταῦτα ἰδὼν περιίσταται  
 τὸν λόφον τῷ παρόντι στρατεύματι, καὶ πρὸς Χρυσάνταν  
 πέμψας ἐκέλευε φυλακὴν τοῦ ὄρους καταλιπόντα ἔχειν.  
 τὸ μὲν δὴ στράτευμα ἠθροίζετο τῷ Κύρῳ· ὁ δὲ πέμψας  
 πρὸς τὸν Ἀρμένιον κήρυκα ἤρετο ὧδε· Εἰπέ μοι, ἔφη, ὦ  
 Ἀρμένιε, πότερα βούλει αὐτοῦ μένων τῷ λιμῷ καὶ τῷ δύνει



|escape ἤδη ἕκαστος ἐπὶ τὰ ἑαυτοῦ, βουλόμενοι τὰ  
 ὄντα |out of the way ἴσθαι. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ὡς ἑώρα |run around  
 καὶ |drive τὸ |plain, |full , |send to, send ἔλεγεν ὅτι  
 |sea |secretly  
 οὐδενὶ πολέμιος εἶη τῶν μενόντων. εἰ δέ τινα φεύγοντα  
 λήψοιτο, |declare, pre- ὅτι ὡς πολεμῖα χρήσοιτο. οὕτω  
 |dict, order  
 δὴ οἱ μὲν πολλοὶ κατέμενον, ἦσαν δ' οἱ |recoil σὺν τῷ  
 βασιλεῖ. ἐπεὶ δ' οἱ σὺν ταῖς γυναιξὶ |to have been|fall into; attack  
 |before, ear-  
 τοὺς ἐν τῷ ὄρει, |screaming, εὐθὺς |lie  
 |shouting  
 |be captured πολλοὶ γε αὐτῶν. τέλος δὲ καὶ ὁ παῖς καὶ αἱ  
 γυναῖκες καὶ αἱ θυγατέρες |be captured καὶ χρήματα ὅσα  
 σὺν αὐτοῖς ἀγόμενα ἔτυχεν. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς αὐτός, ὡς  
 |perceive τὰ γιγνόμενα, ἀπορῶν |whit|divert ἐπὶ |neck, crest on a  
 |how |helmet, hilltop  
 |long?  
 τινὰ |resort to, flee. ὁ δ' αὖ Κῦρος ταῦτα ἰδὼν |be around; turn out  
 |to, appeal to  
 τὸν |neck, crest on a helmet, |army , καὶ πρὸς Χρυσάνταν  
 |hilltop  
 πέμψας ἐκέλευε |guard, τοῦ ὄρους |leave behind, ἵκειν.  
 |prison, |abandon  
 |watch  
 τὸ μὲν δὴ |army |press close together; ὦ· ὁ δὲ πέμψας  
 |(mid) muster  
 πρὸς τὸν Ἀρμένιον |henchman, -το |thus Εἰπέ μοι, ἔφη, ὦ  
 |functionary  
 Ἀρμένιε, |which, ἥ γύλει αὐτοῦ μένων τῷ |famine αἱ τῷ δίψει  
 |whichever

saw this they took to their heels, each man bent on getting his own property safely out of the way. When Cyrus saw the plains full of them, racing and riding everywhere, he sent out messengers privately to explain that he had no quarrel with any who stayed quietly in their homes, but if he caught a man in flight, he warned them he would treat him as an enemy. Thus the greater part were persuaded to remain, though there were some who retreated with the king.

But when the escort with the women came on the Persians in the mountain, they fled with cries of terror, and many of them were taken prisoners. In the end the young prince himself was captured, and the wife of the king, and his daughters, and his daughter-in-law, and all the goods they had with them. And when the king learnt what had happened, scarcely knowing where to turn, he fled to the summit of a certain hill. Cyrus, when he saw it, surrounded the spot with his troops and sent word to Chrysantas, bidding him leave a force to guard the mountains and come down to him. So the mass of the army was collected under Cyrus, and then he sent a herald to the king with this enquiry:

"Son of Armenia, will you wait here and fight with hunger and thirst, or will you come

*vocabulary*

**αἰχμάλωτος** captive ~acute  
**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not  
 needing ~Sp. sin  
**ἀποδημία** foreign travel  
**ἀπορέω** be confused, distressed  
**ἀφοράω** look away, at ~panorama  
**δακρύω** weep  
**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous  
**διαμάχομαι** fight hard, contend  
**δικάζω** judge  
**εἰκός** likely

**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἔξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion  
**ἐρωτάω** ask about something  
**ἰσόπεδον** (ἶ) flat spot  
**ὁμός** same ~homoerotic  
**ὁμοῦ** together  
**ὁμόω** unite ~homoerotic  
**οὐδέτερος** neither  
**πότε** when?  
**πρόσεμι** approach, draw near; add  
 ~ion  
**σύνθηρος** hunting with

μάχεσθαι ἢ εἰς τὸ ἰσόπεδον καταβὰς ἡμῖν διαμάχεσθαι;  
ἀπεκρίνατο ὁ Ἀρμένιος ὅτι οὐδετέροις βούλοιτο μάχεσθαι.  
πάλιν ὁ Κῦρος πέμψας ἡρώτα Τί οὖν κάθησαι ἐνταῦθα  
καὶ οὐ καταβαίνεις; ἀπορῶν, ἔφη, ὅ τι χρὴ ποιεῖν. Ἄλλ'  
οὐδέν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ἀπορεῖν σε δεῖ· ἔξεστι γάρ σοι ἐπὶ  
δίκην καταβαίνειν. Τίς δ', ἔφη, ἔσται ὁ δικάζων; Δῆλον  
ὅτι ᾧ ὁ θεὸς ἔδωκε καὶ ἄνευ δίκης χρῆσθαι σοι ὅ τι  
βούλοιτο. ἐνταῦθα δὴ ὁ Ἀρμένιος γινώσκων τὴν ἀνάγκην  
καταβαίνει· καὶ ὁ Κῦρος λαβὼν εἰς τὸ μέσον κάκεινον καὶ  
τὰ ἄλλα πάντα περιστρατοπεδεύσατο, ὁμοῦ ἤδη πᾶσαν  
ἔχων τὴν δύναμιν.

Ἐν τούτῳ δὲ τῷ χρόνῳ ὁ πρεσβύτερος παῖς τοῦ Ἀρμενίου  
Τιγράνης ἐξ ἀποδημίας τινὸς προσήει, ὃς καὶ σύνθηρός  
ποτε ἐγένετο τῷ Κύρῳ· καὶ ὥς ἤκουσε τὰ γεγενημένα,  
εὐθὺς πορεύεται ὥσπερ εἶχε πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον. ὥς δ'  
εἶδε πατέρα τε καὶ μητέρα καὶ ἀδελφοὺς καὶ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ  
γυναικα αἰχμαλώτους γεγενημένους, ἐδάκρυσεν, ὥσπερ  
εἰκός. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἰδὼν αὐτὸν ἄλλο μὲν οὐδὲν

μάχεσθαι ἢ εἰς τὸ |flat spot |go down ἡμῖν |fight hard, contend

|to separate; reject; (mp) answer, |neither βούλοιτο μάχεσθαι.  
|defend oneself

πάλιν ὁ Κῦρος πέμψας |ask Τί οὖν |sit |there, here

καὶ οὐ |go down , ἀπορών, ἔφη, ὅ τι |must... μείν. Ἄλλ'  
|should

οὐδέν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, |be confused, δει· ἔξεστι γάρ σοι ἐπὶ  
|distressed

|justice |go down . Τίς δ', ἔφη, ἔσται ὁ |judge , |visible,  
|conspicuous

ὅτι ᾧ ὁ θεὸς ἔδωκε καὶ |away |justice χρῆσθαι σοι ὅ τι  
|from;

βούλοιτο. |there, here ἢ ὁ Ἄρμενος γινώσκων τὴν |necessity  
|not  
|hav-

|go down καὶ ὁ Κῦρος λατὼν εἰς τὸ μέσον κάκεινον καὶ  
|not  
|need-

τὰ ἄλλα πάντα περιστρατοπεδεύσατο, ὁμοῦ ἤδη πᾶσαν  
|ing

ἔχων τὴν δύναμιν.

Ἐν τούτῳ δὲ τῷ χρόνῳ ὁ |elder παῖς τοῦ Ἀρμενίου

Τιγράνης ἐξ ἀποδημίας τινὸς |approach, ὃς καὶ |hunting with

ποτε ἐγένετο τῷ Κύρῳ· καὶ ὡς ἤκουσε τὰ γεγενημένα,

εὐθὺς πορεύεται ὥσπερ εἶχε πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον. ὡς δ'

εἶδε πατέρα τε καὶ μητέρα καὶ ἀδελφούς καὶ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ

γυναιῖκα |captive γεγενημένους, |weep , ὥσπερ

|likely . ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἰδὼν αὐτὸν ἄλλο μὲν οὐδέν

down into the plain and fight it out with us?" But the Armenian answered that he wished to fight with neither. Cyrus sent again and asked, "Why do you sit there, then, and refuse to come down?" "Because I know not what to do," answered the other. "It is simple enough," said Cyrus, "come down and take your trial." "And who shall try me?" asked the king. "He," answered Cyrus, "to whom God has given the power to treat you as he lists, without a trial at all."

Thereupon the Armenian came down, yielding to necessity, and Cyrus took him and all that he had and placed him in the centre of the camp, for all his forces were now at hand.

Meanwhile Tigranes, the elder son of the king, was on his way home from a far country. In old days he had hunted with Cyrus and been his friend, and now, when he heard what had happened, he came forward just as he was; but when he saw his father and his mother, his brother and sisters, and his own wife all held as prisoners, he could not keep back the

*vocabulary***ἀπελάνω** expel, exclude, ward off;

(intrans) ride away

**ἀρμάμαξα** Persian carriage**ἕζομαι** act: set, seat; pass: sit down, sit  
up ~sit**ἐμποδών** getting in the way**ἐντιμος** (ι) honored**ἔρωτάω** ask about something**ἔσχατος** farthest, last**ἡγεμών** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide,  
chief ~hegemony**καταδικάζω** give judgment**Πέρσης** Persian**πότε** when?**προσκαλέω** call on, summon**πύθω** (υ) rot ~putrid**σεαυτοῦ** yourself**συγγνώμη** sympathy, leniency**συγκαλέω** call together ~gallo**συμβουλευώ** give advice; (mid) consult  
~volunteer**σύνοιδα** know about someone; think  
proper**φιλοφρονέομαι** treat kindly, favor**ψεύδω** be false, deceive; (mid) to lie  
~pseudo-

ἐφιλοφρονήσατο αὐτῷ, εἶπε δ' ὅτι Εἰς καιρὸν ἤκεις, ἔφη, ὅπως τῆς δίκης ἀκούσης παρὼν τῆς ἀμφὶ τοῦ πατρός. καὶ εὐθὺς συνεκάλει τοὺς ἡγεμόνας τοὺς τε τῶν Περσῶν καὶ τοὺς τῶν Μήδων· προσεκάλει δὲ καὶ εἴ τις Ἀρμενίων τῶν ἐντίμων παρῆν. καὶ τὰς γυναῖκας ἐν ταῖς ἀρμαμάξαις παρούσας οὐκ ἀπήλασεν, ἀλλ' εἶα ἀκούειν. ὁπότε δὲ καλῶς εἶχεν, ἤρχετο τοῦ λόγου· ὦ Ἀρμένιε, ἔφη, πρῶτον μὲν σοι συμβουλεύω ἐν τῇ δίκῃ τάληθῇ λέγειν, ἵνα σοι ἔν γε ἀπῇ τὸ εὐμνηστότατον· τὸ γὰρ ψευδόμενον φαίνεσθαι εὐ ἴσθι ὅτι καὶ τοῦ συγγνώμης τινὸς τυγχάνειν ἐμποδῶν μάλιστα ἀνθρώποις γίγνεται· ἔπειτα δ', ἔφη, συνίσασι μὲν σοι καὶ οἱ παῖδες καὶ αἱ γυναῖκες αὐται πάντα ὅσα ἔπραξας, καὶ Ἀρμενίων οἱ παρόντες· ἦν δὲ αἰσθάνωνταιί σε ἄλλα ἢ τὰ γενόμενα λέγοντα, νομιούσί σε καὶ αὐτὸν καταδικάζειν σεαυτοῦ πάντα τὰ ἔσχατα παθεῖν, ἦν ἐγὼ τάληθῇ πύθωμαι. Ἄλλ' ἐρώτα, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, ὅ τι βούλει, ὥς τάληθῇ ἐροῦντος. τούτου ἔνεκα καὶ γενέσθω ὅ τι βούλεται. Λέγε δή μοι, ἔφη, ἐπολέμησάς ποτε Ἀστυάγει



|treat kindly, favor αὐτῷ, εἶπε δ' ὅτι Εἰς καιρὸν ἥκεις, ἔφη,  
 ὅπως τῆς |justice ἀκούσης παρὼν τῆς ἀμφὶ τοῦ πατρός.  
 καὶ εὐθὺς |call together . οὖς |leader τούς τε τῶν Περσῶν  
 καὶ τοὺς τῶν Μήδων· |call on, summon καὶ εἴ τις Ἀρμενίων  
 τῶν |honored παρῆν. καὶ τὰς γυναῖκας ἐν ταῖς |Persian  
 παρούσας οὐκ |expel, exclude, ward off; ἀκούειν. |when δὲ  
 |(intrans) ride away  
 καλῶς εἶχεν, ἤρχετο τοῦ λόγου· ὦ Ἀρμένιε, ἔφη, πρῶτον  
 μέν σοι |give advice; ἐν τῇ |jus- |true; λέγειν, ἵνα σοι ἔν  
 |(mid) consult |tice |careful  
 γε |be absent, go σητότατον· τὸ γὰρ |be false, deceive; ἵνεσθαι  
 |away, return |(mid) to lie  
 εὖ ἴσθι ὅτι καὶ τοῦ |sympathy, τινὸς τυγχάνειν |getting in the way  
 |leniency  
 μάλιστα ἀνθρώποις γίγνεται· ἔπειτα δ', ἔφη, |know about someone;  
 |think proper  
 μέν σοι καὶ οἱ παῖδες καὶ αἱ γυναῖκες αὐταὶ πάντα ὅσα  
 ἔπραξας, καὶ Ἀρμενίων οἱ παρόντες· ἦν δὲ |perceive  
 σε ἄλλα ἢ τὰ γενόμενα λέγοντα, |consider cus- καὶ αὐτὸν  
 |tomary; believe  
 |give judgment |yourself πάντα τὰ |farthest παθεῖν, ἦν ἐγὼ  
 |true; πύθωμαι. Ἄλλ' |ask , ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, ὅ τι βούλει,  
 |careful  
 ὥς |true; ἐροῦντος. τούτου |because, that , ἐνέσθω ὅ τι  
 |careful  
 βούλεται. Λέγε δὴ μοι, ἔφη, |make war ποτε Ἀστυάγει

tears. But Cyrus gave him no sign of friendship or courtesy, and only said, "You have come in time, you may be present now to hear your father tried." With that he summoned the leaders of the Persians and the Medes, and any Armenian of rank and dignity who was there, nor would he send away the women as they sat in covered carriages, but let them listen too. When all was ready he began: "Son of Armenia, I would counsel you, in the first place, to speak the truth, so that at least you may stand free from what deserves the utmost hate: beyond all else, be assured, manifest lying checks the sympathy of man and man. Moreover," said he, "your own sons, your daughters, and your wife are well aware of all that you have done, and so are your own Armenians who are here: if they perceive that you say what is not true, they must surely feel that out of your own lips you condemn yourself to suffer the uttermost penalty when I learn the truth." "Nay," answered the king, "ask me whatever you will, and I will answer truly, come what come may." "Answer then," said Cyrus, "did you once make war upon Astyages, my mother's father,

*vocabulary*

ἄημι blow

ἀπαγγέλλω announce, order, promise

~angel

ἀπάγω lead away, back ~demagogue

ἀποστερέω despoil, defraud

ἀφαιρέω take away ~heresy

δασμός portion, tax, tribute

δеспότης -ου (m, 1) master, despot

δουλόω enslave

ἐλευθερία freedom

ἐλεύθερος not enslaved

ἐπιθυμέω (ō) wish, covet

ἐπιχειρέω do, try, attack ~chiral

ἔρυμα -τος (n, 3) protection ~serve

καταλιμπάνω leave behind, abandon

κολάζω punish

μήποτε absolutely never

ὅποι to which place

πένης -τος (m) poor

πλουτέω be rich

πότερος which, whichever of two

σαφής clear, understandable

στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

συνομολογέω agree

συστρατεύω join in an expedition

τειχίζω build

τιμάω (ī) honor, exalt

ψεύδω be false, deceive; (mid) to lie

~pseudo-

τῷ τῆς ἐμῆς μητρὸς πατρὶ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις Μήδοις;  
 Ἔγωγ', ἔφη. Κρατηθεὶς δ' ὑπ' αὐτοῦ συνωμολόγησας  
 δασμὸν οἶσιν καὶ συστρατεύσεσθαι ὅποι ἐπαγγέλλοι, καὶ  
 ἐρύματα μὴ ἔξιν; Ἦν ταῦτα. Νῦν οὖν διὰ τί οὔτε τὸν  
 δασμὸν ἀπῆγες οὔτε τὸ στράτευμα ἔπεμπες, ἐτείχιζές τε  
 τὰ ἐρύματα; Ἐλευθερίας ἐπεθύμουν· καλὸν γάρ μοι ἐδόκει  
 εἶναι καὶ αὐτὸν ἐλεύθερον εἶναι καὶ παισὶν ἐλευθερίαν  
 καταλιπεῖν. Καὶ γάρ ἐστιν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, καλὸν μάχεσθαι,  
 ὅπως μήποτε τις δοῦλος μέλλοι γενήσεσθαι· ἦν δὲ δὴ ἡ  
 πολέμῳ κρατηθεὶς ἢ καὶ ἄλλον τινὰ τρόπον δουλωθεὶς  
 ἐπιχειρῶν τις φαίνεται τοὺς δεσπότας ἀποστερεῖν ἑαυτοῦ,  
 τοῦτον σὺ πρῶτος πότερον ὡς ἀγαθὸν ἄνδρα καὶ καλὰ  
 πράττοντα τιμᾶς ἢ ὡς ἀδικοῦντα, ἦν λάβῃς, κολάζεις;  
 Κολάζω, ἔφη· οὐ γὰρ ἐὰς σὺ ψεύδεσθαι. Λέγε δὴ σαφῶς,  
 ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, καθ' ἐν ἑκάστον· ἦν ἄρχων τις τύχῃ σοι  
 καὶ ἀμάρτῃ, πότερον ἐὰς ἄρχειν ἢ ἄλλον καθίστης ἀντ'  
 αὐτοῦ; Ἄλλον καθίστημι. Τί δέ, ἦν χρήματα πολλὰ ἔχῃ,  
 ἐὰς πλουτεῖν ἢ πένητα ποιεῖς; Ἀφαιροῦμαι, ἔφη, ἂν

τῷ τῆς ἐμῆς μητρὸς πατρὶ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις Μήδοις;

Ἔγωγ', ἔφη. Κρατηθεὶς δ' ὑπ' αὐτοῦ |agree

|portion, |join in an expedition |to which place |λοι, καὶ  
|tax, tribute

|protection μὴ ἔξω; Ἦν ταῦτα. Νῦν οὖν διὰ τί οὔτε τὸν

|portion, |lead away, back |army ἔπεμπε, |build τε  
|tax, tribute  
τα |protection, Ἐλευθερίας |wish, covet καλὸν γάρ μοι ἐδόκει

εἶναι καὶ αὐτὸν |not enslaved εἶναι καὶ παισὶν ἐλευθερίαν

|leave behind, Καὶ γάρ ἐστιν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, καλὸν μάχεσθαι,  
|abandon

ὅπως |absolutely |born enslaved, |never |servile  
|never |servile

πολέμῳ κρατηθεὶς ἢ καὶ ἄλλον τινὰ τρόπον |enslave

|do, try, attack |φαίνεται τοὺς |master, |despoil, |ξαιτοῦ,  
|despot |defraud

τοῦτον σὺ πρῶτος |which, |ὅς ἀγαθὸν ἄνδρα καὶ καλὰ  
|whichever

πράττοντα |honor ἢ ὥς ἀδικοῦντα, ἢν λάβης, |punish ,

|punish , ἔφη· οὐ γὰρ ἐᾷς σὺ |be false, deceive; (mid)|clear, under-  
|to lie |standable

ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, καθ' ἐν ἑκάστον· ἢν ἄρχων τις τύχη σοι

καὶ |miss, fail|which, |ᾷς ἄρχειν ἢ ἄλλον καθίστης ἀντ'  
|lose; sin |whichever

αὐτοῦ; Ἄλλον καθίστημι. Τί δέ, ἢν χρήματα πολλὰ ἔχη,

ἐᾷς |be rich ἢ |poor ποιεῖς; |take away , ἔφη, ἂν

and his Medes?" "I did," he answered. "And were you conquered by him, and did you agree to pay tribute and furnish troops whenever he required, and promise not to fortify your dwellings?" "Even so," he said. "Why is it, then, that to-day you have neither brought the tribute nor sent the troops, and are building forts?" "I set my heart on liberty: it seemed to me so fair a thing to be free myself and to leave freedom to my sons." "And fair and good it is," said Cyrus, "to fight for freedom and choose death rather than slavery, but if a man is worsted in war or enslaved by any other means and then attempts to rid himself of his lord, tell me yourself, would you honour such a man as upright, and a doer of noble deeds, or would you, if you got him in your power, chastise him as a malefactor?" "I would chastise him," he answered, "since you drive me to the truth." "Then answer me now, point by point," said Cyrus. "If you have an officer and he does wrong, do you suffer him to remain in office, or do you set up another in his stead?" "I set up another." "And if he have great riches, do you leave him all his wealth, or do you make him a beggar?" "I take away from him

*vocabulary***ἀναβοάω** shout out**ἀπορέω** be confused, distressed**ἀφοράω** look away, at ~panorama**βέλτιστος** best, noblest**δρύπτω** tear at/off ~dermatology**ἐλέγχω** shame; try, examine**ἐπέρομαι** ask as well; ask then**ἐπιθυμέω** (ὅ) wish, covet**κατακαίνω** kill**καταρρήγνυμι** (ὅ) break down**οἶχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone**πέπλος** woman's dress, a folded cylinder of cloth**πότερος** which, whichever of two**πρόθυμος** (ὅ) willing, eager ~fume**σιωπάω** be silent**σοφιστής** -οῦ (m, 1) expert**συμβουλευώ** give advice; (mid) consult  
~volunteer**σύνειμι** be with; have sex ~ion**συνθηράω** hunt together**ψεύδω** be false, deceive; (mid) to lie  
~pseudo-

ἔχων τυγχάνη. Ἦν δὲ καὶ πρὸς πολεμίους γιγνώσκης αὐτὸν ἀφιστάμενον, τί ποιεῖς; Κατακαίνω, ἔφη· τί γὰρ δεῖ ἐλεγχθέντα ὅτι ψεύδομαι ἀποθανεῖν μᾶλλον ἢ τάληθῃ λέγοντα; ἔνθα δὴ ὁ μὲν παῖς αὐτοῦ ὡς ἤκουσε ταῦτα, περισπάσατο τὴν τιάραν καὶ τοὺς πέπλους κατερρήξατο, αἱ δὲ γυναῖκες ἀναβοήσασαι ἐδρύπτοντο, ὡς οἰχομένου τοῦ πατρὸς καὶ ἀπολωλότων σφῶν ἤδη. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος σιωπῆσαι κελεύσας εἶπεν· Εἶεν· τὰ μὲν δὴ σὰ δίκαια ταῦτα, ὦ Ἀρμένιε· ἡμῖν δὲ τί συμβουλεύεις ἐκ τούτων ποιεῖν; ὁ μὲν δὴ Ἀρμένιος ἐσιώπα ἀπορῶν πότερα συμβουλεύει τῷ Κύρῳ κατακαίνειν αὐτὸν ἢ τὰναντία διδάσκει ὧν αὐτὸς ἔφη ποιεῖν. ὁ δὲ παῖς αὐτοῦ Τιγράνης ἐπήρετο τὸν Κῦρον· Εἰπέ μοι, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, ἐπεὶ ὁ πατὴρ ἀποροῦντι ἔοικεν, ἢ συμβουλεύσω περὶ αὐτοῦ ἃ οἶμαί σοι βέλτιστα εἶναι; καὶ ὁ Κῦρος, ἡσθημένος, ὅτε συνεθήρα αὐτῷ ὁ Τιγράνης, σοφιστὴν τινα αὐτῷ συνόντα καὶ θαυμαζόμενον ὑπὸ τοῦ Τιγράνου, πάνν ἐπεθύμει αὐτοῦ ἀκοῦσαι ὅ τι ποτ' ἐροίῃ· καὶ προθύμως ἐκέλευσε λέγειν ὅ



ἔχων τυγχάνη. Ἦν δὲ καὶ πρὸς πολεμίους γιγνώσκης

αὐτὸν |stand apart; , τί ποιεῖς; |kill , ἔφη· τί γὰρ  
|exact payment

δεῖ |shame; try, exām- |be false, deceive; ἀνεῖν μᾶλλον ἢ |true;  
|ine (mid) to lie |careful

λέγοντα; ἔνθα δὴ ὁ μὲν παῖς αὐτοῦ ὡς ἤκουσε ταῦτα,

περιεσπάσατο τὴν τιάραν καὶ τοὺς |woman's |break down  
|dress

αἱ δὲ γυναῖκες |shout out |tear at/off , ὡς |come, go

τοῦ πατρὸς καὶ ἀπολωλότων σφῶν ἤδη. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος

|be silent κελεύσας εἶπεν· Εἶεν· τὰ μὲν δὴ σὰ δίκαια

ταῦτα, ὦ Ἀρμένιε· ἡμῖν δὲ τί |give advice; ἐκ τούτων  
|(mid) consult

ποιεῖν; ὁ μὲν δὴ Ἀρμένιος |be silent ἀπορῶν |which,  
|whichever

|give advice; τῷ Κύρῳ |kill αὐτὸν ἢ |opposite  
|(mid) consult

διδάσκει ὦν αὐτὸς ἔφη ποιεῖν. ὁ δὲ παῖς αὐτοῦ Τιγράνης

|ask as well; ὃν Κῦρον· Εἰπέ μοι, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, ἐπεὶ ὁ  
|ask then

πατὴρ |be confused, ἔοικεν, ἢ |give advice; περὶ αὐτοῦ ἃ  
|distressed (mid) consult

οἰμαί σοι |best, εἶναι; καὶ ὁ Κῦρος, |perceive , ὅτε  
|noblest

|hunt together ἢ τῷ ὁ Τιγράνης, |expert τινα αὐτῷ |be with; have sex

καὶ |marvel ὑπὸ τοῦ Τιγράνου, |alto- |wish, αὐτοῦ  
|gether|covet

ἀκοῦσαι ὅ τι ποτ' ἐροίη· καὶ |willing, |very ἐκέλευσε λέγειν ὅ  
|eager

all that he has.” “And if you found him deserting to your enemies, what would you do?” “I would kill him,” he said: “why should I perish with a lie on my lips rather than speak the truth and die?”

But at this his son rent his garments and dashed the tiara from his brows, and the women lifted up their voices in wailing and tore their cheeks, as though their father was dead already, and they themselves undone. But Cyrus bade them keep silence, and spoke again. “Son of Armenia, we have heard your own judgment in this case, and now tell us, what ought we to do?” But the king sat silent and perplexed, wondering whether he should bid Cyrus put him to death, or act in the teeth of the rule he had laid down for himself. Then his son Tigranes turned to Cyrus and said, “Tell me, Cyrus, since my father sits in doubt, may I give counsel in his place and say what I think best for you?”

Now Cyrus remembered that, in the old hunting days, he had noticed a certain man of wisdom who went about with Tigranes and was much admired by him, and he was curious to

*vocabulary*

**ἄγαμαι** wonder, admire; resent,  
 begrudge

**ἁλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix

**ἁμείνων** comparative of ἀγαθός, noble

**ἄνδρεῖος** of a man, manly

**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not  
 needing ~Sp. sin

**ἀρετή** goodness, excellence

**εἴπερ** if indeed

**ζημία** loss, penalty ~zeal

**ζημιόω** fine, punish

**ἥκιστος** least; above all

**ἰσχυρός** (ῥ) strong, forceful, violent

**κατακαίνω** kill

**κολάζω** punish

**κτάομαι** acquire, possess

**μιμέομαι** (ι) imitate, represent

**οὐκοῦν** not so?; and so

**ὄφελος** -εος (n, 3) a use, a help

**πότερος** which, whichever of two

**σεαυτοῦ** yourself

**συμβουλευώ** give advice; (mid) consult  
 ~volunteer

**σωφροσύνη** discretion, moderation

**σώφρων** sensible, prudent ~frenzy

**τιμωρέω** (ι) (+dat) take vengeance,

punish; aid one who has been attacked

**τιμωρία** (ιι) vengeance, punishment

**τοίνυν** well, then

τι γιγνώσκοι.

Ἐγὼ τοίνυν, ἔφη ὁ Τιγράνης, εἰ μὲν ἄγασαι τοῦ πατρὸς ἢ ὅσα βεβούλευται ἢ ὅσα πέπραχε, πάνν σοι συμβουλεύω τοῦτον μιμῆσθαι· εἰ μέντοι σοι δοκεῖ πάντα ἡμαρτηκέναι, συμβουλεύω τοῦτον μὴ μιμῆσθαι. Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, τὰ δίκαια ποιῶν ἥκιστ' ἂν τὸν ἀμαρτάνοντα μιμοίμην. Ἔστιν, ἔφη, ταῦτα. Κολαστέον ἄρ' ἂν εἷη κατὰ γε τὸν σὸν λόγον τὸν πατέρα, εἴπερ τὸν ἀδικοῦντα δίκαιον κολάζειν. Πότερα δ' ἡγῇ, ὦ Κῦρε, ἄμεινον εἶναι σὺν τῷ σῷ ἀγαθῷ τὰς τιμωρίας ποιεῖσθαι ἢ σὺν τῇ σῇ ζημίᾳ; Ἐμαυτὸν ἄρα, ἔφη, οὕτω γ' ἂν τιμωροίμην. Ἀλλὰ μέντοι, ἔφη ὁ Τιγράνης, μεγάλα γ' ἂν ζημιοῖο, εἰ τοὺς σεαυτοῦ κατακαίνους τότε ὁπότε σοι πλείστου ἄξιοι εἶεν κεκτῆσθαι. Πῶς δ' ἂν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, τότε πλείστου ἄξιοι γίγνοιτο ἄνθρωποι ὁπότε ἀδικοῦντες ἀλίσκωντο; Εἰ τότε, οἶμαι, σῶφρονες γίγνοιτο. δοκεῖ γάρ μοι, ὦ Κῦρε, οὕτως ἔχειν, ἄνευ μὲν σωφροσύνης οὐδ' ἄλλης ἀρετῆς οὐδὲν ὄφελος εἶναι· τί γὰρ ἂν, ἔφη, χρήσαιτ' ἂν τις ἰσχυρῷ ἢ ἀνδρείῳ

τι γιγνώσκοι.

Ἐγὼ |well, then ἢ ὁ Τιγράνης, εἰ μὲν |admire; οὐ πατρὸς  
|begrudge

ἢ ὅσα |βουλεύω?: (mp) to deliberate; or βούλεύω?: |give advice;  
|(mp) to deliberate |(mid) consult

τοῦτον |imitate, εἰ μέντοι σοι δοκεῖ πάντα ἡμαρτηκέναι,  
|represent

|give advice; τοῦτον μὲν |imitate, |not so?; and so ὁ Κῦρος,  
|(mid) consult |represent

τὰ δίκαια ποιῶν |least; ἂν τὸν ἁμαρτάνοντα |imitate,  
|above |represent

Ἔστιν, ἔφη, ταῦτα. |punish ἄρ' ἂν εἴη κατὰ γε

τὸν σὸν λόγον τὸν πατέρα, |if indeed ἂν ἀδικοῦντα δίκαιον

|punish |which, ὅ ἡγή, ὦ Κῦρε, |better εἶναι σὺν τῷ  
|whichever

σῷ ἀγαθῷ τὰς τιμωρίας ποιεῖσθαι ἢ σὺν τῇ σῇ |loss,  
|penalty

Ἐμμαντὸν ἄρα, ἔφη, οὕτω γ' ἂν |take vengeance, ἄλλα μέντοι,  
|punish, aid

ἔφη ὁ Τιγράνης, μεγάλα γ' ἂν |fine, , εἰ τοὺς |yourself  
|punish

|kill τότε |when σοι πλείστου ἄξιον εἶεν κεκτῆσθαι.

Πῶς δ' ἂν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, τότε πλείστου ἄξιοι γίγνουντο

ἄνθρωποι |when ἀδικοῦντες |be captured , Εἰ τότε, οἶμαι,

|sensible, γίγνουντο. δοκεῖ γάρ μοι, ὦ Κῦρε, οὕτως ἔχειν,  
|prudent

|away from; discretion, οὐδ' ἄλλης |excellence ἵδεν |a use, a help  
|not having; moderation

εἶναι τι γὰρ ἂν, ἔφη, χρήσαιτ' ἂν τις |strong, ἄ, |of a man, manly  
|forceful,  
|violent

know what the youth would say. So he readily agreed and bade him speak his mind.

"In my view, then," said Tigranes, "if you approve of all that my father has said and done, certainly you ought to do as he did, but if you think he has done wrong, then you must not copy him."

"But surely," said Cyrus, "the best way to avoid copying the wrongdoer is to practise what is right?"

"True enough," answered the prince.

"Then on your own reasoning, I am bound to punish your father, if it is right to punish wrong."

"But would you wish your vengeance to do you harm instead of good?"

"Nay," said Cyrus, "for then my vengeance would fall upon myself."

"Even so," said Tigranes, "and you will do yourself the greatest harm if you put your own subjects to death just when they are most valuable to you."

"Can they have any value," asked Cyrus, "when they are detected doing wrong?"

"Yes," answered Tigranes, "if that is when they turn to good and learn sobriety. For it is my belief, Cyrus, that without this virtue all others are in vain. What good will you get from a strong man or a brave if

*vocabulary***ἄημι** blow**ἀντιτάσσω** set against**ἀφροσύνη** folly ~frenzy**ἄφρων** senseless, unthinking ~frenzy**ἄω** aor: to sate ~sate**δήπου** perhaps; is it not so?**δυνάστης** -ου (m, 1) lord, ruler**ἕζομαι** act: set, seat; pass: sit down, sit up ~sit**ἐλευθερία** freedom**ἐννυμι** (ῶ) clothe in (+2 acc) ~vest**ἐπειδάν** when, after**ἐπιθυμέω** (ῶ) wish, covet**ἐπιχειρέω** do, try, attack ~chiral**ἔσθω** eat ~eat**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism**ἡσάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat**θεράπων** -οντος (m, 3) helper,

henchman, servant ~therapy

**ἵππικός** of horses ~hippo**κρείσων** more powerful; better**λύπη** distress**μάθημα** -τος (n, 3) lesson, knowledge**ναός** (ᾶ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia**νῆ** yea**οὐπω** no longer**πάθημα** -τος (n, 3) suffering, condition**παραχρῆμα** on the spot**πλούσιος** wealth ~plutocrat**ποῖος** what kind**σύνοιδα** know about someone; think proper**σωφρονίζω** calm, chasten**σωφροσύνη** discretion, moderation**σώφρων** sensible, prudent ~frenzy**φρόνιμος** sensible, prudent**χρήσιμος** useful

μὴ σώφρονι, ἢ ἱππικῶ, τί δὲ πλουσίῳ, τί δὲ δυνάστῃ ἐν πόλει; σὺν δὲ σωφροσύνῃ καὶ φίλος πᾶς χρήσιμος καὶ θεράπων πᾶς ἀγαθός. Τοῦτ' οὖν, ἔφη, λέγεις ὥς καὶ ὁ σὸς πατήρ ἐν τῇδε τῇ μιᾷ ἡμέρᾳ ἐξ ἄφρονος σώφρων γεγένηται; Πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ἔφη. Πάθημα ἄρα τῆς ψυχῆς σὺ λέγεις εἶναι τὴν σωφροσύνην, ὥσπερ λύπην, οὐ μάθημα· οὐ γὰρ ἂν δήπου, εἴγε φρόνιμον δεῖ γενέσθαι τὸν μέλλοντα σώφρονα ἔσεσθαι, παραχρῆμα ἐξ ἄφρονος σώφρων ἂν τις γένοιτο. Τί δ', ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, οὐπω ἦσθου καὶ ἓνα ἄνδρα δι' ἀφροσύνην μὲν ἐπιχειροῦντα κρείττονι ἑαυτοῦ μάχεσθαι, ἐπειδὴν δὲ ἡττηθῇ, εὐθύς πεπαυμένον τῆς πρὸς τοῦτον ἀφροσύνης; πάλιν δ', ἔφη, οὐπω ἐώρακας πόλιν ἀντιταττομένην πρὸς πόλιν ἑτέραν, ἥς ἐπειδὴν ἡττηθῇ παραχρῆμα ταύτῃ ἀντὶ τοῦ μάχεσθαι πείθεσθαι ἐθέλει; Ποίαν δ', ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, καὶ σὺ τοῦ πατρὸς ἡτταν λέγων οὕτως ἰσχυρίζεαι σεσωφρονίσθαι αὐτόν; Ἦι νῆ Δί', ἔφη, σύννοιδεν ἑαυτῷ ἐλευθερίας μὲν ἐπιθυμήσας, δοῦλος δ' ὥς οὐδεπώποτε γενόμενος, ἃ δὲ ὠήθη χρῆναι λαθεῖν ἢ



μὴ |sensible, |prudent , ἣ |of horses τί δὲ πλουσίῳ, τί δὲ |lord, |ruler ἐν  
 πόλει; σὺν δὲ |discretion, |moderation καὶ φίλος πᾶς |useful καὶ  
 |companion . τᾶς ἀγαθός. Τοῦτ' οὖν, ἔφη, λέγεις ὥς καὶ ὁ  
 σὸς πατήρ ἐν τῇδε τῇ μιᾷ ἡμέρᾳ ἐξ |senseless, |sensible, |unthinking |prudent  
 γεγένηται; Πάνυ μὲν οὖν, ἔφη. |suffering, |condition ἄρα τῆς ψυχῆς σὺ  
 λέγεις εἶναι τὴν |discretion, |moderation , ὥσπερ |distress. οὐ |lesson, |knowledge  
 οὐ γὰρ ἂν |perhaps; |is it |sensible, |prudent δεῖ γενέσθαι τὸν μέλλοντα  
 |sensible, |prudent ἔσεσθαι, |on the spot ἐξ |senseless, |sensible, |unthinking |prudent ἂν  
 τις γένοιτο. Τί δ', ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, |no longer θοῦ καὶ ἕνα  
 ἄνδρα δι' |folly μὲν |do, try, attack κρείττονι ἑαυτοῦ  
 μάχεσθαι, ἐπειδὴν δὲ |(pass) be weaker, be over- |come; (active) defeat ἕνον τῆς πρὸς  
 τοῦτον |folly , πάλιν δ', ἔφη, |no longer ῥακας πόλιν  
 |set against πρὸς πόλιν ἑτέραν, ἧς ἐπειδὴν |(pass) be weaker, be |overcome; (active) |defeat  
 |on the spot ταύτῃ ἀντὶ τοῦ μάχεσθαι πείθεσθαι ἐθέλει;  
 Ποίαν δ', ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, καὶ σὺ τοῦ πατρὸς ἡτταν λέγων  
 οὕτως ἰσχυρίζεαι |calm, chasten αὐτόν; Ἦι νὴ Δι', ἔφη,  
 |know about some- |λευθερίας μὲν |wish, covet , δοῦλος δ' ὥς  
 |one; think proper  
 οὐδεπώποτε γενόμενος, ἃ δὲ ὠήθη χρῆναι λαθεῖν ἢ

he lack sobriety, be he never so good a horseman, never so rich, never so powerful in the state? But with sobriety every friend is a friend in need and every servant a blessing.”

”I Take your meaning,” answered Cyrus; ”your father, you would have me think, has been changed in this one day from a fool into a wise and sober-minded man?”

”Exactly,” said the prince.

”Then you would call sober-mindedness a condition of our nature, such as pain, not a matter of reason that can be learnt? For certainly, if he who is to be sober-minded must learn wisdom first, he could not be converted from folly in a day.”

”Nay, but, Cyrus,” said the prince, ”surely you yourself have known one man at least who out of sheer folly has set himself to fight a stronger man than he, and on the day of defeat his senselessness has been cured. And surely you have known a city ere now that has marshalled her battalions against a rival state, but with defeat she changes suddenly and is willing to obey and not resist?”

”But what defeat,” said Cyrus, ”can you find in your father’s case to make you so sure that he has come to a sober mind?”

”A Defeat,” answered the young man, ”of which he is well aware in the secret chambers of his soul. He set his heart on liberty, and he has found himself a slave as never before: he had designs that needed stealth and speed and force, and not one

*vocabulary*

**ἄθροίζω** press close together; (mid) muster

**ἁλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix

**ἄλλομαι** to jump ~sally

**ἀναμάχομαι** retry a fight

**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not needing ~Sp. sin

**ἀπόκειμαι** be stored up, put aside

**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish ~practice

**ἐξαπατάω** trick, cheat ~apatosaurus

**ἐχυρός** secure; persuasive

**ἡσάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat

**ἰσχύς** -ος (f) strength; body of troops

**κωφός** blunt, insensible

**περιγίγνομαι** surpass; survive; attain ~genus

**προκατασκευάζω** prepare

**προσλαμβάνω** add, borrow, take hold, help

**πρόσωθεν** forward, in the future; far

**στόλος** expedition, equipment, forces ~apostle

**σωφρονίζω** calm, chasten

**τυφλός** blind

**ὕβριστης** -οῦ (m, 1) wanton, savage

**φθάζω** do first, outstrip

**φθάνω** (ᾱ) do first, outstrip

**χωρίον** area; downwards

φθάσαι ἢ ἀποβιάσασθαι, οὐδὲν τούτων ἱκανὸς γενόμενος διαπράξασθαι. σὲ δὲ οἶδεν, ἃ μὲν ἐβουλήθης ἐξαπατήσαι αὐτόν, οὕτως ἐξαπατήσαντα ὥσπερ ἄν τις τυφλοὺς καὶ κωφοὺς καὶ μὴδ' ὅτιοῦν φρονούντας ἐξαπατήσειεν· ἃ δὲ ὠήθης λαθεῖν χρῆναι, οὕτω σὲ οἶδε λαθόντα ὥστε ἃ ἐνόμιζεν ἑαυτῷ ἐχυρὰ χωρία ἀποκεῖσθαι, σὺ εἰρκτὰς ταῦτα ἔλαθες προκατασκευάσας· τάχει δὲ τοσοῦτον περιεγένου αὐτοῦ ὥστε πρόσωθεν ἔφθασας ἐλθὼν σὺν πολλῷ στόλῳ πρὶν τοῦτον τὴν παρ' ἑαυτῷ δύναμιν ἀθροίσασθαι. Ἐπειτα δοκεῖ σοι, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, καὶ ἡ τοιαύτη ἦττα σωφρονίζειν ἱκανὴ εἶναι ἀνθρώπους, τὸ γινῶναι ἄλλους ἑαυτῶν βελτίονας ὄντας; Πολύ γε μᾶλλον, ἔφη ὁ Τιγράνης, ἢ ὅταν μάχη τις ἡττηθῇ. ὁ μὲν γὰρ ἰσχύι κρατηθεὶς ἔστιν ὅτε ὠήθη σωμασκήσας ἀναμαχεῖσθαι· καὶ πόλεις γε ἀλοῦσαι συμμάχους προσλαβοῦσαι οἴονται ἀναμαχεῖσθαι ἄν· οὓς δ' ἂν βελτίους τινὲς ἑαυτῶν ἡγήσωνται, τούτοις πολλάκις καὶ ἄνευ ἀνάγκης ἐθέλουσι πείθεσθαι. Σὺ, ἔφη, ἔοικας οὐκ οἶεσθαι τοὺς ὑβριστὰς

φθάσαι ἢ ἀποβιάσασθαι, οὐδὲν τούτων |sufficient; fit, <sup>1</sup>μενος  
|empowered

|travel over, ac- σέ δὲ οἶδεν, ᾧ μὲν ἐβουλήθησ |trick, cheat  
|compish

αὐτόν, οὕτως |trick, cheat ὥσπερ ἂν τις |blind καὶ

|blunt, καὶ μηδ' ὅτιοῦν |think, be wise |trick, cheat ᾧ  
|insensible

δὲ ᾤηθησ |escape notice; οὕτω σέ οἶδε |escape notice;  
|(mp+gen) forget |(mp+gen) forget

ᾧ ἐνόμιζεν ἑαυτῷ |secure; area; |be stored up, σὺ εἰρκτὰς  
|persuasive down- |put aside  
wards

ταῦτα |escape |prepare τάχει δὲ τοσοῦτον  
|notice;  
(mp+gen)

|surpass; sur- αὐτοῦ ὥστε |forward, in the ἤθασας ἔλθων σὺν  
|vive; attain forget |future; far

πολλῷ |expedition, equip- ὕτον τὴν παρ' ἑαυτῷ δύναμιν  
|ment, forces

|press close together; πειτα δοκεῖ σοι, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, καὶ ἡ  
(mid) muster

τοιαύτη ἦττα |calm, chasten |sufficient; <sup>1</sup>fit, ἀνθρώπους, τὸ  
|empowered

γινῶναι ἄλλους ἑαυτῶν βελτίονας ὄντας; Πολύ γε μᾶλλον,

ἔφη ὁ Τιγράνης, ἡ ὅταν μάχη τις |(pass) be <sup>1</sup>weaker, <sup>1</sup>be strength; body of  
|overcome; (active) de- troops  
feat

κρατηθεῖς ἔστιν ὅτε ᾤηθη σωμαδκήσας |retry a fight

καὶ πόλεις γε ἀλοῦσαι συμμάχους |add, borrow, take οἴονται  
|hold, help

|retry a fight ἂν οὖς δ' ἂν βελτίους τινὲς ἑαυτῶν

ἡγήσωνται, τούτοις |often καὶ |away |necessity ἐθέλουσι  
|from;

πείθεσθαι. Σύ, ἔφη, ἔοικας οὐκ οἶσθαι τοὺς |wanton,  
|not hav-  
ing; |savage  
not  
need-  
ing

of them has he been able to carry through. With you he knows that design and fulfilment went hand in hand; when you wished to outwit him, outwit him you did, as though he had been blind and deaf and dazed; when stealth was needed, your stealth was such that the fortresses he thought his own you turned into traps for him; and your speed was such that you were upon him from miles away with all your armament before he found time to muster the forces at his command."

"So you think," said Cyrus, "that merely to learn another is stronger than himself is defeat enough to bring a man to his senses?"

"I Do," answered Tigranes, "and far more truly than mere defeat in battle. For he who is conquered by force may fancy that if he trains he can renew the war, and captured cities dream that with the help of allies they will fight again one day, but if we meet with men who are better than ourselves and whom we recognise to be so, we are ready to obey them of our own free will." "You imagine then," said Cyrus, "that the

*vocabulary*

**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not  
 needing ~Sp. sin  
**ἔσχατος** farthest, last  
**ἰσχυρός** (ῥ) strong, forceful, violent  
**κακώ** harm, disfigure ~cacophony  
**καταδουλόω** enslave  
**κλέπτης** -ου (m, 1) thief  
**κλέπτω** steal  
**κολάζω** punish  
**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless

**παίω** hit

**παραβαίνω** go with; transgress ~basis  
**παραμυθέομαι** (ῥ) urge, advise  
**σίδηρος** iron ~siderite  
**συνθήκη** combination; agreement  
**συντίθημι** hearken, mark ~thesis  
**σφόδρα** very much  
**σωφρονίζω** calm, chasten  
**σώφρων** sensible, prudent ~frenzy  
**ψεύδω** be false, deceive; (mid) to lie  
 ~pseudo-

γιννώσκειν τοὺς ἑαυτῶν σωφρονεστέρους, οὐδὲ τοὺς  
 κλέπτας τοὺς μὴ κλέπτοντας, οὐδὲ τοὺς ψευδομένους  
 τοὺς τᾶληθῇ λέγοντας, οὐδὲ τοὺς ἀδικοῦντας τοὺς τὰ  
 δίκαια ποιοῦντας· οὐκ οἶσθα, ἔφη, ὅτι καὶ νῦν ὁ σὸς  
 πατὴρ ἐψεύσατο καὶ οὐκέτ' ἡμπέδου τὰς πρὸς ἡμᾶς  
 συνθήκας, εἰδὼς ὅτι ἡμεῖς οὐδ' ὅτιοῦν ὦν Ἀστυάγης  
 συνέθετο παραβαίνομεν; Ἄλλ' οὐδ' ἐγὼ τοῦτο λέγω ὡς τὸ  
 γινῶναι μόνον τοὺς βελτίονας σωφρονίζει ἄνευ τοῦ δίκην  
 δίδοναι ὑπὸ τῶν βελτιόνων, ὥσπερ ὁ ἐμὸς πατὴρ νῦν  
 δίδωσιν. Ἄλλ', ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ὃ γε σὸς πατὴρ πέπονθε  
 μὲν οὐδ' ὅτιοῦν πῶ κακόν· φοβεῖται γὰρ μέντοι εὖ οἶδ' ὅτι  
 μὴ πάντα τὰ ἔσχατα πάθη. Οἶει οὖν τι, ἔφη ὁ Τιγράνης,  
 μᾶλλον καταδουλοῦσθαι ἀνθρώπους τοῦ ἰσχυροῦ φόβου;  
 οὐκ οἶσθ' ὅτι οἱ μὲν τῷ ἰσχυροτάτῳ κολάσματι νομιζομένῳ  
 σιδήρῳ παιόμενοι ὅμως ἐθέλουσι καὶ πάλιν μάχεσθαι τοῖς  
 αὐτοῖς; οὓς δ' ἂν σφόδρα φοβηθῶσιν ἄνθρωποι, τούτοις  
 οὐδὲ παραμυθούμενοις ἔτι ἀντιβλέπειν δύνανται; Λέγεις  
 σύ, ἔφη, ὡς ὁ φόβος τοῦ ἔργῳ κακοῦσθαι μᾶλλον κολάζει



γιγνώσκειν τοὺς ἑαυτῶν |sensible, prudent , οὐδὲ τοὺς  
 |thief τοὺς μὴ |steal , οὐδὲ τοὺς |be false, deceive;  
 |careful |wrong someone (mid) to lie  
 τοὺς |true; λέγοντας, οὐδὲ τοὺς |be, do wrong; ὧς τὰ  
 |careful |wrong someone  
 δίκαια ποιοῦντας· οὐκ οἶσθα, ἔφη, ὅτι καὶ νῦν ὁ σὸς  
 πατὴρ |be false, deceive; |no more ἡμπέδου τὰς πρὸς ἡμᾶς  
 |careful |wrong someone (mid) to lie  
 συνθήκας, εἰδὼς ὅτι ἡμεῖς οὐδ' ὅτιοῦν ὦν Ἀστυάγης  
 |hearken, |go with; transgress ἄλλ' οὐδ' ἐγὼ τοῦτο λέγω ὡς τὸ  
 |mark  
 γνῶναι μόνον τοὺς βελτίονας |calm, chasten |away from; |justice  
 |not having;  
 διδόναι ὑπὸ τῶν βελτιόνων, ὥσπερ ὁ ἐμὸς πατὴρ νῦν  
 |not need- ing  
 δίδωσιν. Ἄλλ', ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ὃ γε σὸς πατὴρ πέπονθε  
 μὲν οὐδ' ὅτιοῦν πω κακόν· |scare, |scare γε |however οἶδ' ὅτι  
 |scare  
 μὴ πάντα τὰ |farthest πάθη. Οὐκ οὖν τι, ἔφη ὁ Τιγράνης,  
 |away  
 μᾶλλον |enslave ἀνθρώπους τοῦ |strong, |fear ,  
 |forceful,  
 οὐκ οἶσθ' ὅτι οἱ μὲν τῶν |strong, force- |violent  
 |ful, violent |consider |cus-  
 |tomary; believe  
 σιδήρῳ |hit |anyway, nevertheless τάλιν μάχεσθαι τοῖς  
 αὐτοῖς; οὓς δ' ἂν |very |scare, |scare ἀνθρώποι, τούτοις  
 |much |away  
 οὐδὲ |urge, advise ἔτι ἀντιβλέπειν δύνανται; Λέγεις  
 σύ, ἔφη, ὡς ὁ |fear τοῦ ἔργου |harm, disfigure ἄλλον |punish

bully and the tyrant cannot recognise the man of self-restraint, nor the thief the honest man, nor the liar the truth-speaker, nor the unjust man the upright? Has not your own father lied even now and broken his word with us, although he knew that we had faithfully observed every jot and tittle of the compact Astyages made?" "Ah, but," replied the prince, "I do not pretend that the bare knowledge alone will bring a man to his senses, it cannot cure him unless he pays the penalty as my father pays it to-day." "But," answered Cyrus, "your father has suffered nothing at all so far: although he fears, I know, that the worst suffering may be his." "Do you suppose then," asked Tigranes, "that anything can enslave a man more utterly than fear? Do you not know that even the men who are beaten with the iron rod of war, the heaviest rod in all the world, may still be ready to fight again, while the victims of terror cannot be brought to look their conquerors in the face, even when they try to comfort them?" "Then, you maintain," said Cyrus, "that fear will subdue a man more than

*vocabulary*

**ἄθυμος** (ῥ) having low morale ~fume  
**ἀπάγχω** throttle  
**ἄπιστος** not trusting, not trustworthy  
 ~stand  
**ἀποσφάζω** cut the throat  
**δεσμός** bond, latch, strap; also (pl)  
 headdress  
**διάγω** lead through; pass a time  
 ~demagogue  
**διάκειμαι** be in a condition  
**διακέομαι** repair  
**δουλεία** slavery  
**δούλειος** of a slave  
**δουλεύω** serve, be a slave  
**ἔνιοι** some  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
 ~station  
**εὐδαίμων** blessed with a good genius

**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near,  
 direct, stop ~station  
**ἡσάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be  
 overcome; (active) defeat  
**καθεύδω** lie down  
**καταπλήσσω** be struck with dismay  
 ~plectrum  
**λαγχάνω** be allotted; (esp. λελα-  
 forms) allot; receive  
**ναυαγέω** (ᾱ) be shipwrecked  
**προαποθνήσκω** die before, die  
 defending  
**ῥιπτέω** hurl  
**σίτος** grain, bread, food ~parasite  
**ὕπνον** a sleep  
**ὕπνος** a sleep  
**φανερός** visible, conspicuous ~photon  
**φυγάζ** -δος (m, 3) exile, refugee  
 ~fugitive

τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. Καὶ σύ γε, ἔφη, οἶσθα ὅτι ἀληθῆ λέγω· ἐπίστασαι γὰρ ὅτι οἱ μὲν φοβούμενοι μὴ φύγωσι πατρίδα καὶ οἱ μέλλοντες μάχεσθαι δεδιότες μὴ ἡττηθῶσιν ἀθύμως διάγουσι, καὶ οἱ πλείοντες μὴ ναυαγίσωσι, καὶ οἱ δουλείαν καὶ δεσμὸν φοβούμενοι, οὗτοι μὲν οὔτε σίτου οὔθ' ὕπνου δύνανται λαγχάνειν διὰ τὸν φόβον· οἱ δὲ ἤδη μὲν φυγάδες, ἤδη δ' ἡττημένοι, ἤδη δὲ δουλεύοντες, ἔστιν ὅτε δύνανται καὶ μᾶλλον τῶν εὐδαιμόνων ἐσθίειν τε καὶ καθεύδειν. ἔτι δὲ φανερώτερον καὶ ἐν τοῖσδε οἶον φόρημα ὁ φόβος· ἔνιοι γὰρ φοβούμενοι μὴ ληφθέντες ἀποθάνωσι προαποθνήσκουσιν ὑπὸ τοῦ φόβου, οἱ μὲν ῥίπτουντες ἑαυτούς, οἱ δ' ἀπαγχόμενοι, οἱ δ' ἀποσφαττόμενοι· οὕτω πάντων τῶν δεινῶν ὁ φόβος μάλιστα καταπλήττει τὰς ψυχάς. τὸν δ' ἐμὸν πατέρα, ἔφη, νῦν πῶς δοκεῖς διακείσθαι τὴν ψυχὴν, ὅς οὐ μόνον περὶ ἑαυτοῦ, ἀλλὰ καὶ περὶ ἐμοῦ καὶ περὶ γυναικὸς καὶ περὶ πάντων τῶν τέκνων δουλείας φοβεῖται; καὶ ὁ Κύρος εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ νῦν μὲν ἔμοιγε οὐδὲν ἄπιστον τοῦτον οὕτω διακείσθαι· δοκεῖ μέντοι μοι

τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. Καὶ σύ γε, ἔφη, οἶσθα ὅτι |true;  
careful  
λέγω· ἐπίστασαι γὰρ ὅτι οἱ μὲν φοβούμενοι μὴ φύγωσι

|fatherland .αὶ οἱ μέλλοντες μάχεσθαι |to fear μὴ |(pass) be weaker, be  
|overcome; (active) defeat

|having |lead through; ἰ οἱ πλέοντες μὴ |be shipwrecked καὶ  
low |pass a time

|morale |bond, |φοβούμενοι, οὗτοι μὲν οὔτε |grain,  
|latch, |bread,  
|strap |food

οὐθ' ὕπνου δύνανται |be allotted; (esp. λελα-|fear οἱ δὲ ἤδη  
|forms) allot; receive

μὲν |exile, , ἤδη δ' |(pass) be weaker, be |serve, be a slave· ἵτιν  
|refugee |overcome; (active) de-

ὅτε δύνανται καὶ μάλλον τῶν |blessed with a ἐσθίειν τε καὶ  
|feat |good genius

|lie down . ἔτι δὲ |visible, καὶ ἐν τοῖσδε οἶον φόρημα  
|conspicuous

ὁ |fear |some γὰρ φοβούμενοι μὴ ληφθέντες ἀποθάνωσι

|die before, die defend- ὑπὸ τοῦ |fear , οἱ μὲν |hurl  
|ing

ἑαυτούς, οἱ δ' |throttle , οἱ δ' |cut the throat οὕτω

πάντων τῶν δεινῶν ὁ |fear μάλιστα |be struck with τὰς  
|dismay

ψυχάς. τὸν δ' ἐμὸν πατέρα, ἔφη, νῦν |how? why? διακεῖσθαι

τὴν ψυχὴν, ὅς οὐ μόνον περὶ ἑαυτοῦ, ἀλλὰ καὶ περὶ ἐμοῦ

καὶ περὶ γυναικὸς καὶ περὶ πάντων τῶν |child δουλείας

φοβεῖται; καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ νῦν μὲν ἔμοιγε οὐδὲν

|not trusting, not ν οὕτω διακεῖσθαι· δοκεῖ |however, -οι  
|trustworthy

suffering?" "Yes," he answered, "and you of all men know that what I say is true: you know the despondency men feel in dread of banishment, or on the eve of battle facing defeat, or sailing the sea in peril of shipwreck—they cannot touch their food or take their rest because of their alarm: while it may often be that the exiles themselves, the conquered, or the enslaved, can eat and sleep better than men who have not known adversity. Think of those panic-stricken creatures who through fear of capture and death have died before their day, have hurled themselves from cliffs, hanged themselves, or set the knife to their throats; so cruelly can fear, the prince of horrors, bind and subjugate the souls of men. And what, think you, does my father feel at this moment? He, whose fears are not for himself alone, but for us all, for his wife, and for his children." And Cyrus said, "To-day and at this time, it may be with him as you say: but I still think that the same man may well be insolent in good

*vocabulary***ἀηδής** unpleasant**αἵτιος** blameworthy; the cause

~etiology

**ἀμάρτημα** -τος (n, 3) failure, fault**ἀναμάρτητος** blameless**ἀνατίθημι** consecrate, lay on, impute;  
(mp) reproach**ἀπεχθάνομαι** become hated ~external**ἀπιστέω** disbelieve ~stand**ἔξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion**ἐξυβρίζω** have a violent breakout**εὖνοια** good will, gift**εὐτυχέω** be lucky, prosper, succeed**ἐχυρός** secure; persuasive**ζυγόν** yoke, a joined pair ~zygote**καταχεύω** pour onto**λυπέω** (ὑ) annoy, distress**ναί** yea**πιστός** faithful; trustworthy**πρόφασις** -εως (f) pretext; motive;  
prediction ~fame**πταίω** (act) stumble, fall; (pass) be  
missed**πτήσσω** cower, cause to cower**συλλαμβάνω** seize, capture;  
understand ~epilepsy**σωφρονίζω** calm, chasten**ὕβριζω** insult, treat outrageously**ὕπηρετέω** serve**ὕπηρετης** -ου (m, 1) servant, officer**φίλιος** friendly**φρούριον** fort

τοῦ αὐτοῦ ἀνδρὸς εἶναι καὶ εὐτυχοῦντα ἐξυβρίσαι καὶ  
 πταίσαντα ταχὺ πτῆξαι, καὶ ἀνεθέντα γε πάλιν αὖ μέγα  
 φρονῆσαι καὶ πάλιν αὖ πράγματα παρασχεῖν. Ἀλλὰ ναὶ  
 μὰ Δί', ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, ἔχει μὲν προφάσεις τὰ ἡμέτερα  
 ἁμαρτήματα ὥστ' ἀπιστεῖν ἡμῖν· ἔξεστι δέ σοι καὶ  
 φρούρια ἐντειχίζειν καὶ τὰ ἐχυρὰ κατέχειν καὶ ἄλλο ὅ τι ἂν  
 βούλῃ πιστὸν λαμβάνειν. καὶ μέντοι, ἔφη, ἡμᾶς μὲν ἔξεις  
 οὐδέν τι τούτοις μέγα λυπουμένους· μεμνησόμεθα γὰρ ὅτι  
 ἡμεῖς αὐτῶν αἰτιοί ἐσμεν· εἰ δέ τινι τῶν ἀναμαρτήτων  
 παραδοὺς τὴν ἀρχὴν ἀπιστῶν αὐτοῖς φανεί, ὅρα μὴ ἅμα  
 τε εὖ ποιήσεις καὶ ἅμα οὐ φίλον νομοῦσί σε· εἰ δ' αὖ  
 φυλαττόμενος τὸ ἀπεχθάνεσθαι μὴ ἐπιθήσεις αὐτοῖς ζυγὰ  
 τοῦ μὴ ὑβρίσαι, ὅρα μὴ ἐκείνους αὖ δεήσει σε σωφρονίζειν  
 ἔτι μᾶλλον ἢ ἡμᾶς νῦν ἐδέησεν. Ἀλλὰ ναὶ μὰ τοὺς  
 θεούς, ἔφη, τοιούτοις μὲν ἔγωγε ὑπηρεταῖς, οὓς εἰδείην  
 ἀνάγκη ὑπηρετοῦντας, ἀηδῶς ἂν μοι δοκῶ χρῆσθαι· οὓς  
 δὲ γινώσκειν δοκοῖν ὅτι εὐνοία καὶ φιλία τῇ ἐμῇ τὸ δέον  
 συλλαμβάνοιεν, τούτους ἂν μοι δοκῶ καὶ ἁμαρτάνοντας



τοῦ αὐτοῦ ἀνδρὸς εἶναι καὶ |be lucky, prosper, succeed|have a violent breakout  
 |(act) stumble, -fall;|cower, cause to|consecrate, lay on, im- |τὴν μέγα  
 |(pass) be missed|cower|pute; (mp) reproach  
 |think, be wise | πάλιν αὖ πράγματα παρασχεῖν. Ἀλλὰ |yea  
 μὰ Δί', ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, ἔχει μὲν |pretext; motive; |ἡμέτερα  
 |failure, fault ὥστ' |disbelieve ἡμῖν· ἔξεστι δέ σοι καὶ  
 |fort ἐντειχίζειν καὶ τὰ |secure; ..... ἔχειν καὶ ἄλλο ὅ τι ἂν  
 |persuasive  
 βούλῃ |faithful; |..... βάνειν. καὶ μέντοι, ἔφη, ἡμᾶς μὲν ἔξεις  
 |trustworthy  
 οὐδέν τι τούτοις μέγα |annoy, distress μεμνησόμεθα γὰρ ὅτι  
 ἡμεῖς αὐτῶν |blameworthy; εἰ δέ τινι τῶν |blameless  
 |the cause  
 παραδοὺς τὴν ἀρχὴν |disbelieve αὐτοῖς φανεί, ὅρα μὴ ἅμα  
 τε εὖ ποιήσεις καὶ ἅμα οὐ φίλον νομιούσιν σε· εἰ δ' αὖ  
 φυλαττόμενος τὸ |become hated μὴ |put on, apply; (mid)|yoke  
 |undertake, attack  
 τοῦ μὴ |insult , ὅρα μὴ ἐκείνους αὖ δεήσει σε |calm, chasten  
 ἔτι μάλλον ἢ ἡμᾶς νῦν ἐδέησεν. Ἀλλὰ |yea μὰ τοὺς  
 θεούς, ἔφη, τοιούτοις μὲν ἔγωγε |servant, |, οὓς εἰδείην  
 |officer  
 ἀνάγκη |serve , |unpleasant μοι δοκῶ χρησθαι· οὓς  
 δὲ γινώσκειν δοκοῖν ὅτι |good will, |friendly ἢ ἐμῇ τὸ δέον  
 |gift  
 |seize, capture; un-, τούτους ἂν μοι δοκῶ καὶ |miss, fail, lose;  
 |derstand |sin

fortune and cringing in defeat: let such an one go free again, and he will return to his arrogance and trouble us once more.” ”I do not deny it, Cyrus,” said the prince. ”Our offences are such that you may well mistrust us: but you have it in your power to set garrisons in our land and hold our strong places and take what pledges you think best. And even so,” he added, ”you will not find that we fret against our chains, for we shall remember we have only ourselves to blame. Whereas, if you hand over the government to some who have not offended, they may either think that you mistrust them, and thus, although you are their benefactor, you cannot be their friend, or else in your anxiety not to rouse their enmity you may leave no check on their insolence, and in the end you will need to sober them even more than us.” ”Nay, but by all the gods,” cried Cyrus, ”little joy should I ever take in those who served me from necessity alone. Only if I recognise some touch of friendship or goodwill in the help it is their duty to render, I could find it easier to forgive them all their faults than to accept

*vocabulary***ἀφαιρέω** take away ~heresy**βασιλεις** kingly**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous**ἐκπλεως** full of, abundant**ἐνθάδε** here, hither**ἔξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion**εὐεργετέω** be a benefactor**ἥκιστος** least; above all**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon**κτάομαι** acquire, possess**λυπέω** (ἶ) annoy, distress**μέλος** -ους (n, 3) limb; melody**μέλω** concern, interest, be one's responsibility**μηδέποτε** never**μισέω** (ἶ) hate, wish to prevent

~misogyny

**οὐκοῦν** not so?; and so**πότε** when?**πότερος** which, whichever of two**προσήκω** belong to, it beseems**ῥαίω** smite**σκοπάω** watch, observe**σκοπέω** behold, consider**ταράσσω** mess things up ~trachea**φιλία** friendship ~philanthropy**φίλιος** friendly**χαρίζομαι** gratify ~charisma

ῥᾶον φέρειν ἢ τοὺς μισοῦντας μέν, ἔκπλεω δὲ πάντα  
 ἀνάγκη διαπονουμένους. καὶ ὁ Τιγράνης εἶπε πρὸς ταῦτα·  
 Φιλίαν δὲ παρὰ τίνων ἂν ποτε λάβοις τοσαύτην ὅσῃν σοι  
 παρ' ἡμῶν ἔξεστι κτήσασθαι νῦν; Παρ' ἐκείνων οἶμαι, ἔφη,  
 παρὰ τῶν μηδέποτε πολεμίων γεγεννημένων, εἰ ἐθέλοιμι  
 εὐεργετεῖν αὐτοὺς ὥσπερ σὺ νῦν με κελεύεις εὐεργετεῖν  
 ὑμᾶς. Ἡ καὶ δύναιο ἂν, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, ἐν τῷ παρόντι νῦν  
 εὔρεῖν ὅτῳ ἂν χάρισαι ὅσαπερ τῷ ἐμῷ πατρί; αὐτίκα,  
 ἔφη, ἦν τινα ἐὰς ζῆν τῶν σε μηδὲν ἡδικηκότων, τίνα σοι  
 τούτου χάριν οἶε αὐτὸν εἴσεσθαι; τί δ', ἦν αὐτοῦ τέκνα καὶ  
 γυναῖκα μὴ ἀφαιρῇ, τίς σε τούτου ἔνεκα φιλήσει μᾶλλον ἢ  
 ὁ νομίζων προσήκειν αὐτῷ ἀφαιρεθῆναι; τὴν δ' Ἀρμενίων  
 βασιλείαν εἰ μὴ ἔξει, οἶσθ' αὖτις, ἔφη, λυπούμενον μᾶλλον  
 ἢ ἡμᾶς; οὐκοῦν καὶ τοῦτ', ἔφη, δηλὸν ὅτι ὁ μάλιστα  
 λυπούμενος εἰ μὴ βασιλεὺς εἴη οὗτος καὶ λαβὼν τὴν ἀρχὴν  
 μεγίστην ἂν σοι χάριν εἰδείη. εἰ δέ τί σοι, ἔφη, μέλει καὶ  
 τοῦ ὡς ἥκιστα τεταραγμένα τάδε καταλιπεῖν, ὅταν ἀπίης,  
 σκόπει, ἔφη, πότερον ἂν οἶε ἡρεμεστέως ἔχειν τὰ ἐνθάδε

ῥᾶον φέρειν ἢ τοὺς |hate μέν, |full of, abundant ἵτα  
 |necessity διαπονουμένους. καὶ ὁ Τιγράνης εἶπε πρὸς ταῦτα·  
 Φιλίαν δὲ παρὰ τίνων ἄν ποτε λάβοις |so much ὅσῃν σοι  
 παρ' ἡμῶν ἔξεστι κτήσασθαι νῦν; Παρ' ἐκείνων οἶμαι, ἔφη,  
 παρὰ τῶν |never πολεμίων γεγεννημένων, εἰ ἐθέλοιμι  
 |be a benefactor. τοὺς ὥσπερ σὺ νῦν με κελεύεις |be a benefactor  
 ὑμᾶς. Ἡ καὶ δύναιο ἄν, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, ἐν τῷ παρόντι νῦν  
 εὐρεῖν ὅτῳ ἂν |gratify ὅσαπερ τῷ ἐμῷ πατρί; |at once ,  
 ἔφη, ἥν τινα ἐὰς ζῇν τῶν σε μηδὲν |be, do wrong; |ina σοι  
 |wrong someone  
 τούτου |grace οἶε αὐτὸν εἴσεσθαι; τί δ', ἥν αὐτοῦ |child καὶ  
 γυναιῖκα μὴ |take away. ἵς σε τούτου |because, that - εἰ μᾶλλον ἢ  
 ὁ |consider |belong to, it αὐτῷ |take away , τὴν δ' Ἀρμενίων  
 |cus- |beseems  
 βροτῶν εἰ μὴ ἔξει, οἴσθ' αἴ τινα, ἔφη, |annoy, μᾶλλον  
 |distress  
 ἢ ἡμᾶς; |not so?; and so. οὐτ', ἔφη, |visible, ... ὁ |very  
 |conspicuous  
 |annoy, εἰ μὴ βασιλεὺς εἴη οὗτος καὶ λαβὼν τὴν ἀρχὴν  
 |distress  
 μεγίστην ἂν σοι |grace εἰδείη. εἰ δέ τί σοι, ἔφη, μέλει καὶ  
 τοῦ ὧς |least; |mess things up ἡ δὲ |leave behind, |when- |be absent, go away,  
 |above |abandon |ever |return  
 σκόπει, ἔφη, |which, ἃν οἶε ἡρεμεστέως ἔχειν τὰ |here,  
 |whichever |hither

the full discharge of service paid upon compulsion by those who hate me.”

Then Tigranes answered, “You speak of friendship, but can you ever find elsewhere so great a friendship as you may find with us?” “Surely I can,” he answered, “and with those who have never been my enemies, if I choose to be their benefactor as you would have me yours.” “But to-day, and now, can you find another man in the world whom you could benefit as you can benefit my father? Say you let a man live who has never done you wrong, will he be grateful for the boon? Say he need not lose his children and his wife, will he love you for that more than one who knows he well deserved the loss? Say he may not sit upon the throne of Armenia, will he suffer from that as we shall suffer? And is it not clear that the one who feels the pain of forfeiture the most will be the one most grateful for the granting of the gift? And if you have it at all at heart to leave matters settled here, think for yourself, and see where tranquillity will lie when your back is turned. Will

*vocabulary***ἁπλός** single; simple ~haploid**ἀποβάλλω** throw away, lose**βλάπτω** break, make fail**δείκνυμι** (ὁ) show, point out**εἶωθα** be accustomed, in the habit**ἐκπορίζω** provide; invent**ἐξάγω** lead out ~demagogue**ἐξετάζω** inspect, interrogate, estimate**ἐρωτάω** ask about something**ζημιόω** fine, punish**καινός** new, fresh, strange**καταμένω** stay; not change**κρείσσων** more powerful; better**μέλος** -ους (n, 3) limb; melody**μέλω** concern, interest, be one's responsibility**ὀρθός** upright, straight; correct, just  
~orthogonal**ὀρθόω** stand up**περαίνω** finish, accomplish**πόσος** how many, much, far?**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)**προστίθηναι** add; impose; (mp) agree;  
side with ~thesis**σαυτοῦ** yourself**στρατιά** army ~strategy**συμβάλλω** pit against; compare; mp:  
meet, fall in with ~ballistic**συμπέμπω** send with ~pomp**ὑπερήδομαι** rejoice greatly**ὑπέχω** promise; hold out one's hand;  
submit to

καινῆς γενομένης ἀρχῆς ἢ τῆς εἰωθυίας καταμενούσης· εἰ δέ τί σοι μέλει καὶ τοῦ ὥς πλείστην στρατιὰν ἐξάγειν, τίν' ἂν οἶε μᾶλλον ἐξετάσαι ταύτην ὀρθῶς τοῦ πολλάκις αὐτῇ κεχρημένου; εἰ δὲ καὶ χρημάτων δεήσει, τίν' ἂν ταῦτα νομίζεις κρεῖττον ἐκπορίσαι τοῦ καὶ εἰδότος καὶ ἔχοντος πάντα τὰ ὄντα; ὠγαθέ, ἔφη, Κῦρε, φύλαξαι μὴ ἡμᾶς ἀποβαλὼν σαυτὸν ζημιώσης πλείω ἢ ὁ πατήρ ἐδυνήθη σε βλάψαι. ὁ μὲν τοιαῦτα ἔλεγεν.

Ὁ Δὲ Κῦρος ἀκούων ὑπερήδετο, ὅτι ἐνόμιζε περαίνεσθαι πάντα αὐτῷ ὅσαπερ ὑπέσχετο τῷ Κυαξάρῃ πράξειν; ἐμέμνητο γὰρ εἰπὼν ὅτι καὶ φίλον οἶοιτο μᾶλλον ἢ πρόσθεν ποιήσειν. καὶ ἐκ τούτου δὴ τὸν Ἀρμένιον ἐρωτᾷ· Ἦν δὲ δὴ ταῦτα πείθωμαι ὑμῖν, λέγε μοι, ἔφη, σύ, ὦ Ἀρμένιε, πόσῃ μὲν στρατιάν μοι συμπέμψεις, πόσα δὲ χρήματα συμβαλῇ εἰς τὸν πόλεμον; πρὸς ταῦτα δὴ λέγει ὁ Ἀρμένιος· Οὐδὲν ἔχω, ὦ Κῦρε, ἔφη, ἀπλούστερον εἰπεῖν οὐδὲ δικαιότερον ἢ δεῖξαι μὲν ἐμὲ πᾶσαν τὴν οὖσαν δύναμιν, σὲ δὲ ἰδόντα ὅσῃ μὲν ἂν σοι δοκῇ στρατιὰν



|new, fresh, strange, ἀρχῆς ἢ τῆς |be accus-|stay; not change εἰ  
 |tomed, in  
 δέ τί σοι μέλει καὶ τοῦ ὡς πλείυτην |the habit army |lead out, τίν'  
 ἂν οἶε μᾶλλον |inspect, interro- γν ὀρθῶς τοῦ |often αὐτῇ  
 |gate, estimate  
 κεχρημένον; εἰ δὲ καὶ |possession, οὐκ οἶε, τίν' ἂν ταῦτα  
 |money, busi-  
 |ness  
 |consider customary; |provide; τοῦ καὶ εἰδότος καὶ ἔχοντος  
 |believe |invent  
 πάντα τὰ ὄντα; ὠγαθέ, ἔφη, Κῦρε, |guard; μὴ ἡμᾶς  
 |watch  
 |throw away, |yourself |fine, πλείω ἢ ὁ πατὴρ ἐδυνήθη σε  
 |lose |punish  
 |break, make fail τοιαῦτα ἔλεγεν.

Ὁ Δὲ Κῦρος ἀκούων |rejoice , ὅτι |consider |finish,  
 |greatly |cus- |accomplish  
 πάντα αὐτῷ ὅσα περ |promise τῷ |tomary; |believe ἀρχῇ πράξειν;  
 |remind; (mid) , remem- , ὅτι καὶ φίλον οἶοιτο μᾶλλον ἢ  
 |turn one's thoughts to  
 πρόσθεν ποιήσιν. καὶ ἐκ τούτου δὴ τὸν Ἀρμένιον |ask

Ἦν δὲ δὴ ταῦτα πείθωμαι ὑμῖν, λέγε μοι, ἔφη, σύ,  
 ὦ Ἀρμένιε, |how many, army μοι συμπέμψεις, |how many, much,  
 |much, far? |far?  
 δὲ |possession, |pit against; , compare; ὀλεμον; πρὸς ταῦτα δὴ  
 |money, |mp: meet, fall in with  
 |business  
 λέγει ὁ Ἀρμένιος· Οὐδὲν ἔχω, ὦ Κῦρε, ἔφη, |single; simple  
 εἰπεῖν οὐδὲ δικαιότερον ἢ |show μὲν ἐμὲ πᾶσαν τὴν οὖσαν  
 δύναμιν, σὲ δὲ ἰδόντα ὅσῃ μὲν ἂν σοι δοκῇ |army

it be with the new dynasty, or with the old familiar house? And if you want as large a force as possible at your command, where will you find a man better fitted to test the muster-roll than the general who has used it time and again? If you need money, who will provide the ways and means better than he who knows and can command all the resources of the country? I warn you as a friend," he added, "that if you throw us aside you will do yourself more harm than ever my father could have done."

Such were the pleadings of the prince, and Cyrus, as he listened, was overjoyed, for he felt he would accomplish to the full all he had promised Cyaxares; his own words came back to him, "I hope to make the Armenian a better friend than before."

Thereupon he turned to the king and said, "Son of Armenia, if I were indeed to hearken unto you and yours in this, tell me, how large an army would you send me and how much money for the war?"

And the king replied, "The simplest answer I can make and the most straightforward is to tell you what my power is, and then you may take the men you choose, and leave the

*vocabulary*

**ἀδύνατος** unable; impossible  
**ἄημι** blow  
**ἀργύριον** small coin  
**αὐτως** just so, merely; in vain ~after  
**δασμός** portion, tax, tribute  
**δηλώω** show, disclose  
**διπλάσιος** twofold, double  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**εὐεργετέω** be a benefactor  
**ἥμισυς** half ~hemisphere  
**θησαυρός** treasury ~treasure  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon  
**λογίζομαι** reckon, consider  
**μυριάς** -δος (ὑ, φ, 3) countless, myriad  
**ὄμορος** bordering  
**ὅπόσος** as many as, how many, how

## great

**πολεμόω** make an enemy of ~polemic  
**πόσος** how many, much, far?  
**στρατιά** army ~strategy  
**συμπέμπω** send with ~pomp  
**τάλαντον** scale, a unit of weight  
 ~talent  
**τέσσαρες** four ~trapezoid  
**τοίνυν** well, then  
**τρισχίλιοι** 3000 ~kilo-  
**ὑπισχνέομαι** promise, agree to do  
 ~ischemia  
**φορά** carrying, burden  
**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch  
 ~phylactery  
**χίλιοι** (τι) thousand ~kilo-

ἄγειν, τὴν δὲ καταλιπεῖν τῆς χώρας φυλακὴν. ὥς δ' αὐτως  
 περὶ χρημάτων δηλῶσαι μὲν ἐμὲ δίκαιόν σοι πάντα τὰ  
 ὄντα, σὲ δὲ τούτων αὐτὸν γνόντα ὅποσα τε ἂν βούλῃ  
 φέρεσθαι καὶ ὅποσα ἂν βούλῃ καταλιπεῖν. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος  
 εἶπεν· Ἴθι δὴ λέξον μοι πόση σοι δύνამίς ἐστι, λέξον  
 δὲ καὶ πόσα χρήματα. ἐνταῦθα δὴ λέγει ὁ Ἀρμένιος·  
 Ἵππεις μὲν τοίνυν εἰσὶν Ἀρμενίων εἰς ὀκτακισχιλίους,  
 πεζοὶ δὲ εἰς τέτταρας μυριάδας· χρήματα δ', ἔφη, σὺν  
 τοῖς θησαυροῖς οἷς ὁ πατὴρ κατέλιπεν ἔστιν εἰς ἀργύριον  
 λογισθέντα τάλαντα πλείω τῶν τρισχιλίων. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος  
 οὐκ ἐμέλλησεν, ἀλλ' εἶπε· Τῆς μὲν τοίνυν στρατιᾶς, ἐπεὶ  
 σοι, ἔφη, οἱ ὄμοροι Χαλδαῖοι πολεμοῦσι, τοὺς ἡμίσεις μοι  
 σύμπεμπε· τῶν δὲ χρημάτων ἀντὶ μὲν τῶν πεντήκοντα  
 τάλαντων ὧν ἔφερες δασμὸν διπλάσια Κυαξάρῃ ἀπόδος,  
 ὅτι ἔλιπες τὴν φοράν· ἐμοὶ δ', ἔφη, ἄλλα ἑκατὸν δάνεισον·  
 ἐγὼ δέ σοι ὑπισχνοῦμαι, ἢν ὁ θεὸς εὖ διδῶ, ἀνθ' ὧν ἂν ἐμοὶ  
 δανείσῃς ἢ ἄλλα πλείονος ἄξια εὐεργετήσῃς ἢ τὰ χρήματα  
 ἀπαριθμήσῃς, ἢν δύνωμαι· ἢν δὲ μὴ δύνωμαι, ἀδύνατος  
 ἂν

ἄγειν, τὴν δὲ καταλιπεῖν τῆς χώρας |guard, | |ὥς δ' |just so, merely; in  
 |prison, |  
 |watch  
 περὶ χρημάτων |show, | μὲν ἐμὲ δικάϊόν σοι πάντα τὰ  
 |disclose  
 ὄντα, σὲ δὲ τούτων αὐτὸν γνόντα |as/how many/great |ἀλλή  
 φέρεσθαι καὶ |as/how many/great, |καταλιπεῖν. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος  
 εἶπεν· Ἴθι δὴ λέξον μοι |how many, much, far? |ἔστι, λέξον  
 δὲ καὶ |how many, much, far?|there, here |ἢ λέγει ὁ Ἀρμένιος·  
 Ἰππεῖς μὲν |well, then |τὴν Ἀρμενίων εἰς ὀκτακισχιλίους,  
 πεζοὶ δὲ εἰς |four |countless, |χρήματα δ', ἔφη, σὺν  
 |myriad  
 τοῖς |treasury |οἷς ὁ πατὴρ κατέλιπεν ἔστιν εἰς |small coin  
 |reckon, |scale, a unit |λείω τῶν |3000 |καὶ ὁ Κῦρος  
 |consider |of weight  
 οὐκ ἐμέλλησεν, ἀλλ' εἶπε· Τῆς μὲν |well, |army |ἐπεὶ  
 |then  
 σοι, ἔφη, οἱ |bordering |ἀλδαῖοι πολεμοῦσι, τοὺς |half |μοι  
 |send with |τῶν δὲ χρημάτων ἀντὶ μὲν τῶν πεντήκοντα  
 |scale, a unit |ὧν ἔφες |portion, |twofold, |Κυαξάρη ἀπόδος,  
 |of weight |tax, |double  
 |tribute  
 ὅτι ἔλιπες τὴν |carrying, |μοι δ', ἔφη, ἄλλα ἑκατὸν δάνεισον·  
 |burden  
 ἐγὼ δέ σοι |promise, agree |ἦν ὁ θεὸς εὖ διδῶ, ἀνθ' ὧν ἂν ἐμοὶ  
 δανείσης ἢ ἄλλα πλείονος ἄξια |be a benefactor |, τὰ χρήματα  
 ἀπαριθμήσειν, ἦν δύνωμαι· ἦν δὲ μὴ δύνωμαι, |unable;  
 |impossible  
 ἂν

rest to garrison the country. And so with the money: it is only fair that you should know the whole of our wealth, and with that knowledge to guide you, you will take what you like and leave what you like." And Cyrus said, "Tell me then, and tell me true: how great is your power and your wealth?" Whereupon the Armenian replied: "Our cavalry is 8000 strong and our infantry 40,000; and our wealth," said he, "if I include the treasures which my father left, amounts in silver to more than 3000 talents."

And Cyrus, without more ado, said at once, "Of your whole armament you shall give me half, not more, since your neighbours the Chaldaeans are at war with you: but for the tribute, instead of the fifty talents which you paid before, you shall hand over twice as much to Cyaxares because you made default; and you will lend me another hundred for myself, and I hereby promise you, if God be bountiful, I will requite you for the loan with things of higher worth, or I will pay the money back in full, if I can; and if I cannot, you may blame me for want

*vocabulary***ἄδικος** unfair; obstinate, bad**αἰχμάλωτος** captive ~acute**ἀπάγω** lead away, back ~demagogue**ἀπελαύνω** expel, exclude, ward off;  
(intrans) ride away**ἀπολαμβάνω** receive, recover, take  
aside, cut off ~epilepsy**δειπνέω** eat, dine**διπλάσιος** twofold, double**ἐλεύθερος** not enslaved**θαρρέω** be of good heart**θαρσέω** be of good heart**καταλείπω** leave behind, abandon

~eclipse

**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon**κατατίθηναι** put down, deposit, lay  
aside ~thesis**μήποτε** absolutely never**νεόγαμος** newlywed**ὅποι** to which place**ὅσος** as many as, how many, how  
great**οὐκοῦν** not so?; and so**πόσος** how many, much, far?**πρίσμαι** buy**τοίνυν** well, then**ὠνέομαι** buy

φαινοίμην, οἶμαι, ἄδικος δ' οὐκ ἂν δικαίως κρινοίμην. καὶ ὁ Ἀρμένιος, Πρὸς τῶν θεῶν, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, μὴ οὕτω λέγε· εἰ δὲ μή, οὐ θαρροῦντά με ἔξεις· ἀλλὰ νόμιζε, ἔφη, ἃ ἂν καταλίπης μηδὲν ἦττον σὰ εἶναι ὧν ἂν ἔχων ἀπίης. Εἶεν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος· ὥστε δὲ τὴν γυναῖκα ἀπολαβεῖν, ἔφη, πόσα ἂν μοι χρήματα δοίης; Ὅποσα ἂν δυναίμην, ἔφη. Τί δέ, ὥστε τοὺς παῖδας; καὶ τούτων, ἔφη, ὅποσα ἂν δυναίμην. Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ταῦτα μὲν ἤδη διπλάσια τῶν ὄντων. σὺ δέ, ἔφη, ὦ Τιγράνη, λέξον μοι πόσον ἂν πρίαίω ὥστε τὴν γυναῖκα ἀπολαβεῖν. ὁ δὲ ἐτύγχανε νεόγαμός τε ὢν καὶ ὑπερφιλῶν τὴν γυναῖκα. Ἐγὼ μὲν, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, κὰν τῆς ψυχῆς πριαίμην ὥστε μήποτε λατρεῦσαι ταύτην. Σὺ μὲν τοίνυν, ἔφη, ἀπάγου τὴν σήν· οὐδὲ γὰρ εἰληφθαι ἔγωγε αἰχμάλωτον ταύτην νομίζω σοῦ γε μηπώποτε φυγόντος ἡμᾶς. καὶ σὺ δέ, ὦ Ἀρμένιε, ἀπάγου τὴν γυναῖκα καὶ τοὺς παῖδας μηδὲν αὐτῶν καταθείς, ἵν' εἰδῶσιν ὅτι ἐλεύθεροι πρὸς σὲ ἀπέρχονται. καὶ νῦν μὲν, ἔφη, δειπνεῖτε παρ' ἡμῖν· δειπνήσαντες δὲ ἀπελαύνετε ὅποι ὑμῖν θυμός. οὕτω



φαινοίμην, οἶμαι, |unfair; ob- ὅκ ἂν δικάίως |separate . καὶ  
 |stinate, bad  
 ὁ Ἀρμένιος, Πρὸς τῶν θεῶν, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, μὴ οὕτω λέγε·  
 εἰ δὲ μή, οὐ θαρροῦντά με ἔξεις· ἀλλὰ |consider ὧς ἂν  
 |tomary; believe  
 καταλίπης μηδὲν ἦττον σὰ εἶναι ὧν ἂν ἔχων |be absent, go  
 |away, return  
 ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος· ὥστε δὲ τὴν γυναῖκα |receive, recover, take |how many, much,  
 |aside, cut off |far?  
 ἂν μοι |possession, money, |as/how many/great ἵππων, ἔφη. Τί δέ,  
 |business  
 ὥστε τοὺς παῖδας; καὶ τούτων, ἔφη, |as/how many/great ἵππων.  
 |not so?; and so ὁ Κῦρος, ταῦτα μὲν ἤδη |twofold, τῶν ὄντων.  
 |double  
 σὺ δέ, ἔφη, ὦ Τιγράνη, λέξον μοι |how many, much, far? τε  
 τὴν γυναῖκα |receive, recover, ἐτύγχανε |newlywed τε ὧν καὶ  
 |take aside, cut off  
 ὑπερφιλῶν τὴν γυναῖκα. Ἐγὼ μὲν, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, κὰν τῆς  
 |soul; life ραίμην ὥστε |absolutely ἵπρεῦσαι ταύτην. Σὺ μὲν  
 |never  
 |well, then ἔφη, |lead away, back ἵππων· οὐδὲ γὰρ εἰληφθαι ἔγωγε  
 |captive ταύτην |consider ὧς μηπώποτε φυγόντος  
 |tomary; believe  
 ἡμᾶς. καὶ σὺ δέ, ὦ Ἀρμένιε, |lead away, back γυναῖκα καὶ τοὺς  
 παῖδας μηδὲν αὐτῶν |put down ἵππων εἰδῶσιν ὅτι |not enslaved  
 πρὸς σέ |go away, depart καὶ νῦν μὲν, ἔφη, |eat, dine παρ'  
 ἡμῖν· |eat, dine δὲ |expel, exclude, to which place, ὅς. οὕτω  
 |ward off;  
 |(intrans) ride  
 away

of ability, but not for want of will." But the Armenian cried, "By all the gods, Cyrus, speak not so, or you will put me out of heart. I beg you to look on all I have as yours, what you leave behind as well as what you take away."

"So be it then," answered Cyrus, "and to ransom your wife, how much money would you give?" "All that I have," said he. "And for your sons?" "For them too, all that I have." "Good," answered Cyrus, "but is not that already twice as much as you possess? And you, Tigranes," said he, "at what price would you redeem your bride?" Now the youth was but newly wedded, and his wife was beyond all things dear to him. "I would give my life," said he, "to save her from slavery." "Take her then," said Cyrus, "she is yours. For I hold that she has never yet been made a prisoner, seeing that her husband never deserted us. And you, son of Armenia," said he, turning to the king, "you shall take home your wife and children, and pay no ransom for them, so that they shall not feel they come to you from slavery. But now," he added, "you shall stay and sup with us, and afterwards you shall go wherever you wish."

And so

*vocabulary***ἄγνοια** ignorance**αἰτιάομαι** blame ~etiology**ἄλλότριος** someone else's; alien ~alien**ἄμαθής** ignorant**ἀφαιρέω** take away ~heresy**δεῖπνον** meal, food**δείπνος** meal, food**διασκηνέω** go to one's tent, leave  
someone else's**διασκηνόω** pitch like tents at intervals**ἐξαμαρτάνω** miss; err, do wrong**ἐπέρομαι** ask as well; ask then**καίτοι** and yet; and in fact; although**κακόνοια** ill-will**κατακαίνω** kill**καταμένω** stay; not change**μῆτις** -ος (f) counsel, skill, plan ~meter**ὅπόσος** as many as, how many, how  
great**ποῦ** where?**προσκαλέω** call on, summon**σύνειμι** be with; have sex ~ion**συνθηράω** hunt together**φιλία** friendship ~philanthropy**φίλιος** friendly**χαλεπαίνω** be violent, rage

δὴ κατέμειναν.

Διασκηνοῦντων δὲ μετὰ δεῖπνον ἐπήρετο ὁ Κῦρος· Εἰπέ μοι, ἔφη, ὦ Τιγράνη, ποῦ δὴ ἐκείνός ἐστιν ὁ ἀνὴρ ὃς συνεθήρα ἡμῖν καὶ σύ μοι μάλα ἐδόκεις θαυμάζειν αὐτόν. Οὐ γάρ, ἔφη, ἀπέκτεινεν αὐτόν οὔτοσὶ ὁ ἐμὸς πατήρ; Τί λαβὼν ἀδικοῦντα; Διαφθείρειν αὐτόν ἔφη ἐμέ. καίτοι γ', ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, οὕτω καλὸς κάγαθὸς ἐκείνος ἦν ὥς καὶ ὅτε ἀποθνήσκειν ἔμελλε προσκαλέσας με εἶπε· Μήτι σύ, ἔφη, ὦ Τιγράνη, ὅτι ἀποκτείνει με, χαλεπανθήσ τῷ πατρί· οὐ γὰρ κακονοία τῇ σῇ τοῦτο ποιεῖ, ἀλλ' ἀγνοία. ὅποσα δὲ ἀγνοία ἄνθρωποι ἐξαμαρτάνουσι, πάντ' ἀκούσια ταῦτ' ἔγωγε νομίζω. ὁ μὲν δὴ Κῦρος ἐπὶ τούτοις εἶπε· Φεῦ τοῦ ἀνδρός. ὁ δ' Ἀρμένιος ἔλεξεν· Οὔτοι, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, οὐδ' οἱ ταῖς ἑαυτῶν γυναιξὶ λαμβάνοντες συνόντας ἀλλοτρίους ἄνδρας οὐ τοῦτο αἰτιώμενοι αὐτοὺς κατακαίνουσιν ὥς ἀμαθεστέρας ποιοῦντας τὰς γυναῖκας, ἀλλὰ νομίζοντες ἀφαιρεῖσθαι αὐτοὺς τὴν πρὸς αὐτοὺς φιλίαν, διὰ τοῦτο ὥς πολεμίοις αὐτοῖς χρῶνται. καὶ ἐγὼ ἐκείνω, ἔφη,

δὴ |stay; not change

Διασκηνοῦντων δὲ μετὰ δεῖπνον |ask as well; Kṛros· Εἰπέ  
|ask then

μοι, ἔφη, ὦ Τιγράνη, |where?· ἐκεῖνός ἐστιν ὁ ἀνὴρ ὃς

|hunt together· ἴν καὶ σύ μοι μάλα ἐδόκεις |marvel αὐτόν.

Οὐ γάρ, ἔφη, |kill αὐτὸν οὕτοσὶ ὁ ἐμὸς πατήρ; Τί

λαβὼν |be, do wrong;|destroy, corrupt; (pf.) τὸ be beside|and yet; and in fact; al-  
|wrong some-|oneself |though

ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, οὕτω καλὸς κάγαθὸς ἐκεῖνος ἦν ὥς καὶ ὅτε

ἀποθνήσκειν ἔμελλε |call on, summon· εἶπε· |counsel, ἵ, ἔφη,  
|skill,

ὦ Τιγράνη, ὅτι |kill με, |be violent, rage· ὃ πατρί· οὐ  
|plan

γὰρ |ill-will τῇ σῇ τοῦτο ποιεῖ, ἀλλ' |ignorance |as/how many/great

δὲ |ignorance· ἄθρωποι |miss; err, do wrong· ἵντ' ἀκούσια ταῦτ'

ἔγωγε |consider· ἵ cus- δὴ Κῦρος ἐπὶ τούτοις εἶπε· Φεῦ τοῦ  
|tomary; believe

ἀνδρός· ὁ δ' Ἀρμένιος ἔλεξεν· Οὗτοι, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, οὐδ'

οἱ ταῖς ἐαυτῶν γυναιξὶ λαμβάνοντες |be with;|someone  
|have sex |else's; alien

ἄνδρας οὐ τοῦτο |blame αὐτοὺς |kill ὥς

|ignorant ποιοῦντας τὰς γυναῖκας, ἀλλὰ |consider cus-  
|tomary; believe

|take away αὐτοὺς τὴν πρὸς αὐτοὺς φιλίαν, διὰ τοῦτο

ὥς πολεμίοις αὐτοῖς χρώνται. καὶ ἐγὼ ἐκείνῳ, ἔφη,

the Armenians stayed. But when the company broke up after the evening meal, Cyrus asked Tigranes, "Tell me, where is that friend of yours who used to hunt with us, and whom, as it seemed to me, you admired so much?" "Do you not know," he said, "that my father put him to death?" "And why?" said Cyrus, "what fault did he find in him?" "He thought he corrupted me," said the youth; "and yet, I tell you, Cyrus, he was so gentle and so brave, so beautiful in soul, that when he came to die, he called me to him and said, 'Do not be angry with your father, Tigranes, for putting me to death. What he does is not done from malice, but from ignorance; and the sins of ignorance, I hold, are unintentional.' "

And at that Cyrus could not but say: "Poor soul! I grieve for him." But the king spoke in his own defence: "Remember this, Cyrus, that the man who finds another with his wife kills him not simply because he believes that he has turned the woman to folly, but because he has robbed him of her love. Even so I was jealous of that man who seemed to put himself between

*vocabulary*

**ἀμαρτέω** act together, be a companion  
**ἀναπαύω** cause to cease ~pause  
**ἄνθρωπινος** human  
**ἄπελαύνω** expel, exclude, ward off;  
 (intrans) ride away  
**ἄρμαμαξα** Persian carriage  
**διαλέγω** go through, debate ~legion  
**δουλεύω** serve, be a slave  
**εἰκός** likely  
**ἐπέρομαι** ask as well; ask then  
**εὐφραίνω** gladden ~frenzy  
**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider  
 ~theater  
**κάλλος** -εος (n, 3) beauty  
 ~kaleidoscope  
**μέγεθος** -ους (n, 3) tall, big (person)  
 ~megaton  
**ναί** yea

**ναός** (ᾱ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia  
**νή** yea  
**ξένιος** of hospitality ~xenophobe  
**οἶκαδε** homeward ~economics  
**πρίαμαι** buy  
**προαγορεύω** declare, predict, order  
**προεῖπον** foretell, proclaim, order  
 before  
**προλέγω** prophecy, proclaim; preselect  
 ~legion  
**σοφία** skill; wisdom ~sophistry  
**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war,  
 campaign ~strategy  
**στρατιά** army ~strategy  
**συγγιγνώσκω** acknowledge; pardon  
**ὕστεραῖος** the next; later  
**φθονέω** envy  
**φιλοφρονέομαι** treat kindly, favor  
**ὠνέομαι** buy

ἐφθόνον, ὅτι μοι ἐδόκει τοῦτον ποιεῖν αὐτὸν μᾶλλον θαυμάζειν ἢ ἐμέ. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ ναὶ μὰ τοὺς θεούς, ἔφη, ὦ Ἀρμένιε, ἀνθρώπινά μοι δοκεῖς ἀμαρτεῖν· καὶ σύ, ὦ Τιγράνη, συγγίγνωσκε τῷ πατρί. τότε μὲν δὴ τοιαῦτα διαλεχθέντες καὶ φιλοφρονηθέντες ὥσπερ εἰκὸς ἐκ συναλλαγῆς, ἀναβάντες ἐπὶ τὰς ἄρμαμάξας σὺν ταῖς γυναιξὶν ἀπήλυνον εὐφραινόμενοι.

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἦλθον οἴκαδε, ἔλεγον τοῦ Κύρου ὁ μὲν τις τὴν σοφίαν, ὁ δὲ τὴν καρτερίαν, ὁ δὲ τὴν πραότητα, ὁ δὲ τις καὶ τὸ κάλλος καὶ τὸ μέγεθος. ἔνθα δὴ ὁ Τιγράνης ἐπήρετο τὴν γυναῖκα· Ἡ καὶ σοί, ἔφη, ὦ Ἀρμενία, καλὸς ἐδόκει ὁ Κῦρος εἶναι; ἀλλὰ μὰ Δί', ἔφη, οὐκ ἐκείνον ἐθεώμην. Ἀλλὰ τίνα μὴν; ἔφη ὁ Τιγράνης. Τὸν εἰπόντα νῆ Δία ὡς τῆς αὐτοῦ ψυχῆς ἂν πρίαιτο ὥστε μὴ με δουλεύειν. τότε μὲν δὴ ὥσπερ εἰκὸς ἐκ τοιούτων ἀνεπαύοντο σὺν ἀλλήλοις.

Τῇ δ' ὑστεραία ὁ Ἀρμένιος Κύρῳ μὲν καὶ τῇ στρατιᾷ ἀπάσῃ ξένια ἔπεμπε, προεῖπε δὲ τοῖς ἑαυτοῦ, οὓς δεήσοι στρατεῦσθαι. εἰς τρίτην ἡμέραν παρεῖναι· τὰ δὲ χρήματα



|envy , ὅτι μοι ἐδόκει τοῦτον ποιεῖν αὐτὸν μάλλον  
 |marvel ἢ ἐμέ. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν· Ἄλλὰ |yea μὰ τοὺς  
 θεούς, ἔφη, ὦ Ἀρμένιε, |human μοι δοκεῖς ἀμαρτεῖν·  
 καὶ σύ, ὦ Τιγράνη, |acknowledge; τῷ πατρί. τότε μὲν δὴ  
 |pardon  
 τοιαῦτα |go through, debate ` |treat kindly, favor ὥσπερ |likely  
 ἐκ συναλλαγῆς, |go up, embark...ἰ τὰς |Persian σὺν ταῖς  
 |carriage  
 γυναιξίν |expel, ex-|gladden  
 |clude, ward  
 |off; (intrans)  
 Ἐπεὶ δ' |ride away |homeward ἔγον τοῦ Κύρου ὁ μὲν τις τὴν  
 |skill; , ὁ δὲ τὴν καρτερίαν, ὁ δὲ τὴν πραότητα, ὁ δὲ τις  
 |wisdom  
 καὶ τὸ |beauty καὶ τὸ |tall, big . ἔνθα δὴ ὁ Τιγράνης |ask as well;  
 |ask then  
 τὴν γυναῖκα· Ἥ καὶ σοί, ἔφη, ὦ Ἀρμενία, καλὸς ἐδόκει ὁ  
 Κῦρος εἶναι; ἀλλὰ μὰ Δί, ἔφη, οὐκ ἐκείνον ἐθεώμην. Ἀλλὰ  
 τίνα μήν; ἔφη ὁ Τιγράνης. Τὸν εἰπόντα νῆ Δία ὡς τῆς  
 αὐτοῦ |soul; life...ν πρίατο ὥστε μή με |serve, be a slave. εἰ μὲν  
 δὴ ὥσπερ |likely ἐκ τοιούτων |cause to cease λὺν ἀλλήλοις.  
 Τῇ δ' |the next; later Ἀρμένιος Κύρῳ μὲν καὶ τῇ |army  
 ἀπάσῃ |of hospitality εἰ, προεῖπε δὲ τοῖς ἑαυτοῦ, οὓς δεήσοι  
 |make an expedition, |third ἡμέραν παρῆναι· τὰ δὲ |possession, money,  
 |war, campaign |business

my son and me and steal away his reverence." "May the gods be merciful to us!" said Cyrus, "you did wrong, but your fault was human. And you, Tigranes," said he, turning to the son, "you must forgive your father."

And so they talked in all friendliness and kindliness, as befitted that time of reconciliation; and then the father and son mounted their carriages, with their dear ones beside them, and drove away rejoicing.

But when they were home again, they all spoke of Cyrus, one praising his wisdom, another his endurance, a third the gentleness of his nature, and a fourth his stature and his beauty. Then Tigranes turned to his wife and asked, "Did Cyrus seem so beautiful in your eyes?" But she answered, "Ah, my lord, he was not the man I saw." "Who was it then?" asked Tigranes. "He," she answered, "who offered his own life to free me from slavery."

And so they took their delight together, as lovers will, after all their sufferings.

But on the morrow the king of Armenia sent gifts of hospitality to Cyrus and all his army, and bade his own contingent make ready to march on the third day, and himself brought

*vocabulary*

**ἀναλαμβάνω** take up, recover, resume  
**ἀπολείπω** leave behind, fail ~eclipse  
**ἀπολιμπάνω** leave behind, fail  
**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp  
**ἄρнуμαι** get, win  
**διπλάσιος** twofold, double  
**ἐξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion  
**ἐξίστημι** displace, transform; (+gen)  
 give up ~station  
**ἔρομαι** ask a question, ask about, go  
 searching through  
**καταθεάομαι** look down upon  
**κοιμάω** put to sleep; (pass) lie down,  
 have sex  
**κράτιστος** best  
**ξενίζω** be host, treat as a guest  
 ~xenophobe  
**ὅπόσος** as many as, how many, how  
 great

**ὁπότερος** which of two, either of two  
**περιελαύνω** drive around  
**πόσος** how many, much, far?  
**πότερος** which, whichever of two  
**ποῦ** where?  
**σκευοφορέω** carry baggage  
**σκευοφόρος** pack animal, porter  
**σκοπᾶω** watch, observe  
**σκοπέω** behold, consider  
**σκοπός** (f) lookout, overseer, spy,  
 target ~telescope  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
**συνακολουθέω** follow with, be related  
**συσκευάζω** pack up  
**τειχίζω** build  
**ὕστεραίος** the next; later  
**φρούριον** fort

ὦν εἶπεν ὁ Κῦρος διπλάσια ἀπηρίθμησεν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ὅσα εἶπε λαβὼν τὰλλα ἀπέπεμψεν· ἤρετο δὲ πότερος ἔσται ὁ τὸ στράτευμα ἄγων, ὁ παῖς ἢ αὐτός. εἰπέτην δὲ ἅμα ὁ μὲν πατὴρ οὕτως· Ὁπότερον ἂν σὺ κελεύῃς· ὁ δὲ παῖς οὕτως· Ἐγὼ μὲν οὐκ ἀπολείβομαί σου, ὦ Κῦρε, οὐδ' ἂν σκευοφόρον ἐμὲ δίῃ σοι συνακολουθεῖν. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ἐπιγελάσας εἶπε· Καὶ ἐπὶ πόσῳ ἂν, ἔφη, ἐθέλεις τὴν γυναικὰ σου ἀκοῦσαι ὅτι σκευοφορεῖς; Ἄλλ' οὐδέν, ἔφη, ἀκούειν δεήσει αὐτήν· ἄξω γάρ, ὥστε ὁρᾶν ἐξέσται αὐτῇ ὅ τι ἂν ἐγὼ πράττω. Ὡρα ἂν, ἔφη, συσκευάζεσθαι ὑμῖν εἶη. Νόμιζ', ἔφη, συνεσκευασμένους παρέσεσθαι ὅ τι ἂν ὁ πατὴρ δῶ. τότε μὲν δὴ ξενισθέντες οἱ στρατιῶται ἐκοιμήθησαν.

### 3.2

Τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ ἀναλαβὼν ὁ Κῦρος τὸν Τιγράνην καὶ τῶν Μήδων ἱππέων τοὺς κρατίστους καὶ τῶν ἑαυτοῦ φίλων ὁπόσους καιρὸς ἐδόκει εἶναι, περιελάνων τὴν χώραν κατεθεᾶτο, σκοπῶν ποῦ τειχίσειε φρούριον. καὶ

ὧν εἶπεν ὁ Κῦρος <sup>|twofold,</sup><sub>|double</sub> ἀπηρίθμησεν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος  
 ὅσα εἶπε λαβὼν τὰλλα <sup>|send away</sup> ἤρετο δὲ <sup>|which,</sup><sub>|whichever</sub>  
 ἔσται ὁ τὸ <sup>|army</sup> ἄγων, ὁ παῖς ἢ αὐτός. εἰπέτην  
 δὲ ἅμα ὁ μὲν πατήρ οὕτως· <sup>|which of two,</sup><sub>|either of two</sub> νὺν σὺ κελεύεις· ὁ  
 δὲ παῖς οὕτως· Ἐγὼ μὲν οὐκ ἀπολείβομαί σου, ὦ Κῦρε,  
 οὐδ' ἂν <sup>|pack animal, porter</sup> ὕψι σοι <sup>|follow with, be</sup> καὶ ὁ <sup>|related</sup>  
 Κῦρος ἐπιγέλασας εἶπε· Καὶ ἐπὶ <sup>|how many, much, far?</sup> οὕτως  
 τὴν γυναικά σου ἀκούσαι ὅτι <sup>|carry baggage</sup>, Ἄλλ' οὐδέν,  
 ἔφη, ἀκούειν δεήσει αὐτήν· ἄξω γάρ, ὥστε ὁρᾶν ἐξέσται  
 αὐτῇ ὅ τι ἂν ἐγὼ πράττω. <sup>|season, time</sup> ἔρη, <sup>|pack up</sup>  
 ὑμῶν εἴη. <sup>|consider</sup> <sup>ἔτι</sup> <sup>|pack up</sup> παρέσεσθαι ὅ τι  
<sup>|customary;</sup>  
 ἂν ὁ πατήρ δῶ. τότε μὲν δὴ <sup>|be host</sup> οἱ <sup>|soldier,</sup><sub>|mercenary</sub>  
 ἐκοιμήθησαν.

## 3.2

Τῇ δ' <sup>|the</sup> <sup>next</sup> <sup>|take up, re-</sup> Κῦρος τὸν Τιγράνην καὶ τῶν  
<sup>|later</sup> <sup>|cover, resume</sup>  
 Μήδων <sup>|rider</sup> τοὺς <sup>|best</sup> καὶ τῶν ἑαυτοῦ φίλων  
<sup>|as/how many/great</sup> ἐδόκει εἶναι, <sup>|drive around</sup> τὴν <sup>|place</sup>  
 κατεθέατο, σκοπῶν <sup>|where</sup> <sup>|build</sup> <sup>|fort</sup> καὶ

Cyrus twice the sum which he had named. But Cyrus would take no more than he had fixed, and gave the rest back to the king, only asking whether he or his son was to lead the force. And the father answered that it should be as Cyrus chose, but the son said, "I will not leave you, Cyrus, if I must carry the baggage to follow you." And Cyrus laughed and said, "What will you take to let us tell your wife that you have become a baggage-bearer?" "She will not need to be told," he answered, "I mean to bring her with me, and she can see for herself all that her husband does." "Then it is high time," said Cyrus, "that you got your own baggage together now." "We will come," said he, "be sure of that, in good time, with whatever baggage my father gives."

So the soldiers were the guests of Armenia for the day, and rested for that night.

### 3.2

But on the day following Cyrus took Tigranes and the best of the Median cavalry, with chosen followers of his own, and scoured the whole country to decide where he should build a fort. He halted on the

*vocabulary***ἀεργός** lazy ~ergonomics**ἄκρα** at the edge, extreme ~acute**ἄκρη** at the edge, extreme**ἄκρις** -ός (f) hilltop ~acute**ἄκρον** crest, extremity ~acute**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme ~acute**ἀργός** glistening, swift**ἄρνυμαι** get, win**δειπνέω** eat, dine**ἐπερωτάω** consult, ask**ἐπὴν** when, after**ἐρήμος** empty**ἔρομαι** ask a question, ask about, go searching through**ἡγεμών** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide, chief ~hegemony**θύω** (ō) rush; sacrifice ~θύω**καταθέω** run down**κατανοέω** notice, realize, learn**κοιμάω** put to sleep; (pass) lie down, have sex**ληίζομαι** plunder ~lucre**μυρίος** (ō) 10,000 ~myriad**ὁμός** same ~homoerotic**ὁμοῦ** together**ὁμόω** unite ~homoerotic**ὁπόθεν** whence**ὀρεύς** -ος (m) mule ~hormone**πελταστής** -οῦ (m, 1) light troops  
~pelt**Πέρσης** Persian**ποῖος** what kind**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark  
~semaphore**σκοπάω** watch, observe**σκοπέω** behold, consider**σκοπός** (f) lookout, overseer, spy, target ~telescope**συγκαλέω** call together ~gallo**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion**συσκευάζω** pack up**τετρακισχίλιοι** 4000 ~kilo-**τοιόσδε** such**τοξότης** -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic**ὕπάγω** lead under the yoke, lead away from ~demagogue**ὕστεραίος** the next; later

ἐπ' ἄκρον τι ἐλθὼν ἐπηρώτα τὸν Τιγράνην ποῖα εἴη  
 τῶν ὀρέων ὀπόθεν οἱ Χαλδαῖοι καταθέοντες λήζονται.  
 καὶ ὁ Τιγράνης ἐδείκνυνεν. ὁ δὲ πάλιν ἤρετο· Νῦν δὲ  
 ταῦτα τὰ ὄρη ἔρημά ἐστιν; οὐ μὰ Δί', ἔφη, ἀλλ' αἰὲ  
 σκοποὶ εἰσὶν ἐκείνων οἳ σημαίνουσι τοῖς ἄλλοις ὅτι ἂν  
 ὀρώσι. ἰ οὖν, ἔφη, ποιοῦσιν, ἐπὴν αἰσθωνται; Βοηθοῦσιν,  
 ἔφη, ἐπὶ τὰ ἄκρα, ὥς ἂν ἕκαστος δύνηται. ταῦτα μὲν  
 δὴ ὁ Κῦρος ἠκηκόει· σκοπῶν δὲ κατενόει πολλὴν τῆς  
 χώρας τοῖς Ἀρμενίοις ἔρημον καὶ ἀργὸν οὖσαν διὰ τὸν  
 πόλεμον. καὶ τότε μὲν ἀπῆλθον ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον  
 καὶ δειπνήσαντες ἐκοιμήθησαν. τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ αὐτός τε  
 ὁ Τιγράνης παρῆν συνεσκευασμένος καὶ ἱππεῖς εἰς τοὺς  
 τετρακισχιλίους συνελέγοντο αὐτῷ καὶ τοξόται εἰς τοὺς  
 μυρίους, καὶ πελτασταὶ ἄλλοι τοσοῦτοι. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἐν  
 ᾧ συνελέγοντο ἐθύετο· ἐπεὶ δὲ καλὰ τὰ ἱερὰ ἦν αὐτῷ,  
 συνεκάλεσε τοὺς τε τῶν Περσῶν ἡγεμόνας καὶ τοὺς τῶν  
 Μήδων. ἐπεὶ δ' ὁμοῦ ἦσαν, ἔλεξε τοιάδε.

Ἄνδρες φίλοι, ἔστι μὲν τὰ ὄρη ταῦτα ἃ ὀρώμεν



ἐπ' ἄκρον τι ἐλθὼν |consult, ask τὸν Τιγράνην |what kind  
 τῶν ὁρέων |whence οἱ Χαλδαῖοι |run down |ληίζομαι?: plunder; or  
 |ληίζομαι?: plunder  
 καὶ ὁ Τιγράνης ἐδείκνυεν. ὁ δὲ πάλιν ἤρετο· Νῦν δὲ  
 ταῦτα τὰ |mountain, ἃ ἐστίν; οὐ μὰ Δί', ἔφη, ἀλλ' αἰεὶ  
 |lookout εἰσὶν ἐκείνων οἷ |give orders to; οἷς ἄλλοις ὅ τι ἂν  
 |show; mark  
 ὁρώσι. ἰ οὖν, ἔφη, ποιούσιν, |when, |perceive , |rescue ,  
 |after  
 ἔφη, ἐπὶ τὰ ἄκρα, ὥς ἂν ἕκαστος δύνηται. ταῦτα μὲν  
 δὴ ὁ Κῦρος ἠκηκόει· σκοπῶν δὲ |notice, re- πολλὴν τῆς  
 |alize, learn  
 χώρας τοῖς Ἀρμενίοις ἔρημον καὶ ἀργὸν οὔσαν διὰ τὸν  
 πόλεμον. καὶ τότε μὲν ἀπῆλθον ἐπὶ τὸ |army camp  
 καὶ |eat, dine ἐκοιμήθησαν. τῇ δ' |the next; later' .ὅς τε  
 ὁ Τιγράνης παρήν |pack up καὶ |rider εἰς τοὺς  
 |4000 |collect, αὐτῷ καὶ |archer εἰς τοὺς  
 |assemble  
 μυρίους, καὶ |light troops ἄλλοι |so much ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἐν  
 ᾧ |collect, |rush; sacrifice` δὲ καλὰ τὰ ἱερὰ ἦν αὐτῷ,  
 |assemble  
 |call together τούς τε τῶν Περσῶν |leader καὶ τοὺς τῶν  
 Μήδων. ἐπεὶ δ' ὁμοῦ ἦσαν, ἔλεξε |such .  
 Ἄνδρες φίλοι, ἔστι μὲν τὰ |mountain. ἡ δ' ὁρώμεν

top of a mountain-pass and asked Tigranes where the heights lay down which the Chaldaeans swept when they came to plunder. Tigranes showed him. Then Cyrus asked him if the mountains were quite uninhabited. "No, indeed," said the prince, "there are always men on the look-out, who signal to the others if they catch sight of anything." "And what do they do," he asked, "when they see the signal?" "They rush to the rescue," he said, "as quickly as they can." Cyrus listened and looked, and he could see that large tracts lay desolate and untilled because of the war. That day they came back to camp and took their supper and slept. But the next morning Tigranes presented himself with all his baggage in order and ready for the march, 4000 cavalry at his back, 10,000 bowmen, and as many targeteers. While they were marching up, Cyrus offered sacrifice, and finding that the victims were favourable, he called the leaders of the Persians together and the chief captains of the Medes and spoke to them thus:

"My friends, there lie the Chaldaean hills. If we could seize

*vocabulary*

**ἀκίνδυνος** (ὅ) safe  
**ἄκρον** crest, extremity ~acute  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme ~acute  
**ἀμαχεί** unresisted  
**ἀνθρώπινος** human  
**ἄνω** (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste;  
 upwards, out to sea  
**ἀριστερός** left-hand  
**ἀσθενής** weak  
**δεξιὰ** right-hand ~dextrous  
**ἔμπροσθεν** before (time, space)  
**ἐπιτρέπω** entrust, decide, allow  
 ~trophy  
**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act,  
 uncommon) handle, take care of  
**ἥμισυς** half ~hemisphere  
**καρτερέω** be patient  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie  
**ὀπίσθεν** behind, hereafter  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite  
**ὄρθιος** shrill; steep, straight  
**ὀρμή** pressure, assault, order  
 ~hormone  
**παντάπασιν** altogether; yes, certainly  
**παρακελεύομαι** recommend,  
 encourage  
**πόνος** toil, suffering ~osteopenia  
**προθυμία** (ὅ) zeal, alacrity ~fume  
**προσδοκάω** expect  
**ῥαίω** smite  
**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark  
 ~semaphore  
**σπεύδω** 'push on,' get going, hurry  
 ~repudiate  
**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion  
**σωφρονέω** be sane, moderate  
**τάχος** -ους (n, 3) speed ~tachometer  
**φθάζω** do first, outstrip  
**φθάνω** (ἄ) do first, outstrip  
**φρούριον** fort  
**ώθέω** push

Χαλδαίων· εἰ δὲ ταῦτα καταλάβοιμεν καὶ ἐπ' ἄκρου  
γένοιτο ἡμέτερον φρούριον, σωφρονεῖν ἀνάγκη ἂν εἴη  
πρὸς ἡμᾶς ἀμφοτέροις, τοῖς τε Ἀρμενίοις καὶ τοῖς  
Χαλδαίοις. τὰ μὲν οὖν ἱερὰ καλὰ ἡμῖν· ἀνθρωπίνῃ  
δὲ προθυμίᾳ εἰς τὸ πραχθῆναι ταῦτα οὐδὲν οὔτω μέγα  
σύμμαχον ἂν γένοιτο ὡς τάχος. ἦν γὰρ φθάσωμεν πρὶν  
τοὺς πολεμίους συλλεγῆναι ἀναβάντες, ἢ παντάπασιν  
ἀμαχεὶ λάβοιμεν ἂν τὸ ἄκρον ἢ ὀλίγοις τε καὶ ἀσθενέσι  
χρησαίμεθ' ἂν πολεμίους. τῶν οὖν πόνων οὐδεὶς ῥάων οὐδ'  
ἀκινδυνότερος, ἔφη, ἐστὶ τοῦ νῦν καρτερῆσαι σπεύδοντας.  
ἴτε οὖν ἐπὶ τὰ ὄπλα. καὶ[...] Ὑμεῖς μὲν, ὦ Μῆδοι, ἐν  
ἀριστερᾷ ἡμῶν πορεύεσθε· ὑμεῖς δέ, ὦ Ἀρμένιοι, οἱ μὲν  
ἡμίσεις ἐν δεξιᾷ, οἱ δ' ἡμίσεις ἔμπροσθεν ἡμῶν ἡγείσθε·  
ὑμεῖς δ', ὦ ἱππεῖς, ὀπίσθεν ἔπεσθε παρακελευόμενοι  
καὶ ὠθοῦντες ἄνω ἡμᾶς, ἦν δέ τις μαλακύνηται, μὴ  
ἐπιτρέπετε. ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ὁ Κῦρος ἡγείτο ὀρθίους  
ποιησάμενος τοὺς λόχους. οἱ δὲ Χαλδαῖοι ὡς ἔγνωσαν  
τὴν ὁρμὴν ἄνω οὐσαν, εὐθὺς ἐσήμαινόν τε τοῖς ἑαυτῶν

Χαλδαίων· εἰ δὲ ταῦτα |seize, understand, catch, τ' ἄκρον  
 |overtake; (mp) happen  
 γένοιτο |our, my |fort , |be sane, mod-|necessity ἂν εἴη  
 |erate  
 πρὸς ἡμᾶς ἀμφοτέροις, τοῖς τε Ἀρμενίοις καὶ τοῖς  
 Χαλδαίοις. τὰ μὲν οὖν ἱερὰ καλὰ ἡμῖν· |human  
 δὲ προθυμία εἰς τὸ πραχθῆναι ταῦτα οὐδὲν οὕτω μέγα  
 σύμμαχον ἂν γένοιτο ὥς |speed . ἥν γὰρ φθάσωμεν πρὶν  
 τοὺς πολεμίους |collect, |go up, embark ᾗ, |altogether;  
 |assemble |yes, certainly  
 |unresisted· ἴβοιμεν ἂν τὸ ἄκρον ἢ ὀλίγοις τε καὶ |weak  
 χρησαίμεθ' ἂν πολεμίοις. τῶν οὖν |toil, suffering ᾗ ὁ ῥάων οὐδ'  
 |safe , ἔφη, ἐστὶ τοῦ νῦν |be patient |'push on,' get  
 |going, hurry  
 ἵτε οὖν ἐπὶ τὰ |tool . καὶ[...] Ὑμεῖς μὲν, ὦ Μῆδοι, ἐν  
 |left-hand ἡμῶν πορεύεσθε· ὑμεῖς δέ, ὦ Ἀρμένιοι, οἱ μὲν  
 |half ἐν δεξιᾷ, οἱ δ' |half |before (time, space) ἡγείσθε·  
 ὑμεῖς δ', ὦ |rider , |behind, ἔπεσθε |recommend,  
 |hereafter |encourage  
 καὶ |push ἄνω ἡμᾶς, ἥν δέ τις μαλακύνηται, μὴ  
 |entrust, de- ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ὁ Κῦρος ἡγείτο |shrill; steep,  
 |cide, allow |straight  
 ποιησάμενος τοὺς |ambush, band, ἔ Χαλδαῖοι ὥς ἔγνωσαν  
 |childbirth  
 τὴν |pressure, ᾗ as- οὔσαν, εὐθὺς |give orders to; τοῖς ἐαυτῶν  
 |sault, order |show; mark

them and set a garrison to hold the pass, we should compel them both, Chaldaeans and Armenians alike, to behave themselves discreetly. The victims are favourable; and to help a man in such a work as this there is no ally half so good as speed. If we scale the heights before the enemy have time to gather, we may take the position out of hand without a blow, and at most we shall only find a handful of weak and scattered forces to oppose us. Steady speed is all I ask for, and surely I could ask for nothing easier or less dangerous. To arms then! The Medes will march on our left, half the Armenians on our right, and the rest in the van to lead the way, the cavalry in our rear, to cheer us on and push us forward and let none of us give way.”

With that Cyrus led the advance, the army in column behind him. As soon as the Chaldaeans saw them sweeping up from the plain, they signalled to their fellows till the heights re-echoed with answering shouts, and the tribesmen gathered

*vocabulary*

**ἄκρον** crest, extremity ~acute  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme ~acute  
**ἄνω** (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste;  
 upwards, out to sea  
**ἄρα** interrogative pcl  
**ἄρή** bane, harm; prayer  
**ἄρῃν** ἄρνός (m, 3) lamb, sheep; wool  
**ἄρης** war, warlike spirit  
**γέρορον** wicker object  
**δείκνυμι** (ὀ) show, point out  
**ἐγγύς** near  
**ἐπειδάν** when, after  
**μισθός** reward, wages  
**ὄρεινός** mountainous  
**παλτός** brandished, hurled  
**παρεγγυάω** entrust; pass an order  
**πένης** -τος (m) poor

**Πέρσης** Persian

**πλησιάζω** bring/be near; have sex  
**πολεμικός** warlike, hostile ~polemic  
**προσδοκάω** expect  
**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark  
 ~semaphore  
**σπεύδω** 'push on,' get going, hurry  
 ~repudiate  
**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war,  
 campaign ~strategy  
**συμβοάω** shout with  
**συναθροίζω** assemble, gather  
**ὑπάγω** lead under the yoke, lead away  
 from ~demagogue  
**ὑποφεύγω** flee before ~fugitive  
**φθάζω** do first, outstrip  
**φθάνω** (ἄ) do first, outstrip

καὶ συνεβόων ἀλλήλους καὶ συνηθροίζοντο. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος παρηγγύα, Ἄνδρες Πέρσαι, ἡμῖν σημαίνουσι σπεύδειν. ἦν γὰρ φθάσωμεν ἄνω γενόμενοι, οὐδὲν τὰ τῶν πολεμίων δυνήσεται.

Εἶχον δ' οἱ Χαλδαῖοι γέρρα τε καὶ παλτὰ δύο· καὶ πολεμικώτατοι δὲ λέγονται οὗτοι τῶν περὶ ἐκείνην τὴν χώραν εἶναι· καὶ μισθοῦ στρατεύονται, ὁπότεν τις αὐτῶν δέηται, διὰ τὸ πολεμικοί τε καὶ πένητες εἶναι· καὶ γὰρ ἡ χώρα αὐτοῖς ὀρεινὴ τέ ἐστι καὶ ὀλίγη ἡ τὰ χρήματα ἔχουσα. ὥς δὲ μᾶλλον ἐπλησίαζον οἱ ἀμφὶ τὸν Κῦρον τῶν ἄκρων, ὁ Τιγράνης σὺν τῷ Κύρῳ πορευόμενος εἶπεν· ὦ Κῦρε, ἂρ' οἶσθ', ἔφη, ὅτι αὐτοὺς ἡμᾶς αὐτίκα μάλα δεήσει μάχεσθαι; ὥς οἱ γε Ἀρμένιοι οὐ μὴ δέξονται τοὺς πολεμίους. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἰπὼν ὅτι εἰδείη τοῦτο, εὐθὺς παρηγγύησε τοῖς Πέρσαις παρασκευάζεσθαι, ὥς αὐτίκα δεῆσον διώκειν, ἐπειδὴν ὑπαγάγωσι τοὺς πολεμίους ὑποφεύγοντες οἱ Ἀρμένιοι ὥστ' ἐγγὺς ἡμῖν γενέσθαι. οὕτω δὴ ἡγούντο μὲν οἱ Ἀρμένιοι· τῶν δὲ Χαλδαιῶν



καὶ συνεβόων ἀλλήλους καὶ |assemble, gather . ὁ δὲ Κῦρος

|entrust; pass Ἄνδρες Πέρσαι, ἡμῖν |give orders to; |‘push on,’ get  
an order |show; mark |going, hurry

γὰρ φθάσωμεν ἄνω γενόμενοι, οὐδὲν τὰ τῶν πολεμίων  
δυνήσεται.

Εἶχον δ’ οἱ Χαλδαῖοι |wicker τε καὶ |brandished, ἔλκεα καὶ  
|object |hurled

|warlike, hostile δὲ λέγονται οὗτοι τῶν περὶ ἐκείνην τὴν

|place εἶναι· καὶ |reward, |make an expedition, ὅταν τις αὐτῶν  
wages |war, campaign

δέηται, διὰ τὸ |warlike, τε καὶ |poor εἶναι· καὶ γὰρ  
|hostile

ἢ |place αὐτοῖς ὀρεινὴ τέ ἐστι καὶ ὀλίγη ἢ τὰ |possession, money,  
|business

ἔχουσα. ὥς δὲ μάλλον |bring/be near; ἢ ἀμφὶ τὸν Κῦρον  
|have sex

τῶν ἄκρων, ὁ Τιγράνης σὺν τῷ Κύρῳ πορευόμενος εἶπεν·

ᾧ Κῦρε, ἄρ’ οἶσθ’, ἔφη, ὅτι αὐτοὺς ἡμᾶς |at once |very

δεήσει μάχεσθαι; ὥς οἱ γε Ἀρμένιοι οὐ μὴ δέξονται τοὺς

πολεμίους. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἰπὼν ὅτι εἰδείη τοῦτο, εὐθὺς

|entrust; pass τοῖς Πέρσαις |prepare, render , ὥς |at once  
an order

δεήσον |chase , |when, |lead τοὺς πολεμίους  
|after

|flee before οἱ Ἀρμένιοι ὥστ’ |near ἡμῖν γενέσθαι. οὕτω

δὴ ἡγοῦντο μὲν οἱ Ἀρμένιοι· τῶν δὲ Χαλδαιῶν

on every side. Then Cyrus sent word along his lines, "Soldiers of Persia, they are signalling to us to make haste. If only we reach the top before them, all they can do will be in vain."

Now the Chaldaeans were said to be the most warlike of all the tribes in that country, and each of them was armed with a shield and a brace of javelins. They fight for pay wherever they are needed, partly because they are warriors born, but partly through poverty; for their country is mountainous, and the fertile part of it small. As Cyrus and his force drew near the head of the pass, Tigranes, who was marching at his side, said:

"Do you know, Cyrus, that before long we shall be in the thick of the fight ourselves? Our Armenians will never stand the charge." Cyrus answered that he was well aware of that, and immediately sent word that the Persians should be ready to give chase at once, "as soon as we see the Armenians decoying the enemy by feigning flight and drawing them within our reach."

Thus they marched up with the Armenians in the van: and the Chaldaeans who had collected waited till

*vocabulary*

**αἰχμάλωτος** captive ~acute  
**ἄκρα** at the edge, extreme ~acute  
**ἄκρη** at the edge, extreme  
**ἄκρῖς** -ός (f) hilltop ~acute  
**ἄκρον** crest, extremity ~acute  
**ἀλαλάζω** give war cry  
**ἀλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix  
**ἄνω** (ἄ) accomplish, pass, waste;  
 upwards, out to sea  
**ἀριστάω** eat lunch ~aristocrat  
**ἀριστοποιέω** (ἄ) make breakfast  
**ἐγγύς** near  
**εἴωθα** be accustomed, in the habit  
**ἐνυδρος** having water; aquatic  
**ἐρυμνός** fortified, impregnable  
**θέω** run, run for  
**καθοράω** look down ~panorama  
**καταμανθάνω** examine, observe  
**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics  
**οἴκησις** -εως (f) habitation  
**οἶχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone

**ὁμός** same ~homoerotic  
**ὁμοῦ** together  
**ὁμόω** unite ~homoerotic  
**ὁπόσος** as many as, how many, how  
 great  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
 recommend, encourage  
**παραγίγνομαι** be beside, attend  
 ~genus  
**πελάζω** bring/come to, near, into  
 contact with  
**πλησιάζω** bring/be near; have sex  
**προσάγω** bring to a place  
 ~demagogue  
**προσδοκάω** expect  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
**τειχίζω** build  
**τέκτων** (f) skilled worker ~technician  
**τιτρώσκω** wound, bring to grief  
 ~trauma  
**φρούριον** fort

οἱ παρόντες, ὥς ἐπλησίαζον οἱ Ἀρμένιοι, ἀλαλάξαντες ἔθεον, ὥσπερ εἰώθεσαν, εἰς αὐτούς· οἱ δὲ Ἀρμένιοι, ὥσπερ εἰώθεσαν, οὐκ ἐδέχοντο. ὥς δὲ διώκοντες οἱ Χαλδαῖοι εἶδον ἐναντίους μαχαιροφόρους ἱεμένους ἄνω, οἱ μὲν τινες αὐτοῖς πελάσαντες ταχὺ ἀπέθνησκον, οἱ δ' ἔφευγον, οἱ δέ τινες καὶ ἐάλωσαν αὐτῶν, ταχὺ δὲ εἵχετο τὰ ἄκρα. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ ἄκρα εἶχον οἱ ἀμφὶ τὸν Κῦρον, καθεώρων τε τῶν Χαλδαίων τὰς οἰκήσεις καὶ ἡσθάνοντο φεύγοντας αὐτοὺς ἐκ τῶν ἐγγύς οἰκήσεων. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος, ὥς πάντες οἱ στρατιῶται ὁμοῦ ἐγένοντο, ἀριστοποιεῖσθαι παρήγγειλεν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡριστήκεσαν, καταμαθὼν ἔνθα αἱ σκοπαὶ ἦσαν αἱ τῶν Χαλδαίων ἐρυμνόν τε ὃν καὶ ἔνυδρον, εὐθὺς ἐτείχιζε φρούριον· καὶ τὸν Τιγράνην ἐκέλευε πέμπειν ἐπὶ τὸν πατέρα καὶ κελεύειν παραγενέσθαι ἔχοντα ὅποσοι εἶεν τέκτονές τε καὶ λιθοτόμοι. ἐπὶ μὲν δὴ τὸν Ἀρμένιον ὥχετο ἄγγελος· ὁ δὲ Κῦρος τοῖς παροῦσιν ἐτείχιζεν.

Ἐν δὲ τούτῳ προσάγουσι τῷ Κύρῳ τοὺς αἰχμαλώτους δεδεμένους, τοὺς δέ τινες καὶ τετρωμένους. ὥς δὲ

οἱ παρόντες, ὥς |bring/be near; ἴ Ἀρμένιοι, |give war cry  
|have sex

|run , ὥσπερ |be accustomed, ὑτούς· οἱ δὲ Ἀρμένιοι, ὥσπερ  
|in the habit

|be accustomed, : ἐδέχοντο. ὥς δὲ διώκοντες οἱ Χαλδαῖοι  
|in the habit

εἶδον |opposite μαχαιοφόρους ἰεμένους ἄνω, οἱ μὲν τινες

αὐτοῖς |bring/come to, near, ἀπέθνησκον, οἱ δ' ἔφευγον, οἱ  
|into contact with

δέ τινες καὶ |be captured ὑτῶν, ταχὺ δὲ εἵχετο τὰ ἅκρα.

ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ ἅκρα εἶχον οἱ ἀμφὶ τὸν Κῦρον, |look down τε

τῶν Χαλδαίων τὰς οἰκήσεις καὶ |perceive φεύγοντας

αὐτοὺς ἐκ τῶν |near |habitation . ὁ δὲ Κῦρος, ὥς πάντες οἱ

|soldier, ὁμοῦ ἐγένοντο, |make breakfast |transmit; order, summon,  
|mercenary |recommend, encourage

ἐπεὶ δὲ |eat lunch , |examine, ἔνθα αἱ σκοπαὶ ἦσαν αἱ  
|observe

τῶν Χαλδαίων |fortified τε ὃν καὶ |having wa- ἰθὺς |build  
|ter; aquatic

|fort καὶ τὸν Τιγράνην ἐκέλευε πέμπειν ἐπὶ τὸν

πατέρα καὶ κελεύειν |be beside, attend ἔχοντα |as/how many/great

|worker τε καὶ λιθοτόμοι. ἐπὶ μὲν δὴ τὸν Ἀρμένιον |come, go

ἄγγελος· ὁ δὲ Κῦρος τοῖς παροῦσιν |build

Ἐν δὲ τούτῳ |bring to a place ᾧ Κύρῳ τοὺς |captive

δεδεμένους, τοὺς δέ τινες καὶ |wound, bring, ὥς δὲ  
|to grief

they were almost on them, and then charged with a tremendous shout, as their custom was, and the Armenians, as was ever theirs, turned and ran. But in the midst of the pursuit the Chaldaeans met new opponents streaming up the pass, armed with short swords, and some of them were cut to pieces at once before they could withdraw, while others were taken prisoners and the rest fled, and in a few moments the heights were won. From the top of the pass Cyrus and his staff looked down and saw below them the Chaldaean villages with fugitives pouring from the nearest houses. Soon the rest of the army came up, and Cyrus ordered them all to take the morning meal. When it was over, and he had ascertained that the look-out was really in a strong position, and well supplied with water, he set about fortifying a post without more ado, and he bade Tigranes send to his father and bid him come at once with all the carpenters and stonemasons he could fetch, and while a messenger went off to the king Cyrus did all he could with what he had at hand.

Meanwhile they brought up the prisoners, all of them bound in chains and some wounded. But Cyrus when he

*vocabulary***ἄκρα** at the edge, extreme ~acute**ἄκρη** at the edge, extreme**ἄκρις** -ός (f) hilltop ~acute**ἄκρον** crest, extremity ~acute**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not needing ~Sp. sin**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful**δεξιόομαι** salute, greet**δεῦρο** here, come here!**ἕζομαι** act: set, seat; pass: sit down, sit up ~sit**εἴτε** if, whenever; either/or**ἐπαινέω** concur, praise, advise**ἐπιθυμέω** (ῥ) wish, covet**θεραπεύω** help, serve ~therapy**ἰατρός** (ᾱ) physician**μέλω** concern, interest, be one's responsibility**μηκέτι** no more**οἴκαδε** homeward ~economics**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle ~hoplite**πράξις** -εως (f) result, business ~practice**σωφρονέω** be sane, moderate**τέκτων** (f) skilled worker ~technician**τιτρώσκω** wound, bring to grief ~trauma**ὕμετερος** (ῥ) yours

εἶδεν, εὐθὺς λύειν μὲν ἐκέλευσε τοὺς δεδεμένους, τοὺς δὲ τετρωμένους ἰατροὺς καλέσας θεραπεύειν ἐκέλευσεν· ἔπειτα δὲ ἔλεξε τοῖς Χαλδαίοις ὅτι ἤκοι οὔτε ἀπολέσαι ἐπιθυμῶν ἐκείνους οὔτε πολεμεῖν δεόμενος, ἀλλ' εἰρήνην βουλόμενος ποιῆσαι Ἀρμενίοις καὶ Χαλδαίοις. Πρὶν μὲν οὖν ἔχεσθαι τὰ ἄκρα οἶδ' ὅτι οὐδὲν ἐδεῖσθε εἰρήνης· τὰ μὲν γὰρ ὑμέτερα ἀσφαλῶς εἶχε, τὰ δὲ τῶν Ἀρμενίων ἤγετε καὶ ἐφέρετε· νῦν δὲ ὁρᾶτε δὴ ἐν οἷῳ ἐστέ. ἐγὼ οὖν ἀφίημι ὑμᾶς οἴκαδε τοὺς εἰλημμένους, καὶ δίδωμι ὑμῖν σὺν τοῖς ἄλλοις Χαλδαίοις βουλεύσασθαι εἴτε βούλεσθε πολεμεῖν ἡμῖν εἴτε φίλοι εἶναι. καὶ ἦν μὲν πόλεμον αἰρήσθε, μηκέτι ἤκετε δεῦρο ἄνευ ὅπλων, εἰ σωφρονεῖτε· ἦν δὲ εἰρήνης δοκῇτε δεῖσθαι, ἄνευ ὅπλων ἤκετε· ὥς δὲ καλῶς ἔξει τὰ ὑμέτερα, ἦν φίλοι γένησθε, ἐμοὶ μελήσει. ἀκούσαντες δὲ ταῦτα οἱ Χαλδαῖοι, πολλὰ μὲν ἐπαινέσαντες, πολλὰ δὲ δεξιωσάμενοι τὸν Κῦρον ᾤχοντο οἴκαδε.

Ὁ Δὲ Ἀρμένιος ὥς ἤκουσε τήν τε κλήσιν τοῦ Κύρου καὶ τὴν πρᾶξιν, λαβὼν τοὺς τέκτονας καὶ τᾶλλα



εἶδεν, εὐθὺς λύειν μὲν ἐκέλευσε τοὺς δεδεμένους, τοὺς

δὲ |wound, bring to|physician .καλέσας |help, serve ἐκέλευσεν·  
|grief

ἔπειτα δὲ ἔλεξε τοῖς Χαλδαίοις ὅτι ἥκοι οὔτε ἀπολέσαι

|wish, covet ἐκείνους οὔτε πολεμεῖν δεόμενος, ἀλλ' |peace

βουλόμενος ποιῆσαι Ἀρμενίοις καὶ Χαλδαίοις. Πρὶν μὲν

οὖν ἔχεσθαι τὰ ἄκρα οἶδ' ὅτι οὐδὲν ἐδείσθε |peace τὰ μὲν

γὰρ |yours ἀσφαλῶς εἶχε, τὰ δὲ τῶν Ἀρμενίων ἤγετε

καὶ ἐφέρετε· νῦν δὲ ὁρᾶτε δὴ ἐν οἴῳ ἐστέ. ἐγὼ οὖν ἀφίημι

ὑμᾶς |homeward ᾗς εἰλημμένους, καὶ δίδωμι ὑμῖν σὺν τοῖς

ἄλλοις Χαλδαίοις |(mp) to deliberate|if, whenever; |peace  
|either/or

ἡμῖν |if, whenever; εἶναι. καὶ ἦν μὲν πόλεμον αἰρήσθε, |no more  
|either/or

|be |here, |away |tool , εἰ |be sane, moderate δὲ |peace  
|present, |come  
|have |here! not  
|arrived

οὐκ ἔχοντες δεῖσθαι, ἀλλ' ἔχοντες ἀφίημι, καὶ οὐκ ἔχοντες  
|have |away |tool |be present, |εἰ καλῶς ἔξει τὰ  
|arrived |from; |have arrived

|yours , ἦν not |have |γέννησθε, ἐμοὶ |be in/on the mind ...ντες δὲ

ταῦτα οἱ Χαλδαῖοι, πολλὰ μὲν |concur , πολλὰ δὲ  
|need-  
|ing

|salute, greet τὸν Κύρον |come, go |homeward

Ὁ Δὲ Ἀρμένιος ὡς ἤκουσε τήν τε κλήσιν τοῦ Κύρου καὶ

τήν |result, , λαβὼν τοὺς |worker καὶ τὰλλα  
|business

saw their plight ordered the chains to be struck off, and sent for surgeons to dress their wounds, and then he told them that he came neither to destroy them nor to war against them, but to make peace between them and the Armenians. "I know," he said, "before your pass was taken you did not wish for peace. Your own land was in safety and you could harry the Armenians: but you can see for yourselves how things stand to-day. Accordingly I will let you all go back to your homes in freedom, and I will allow you and your fellows to take counsel together and choose whether you will have us for your enemies or your friends. If you decide on war, you had better not come here again without your weapons, but if you choose peace, come unarmed and welcome: it shall be my care to see that all is well with you, if you are my friends."

And when the Chaldaeans heard that, they poured out praises and thanks, and then they turned homewards and departed.

Meanwhile the king, receiving the call of Cyrus, and hearing the business that was at hand, had gathered his workmen together and took

*vocabulary*

**αἰσχύνω** (ῶ) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar  
**ἄκρον** crest, extremity ~acute  
**ἄκρος** at the edge, extreme ~acute  
**ἁλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix  
**ἀναφαίνω** reveal, shine ~phenomenon  
**ἀπελάνυνω** expel, exclude, ward off;  
 (intrans) ride away  
**ἀποτελέω** accomplish, produce  
**ἕζομαι** act: set, seat; pass: sit down, sit up ~sit  
**ἐλευθερία** freedom

**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
 ~station  
**ἐπιχειρέω** do, try, attack ~chiral  
**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near, direct, stop ~station  
**μηχανάομαι** build, contrive  
 ~mechanism  
**πολλαπλάσιος** many times more  
**προοράω** see before oneself  
**σαφής** clear, understandable  
**ὕπισχνέομαι** promise, agree to do  
 ~ischemia

ὅσων ᾤετο δεῖν, ἦκε πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον ὡς ἐδύνατο  
τάχιστα. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδε τὸν Κῦρον, ἔλεξεν· ὦ Κῦρε, ὡς  
ὀλίγα δυνάμενοι προορᾶν ἄνθρωποι περὶ τοῦ μέλλοντος  
πολλὰ ἐπιχειροῦμεν πράττειν. νῦν γὰρ δὴ καὶ  
ἐγὼ ἐλευθερίαν μὲν μηχανᾶσθαι ἐπιχειρήσας δοῦλος  
ὡς οὐδεπώποτε ἐγενόμην· ἐπεὶ δ' ἐάλωμεν, σαφῶς  
ἀπολωλέναι νομίσαντες νῦν ἀναφαινόμεθα σεσωσμένοι  
ὡς οὐδεπώποτε. οἱ γὰρ οὐδεπώποτε ἐπαύοντο πολλὰ  
κακὰ ἡμᾶς ποιοῦντες, νῦν ὁρῶ τούτους ἔχοντας ὥσπερ  
ἐγὼ ηὐχόμεν. καὶ τοῦτο ἐπίστω, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, ὅτι  
ἐγὼ ὥστε ἀπελάσαι Χαλδαίους ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν ἄκρων  
πολλαπλάσια ἂν ἔδωκα χρήματα ὧν σὺ νῦν ἔχεις  
παρ' ἐμοῦ· καὶ ἂ ὑπισχνοῦ ποιήσῃν ἀγαθὰ ἡμᾶς ὅτ'  
ἐλάβανες τὰ χρήματα, ἀποτετέλεσταί σοι ἤδη, ὥστε  
καὶ προσοφείλοντές σοι ἄλλας χάριτας ἀναπεφήναμεν,  
ἅς ἡμεῖς γε, εἰ μὴ κακοί ἐσμεν, αἰσχυνοίμεθ' ἂν σοι μὴ  
ἀποδιδόντες. ὁ μὲν Ἀρμένιος τοσαῦτ' ἔλεξεν.

Οἱ δὲ Χαλδαῖοι ἦκον δεόμενοι τοῦ Κύρου εἰρήνην σφίσι

ὅσων ᾤετο δεῖν, ἦκε πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον ὡς ἐδύνατο  
 τάχιστα. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶδε τὸν Κῦρον, ἔλεξεν· ὦ Κῦρε, ὡς  
 ὀλίγα δυνάμενοι |see before oneself ποι περὶ τοῦ μέλλοντος  
 πολλὰ |do, try, attack πράττειν. νῦν γὰρ δὴ καὶ  
 ἐγὼ ἐλευθερίαν μὲν |build, contrive |do, try, attack |born enslaved,  
 ὡς οὐδεπώποτε ἐγενόμην· ἐπεὶ δ' |be captured |clear, under-  
 |standable  
 ἀπολωλέναι |consider customary;|reveal, shine σεσωσμένοι  
 |believe  
 ὡς οὐδεπώποτε. οἱ γὰρ οὐδεπώποτε |stop πολλὰ  
 κακὰ ἡμᾶς ποιοῦντες, νῦν ὁρῶ τούτους ἔχοντας ὥσπερ  
 ἐγὼ |declare; pray καὶ τοῦτο ἐπίστω, ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, ὅτι  
 ἐγὼ ὥστε |expel, exclude, ward off; |ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν ἄκρων  
 |(intrans) ride away  
 |many times more ἢ ἔδωκα |possession, |... σὺ νῦν ἔχεις  
 |money, busi-  
 παρ' ἐμοῦ· καὶ ἂ |promise, |ποιήσιν ἀγαθὰ ἡμᾶς ὅτ'  
 |agree  
 ἐλάβανες τὰ |possession, |accomplish, σοι ἤδη, ὥστε  
 |money, |produce  
 |business  
 καὶ προσοφείλοντες σοι ἄλλας |grace |reveal, shine  
 ἅς ἡμεῖς γε, εἰ μὴ κακοί ἐσμεν, |spoil, disgrace ἂν σοι μὴ  
 |repay . ὁ μὲν Ἀρμένιος |so much ἔλεξεν.

Οἱ δὲ Χαλδαῖοι |be present, |οἱ τοῦ Κύρου |peace σφίσι  
 |have arrived

what he thought necessary and came with all speed. And when he caught sight of Cyrus, he cried: "Ah, my lord, blind mortals that we are! How little can we see of the future, and how much we take in hand to do! I set myself to win freedom and I made myself a slave, and now, when we were captured and said to ourselves that we were utterly undone, suddenly we find a safety we never had before. Those who troubled us are taken now, even as I would have them. Be well assured, Cyrus," he added, "that I would have paid the sum you had from me over and over again simply to dislodge the Chaldaeans from these heights. The things of worth you promised me when you took the money have been paid in full already, and we discover that we are not your creditors, but deep in your debt for many kindnesses; and we shall be ashamed not to return them, or we should be base indeed, for try as we may, we shall never be able to requite in full so great a benefactor."

Such thanks the Armenian gave.

Then the Chaldaeans came back, begging Cyrus

*vocabulary***ἀεργός** lazy ~ergonomics**ἀποτελέω** accomplish, produce**ἀργός** glistening, swift**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful**αὐξάνω** strengthen**ἔξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion**ἔξεστι** it is allowed/possible**ἐξίημι** send forth, allow forth ~jet**ἐπέρομαι** ask as well; ask then**ἐπιθυμέω** (ὄ) wish, covet**εὐφραίνω** gladden ~frenzy**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis**ὀπόσος** as many as, how many, how great**πένης** -τος (m) poor**πολεμόω** make an enemy of ~polemic**πρίμαι** buy**προσγίγνομαι** become ally to**πρόσοδος** (f) approach, procession; a rent**σπανίζω** be scarce; lack; use up**σύμφημι** assent, concede**ὠνέομαι** buy

ποιῆσαι. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ἐπήρετο αὐτούς· Ἄλλο τι, ἔφη, ὦ Χαλδαῖοι, ἣ τούτου ἔνεκα εἰρήνης νῦν ἐπιθυμεῖτε ὅτι νομίζετε ἀσφαλέστερον ἂν δύνασθαι ζῆν εἰρήνης γενομένης ἢ πολεμοῦντες, ἐπεὶ ἡμεῖς τάδ' ἔχομεν; ἔφασαν οἱ Χαλδαῖοι. καὶ ὅς, Τί δ', ἔφη, εἰ καὶ ἄλλα ὑμῖν ἀγαθὰ προσγένοιτο διὰ τὴν εἰρήνην; Ἔτι ἂν, ἔφασαν, μᾶλλον εὐφραينوίμεθα. Ἄλλο τι οὖν, ἔφη, ἢ διὰ τὸ γῆς σπανίζειν ἀγαθῆς νῦν πένητες νομίζετ' εἶναι; συνέφασαν καὶ τοῦτο. Τί οὖν; ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, βούλοισθ' ἂν ἀποτελοῦντες ὅσαπερ οἱ ἄλλοι Ἀρμένιοι ἐξεῖναι ὑμῖν τῆς Ἀρμενίας γῆς ἐργάζεσθαι ὁπόσῃν ἂν θέλητε; ἔφασαν οἱ Χαλδαῖοι, εἰ πιστεύοιμεν μὴ ἀδικήσεσθαι. Τί δέ, σύ, ἔφη, ὦ Ἀρμένιε, βούλοιο ἂν σοι τὴν νῦν ἀργὸν οὔσαν γῆν ἐνεργὸν γενέσθαι, εἰ μέλλοιεν τὰ νομιζόμενα παρὰ σοὶ ἀποτελεῖν οἱ ἐργαζόμενοι; ἔφη ὁ Ἀρμένιος πολλοῦ ἂν τοῦτο πρίασθαι· πολὺ γὰρ ἂν αὐξάνεσθαι τὴν πρόσοδον. Τί δ', ὑμεῖς, ἔφη, ὦ Χαλδαῖοι, ἐπεὶ ὅρη ἀγαθὰ ἔχετε, ἐθέλοιτ' ἂν ἐὰν νέμειν ταῦτα τοὺς Ἀρμενίους, εἰ ὑμῖν μέλλοιεν οἱ νέμοντες τὰ δίκαια



ποιῆσαι. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος |ask as well; ὑτούς· Ἄλλο τι, ἔφη,  
 |ask then  
 ὦ Χαλδαῖοι, ἣ τούτου |because, |peace νῦν |wish, covet  
 |that  
 ὅτι |consider |safe, easy, steady, ἂν δύνασθαι ζῆν |peace  
 |customary; |careful  
 |believe  
 γενομένης ἣ πολεμοῦντες, ἐπεὶ ἡμεῖς τάδ' ἔχομεν; ἔφασαν  
 οἱ Χαλδαῖοι. καὶ ὅς, τί δ', ἔφη, εἰ καὶ ἄλλα ὑμῖν ἀγαθὰ  
 |become ally to διὰ τὴν |peace , Ἔτι ἄν, ἔφασαν, μᾶλλον  
 |gladden . Ἄλλο τι οὖν, ἔφη, ἣ διὰ τὸ γῆς |be scarce;  
 |lack; use up  
 ἀγαθῆς νῦν |poor |consider custom- |assent, καὶ τοῦτο.  
 |ary; believe |concede  
 τί οὖν; ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, βούλοισθ' ἂν |accomplish, ὅσαπερ οἱ  
 |produce  
 ἄλλοι Ἀρμένιοι ἐξεῖναι ὑμῖν τῆς Ἀρμενίας γῆς |work  
 |as/how many/great .; ἔφασαν οἱ Χαλδαῖοι, εἰ πιστεύοιμεν μὴ  
 |be, do wrong; τί δέ, σύ, ἔφη, ὦ Ἀρμένιε, βούλοιο ἄν σοι  
 |wrong someone  
 τὴν νῦν ἀργὸν οὔσαν γῆν ἐνεργὸν γενέσθαι, εἰ μέλλοιεν  
 τὰ |consider cus- |ῥὰ σοὶ |accomplish, οἱ |work , ἔφη  
 |tomary; believe |produce  
 ὁ Ἀρμένιος πολλοῦ ἂν τοῦτο πρίασθαι· πολὺ γὰρ ἂν  
 |strengthen τὴν |approach, pro- δ', ὑμεῖς, ἔφη, ὦ Χαλδαῖοι,  
 |cession; a rent  
 ἐπεὶ |mountain ἂ ἔχετε, ἐθέλοιτ' ἂν εἶναι |distribute ὕτα τοὺς  
 Ἀρμενίους, εἰ ὑμῖν μέλλοιεν οἱ |distribute τὰ δίκαια

to make peace with them. And Cyrus asked them: "Am I right in thinking that you desire peace to-day because you believe it will be safer for you than war, now that we hold these heights?"

And the Chaldaeans said that so it was. "Well and good," said he. "And what if other benefits were gained by peace?" "We should be all the better pleased," said they. "Is there any other reason," he asked, "for your present poverty, except your lack of fertile soil?" They said that there was none. "Well then," Cyrus went on, "would you be willing to pay the same dues as the Armenians, if you were allowed to cultivate as much of their land as you desired?" And the Chaldaeans said they would, if only they could rely on being fairly treated. "Now," said Cyrus, turning to the Armenian king, "would you like that land of yours which is now lying idle to be tilled and made productive, supposing the workers paid you the customary dues?" "I would, indeed," said the king, "so much so that I am ready to pay a large sum for it. It would mean a great increase to my revenue." "And you, Chaldaeans," said Cyrus, "with

*vocabulary***ἄκρα** at the edge, extreme ~acute**ἄκρη** at the edge, extreme**ἄκρις** -ός (f) hilltop ~acute**ἄκρον** crest, extremity ~acute**ἀποτελέω** accomplish, produce**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful**βέβαιος** steadfast; sure**εἴπερ** if indeed**ἐπαινέω** concur, praise, advise**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis**νομή** pasture; distribution**ὁπότερος** which of two, either of two**οὐδέτερος** neither**οὐκοῦν** not so?; and so**παραλαμβάνω** receive, undertake,  
associate with**πονέω** work; be busy ~osteopenia**σφόδρα** very much**τειχίζω** build**τοίνυν** well, then**ὠφελέω** help, be useful

ἀποτελεῖν; ἔφασαν οἱ Χαλδαῖοι· πολλὰ γὰρ ἂν ὠφελεῖσθαι οὐδὲν πονοῦντες. Σὺ δέ, ἔφη, ὦ Ἀρμένιε, ἐθέλοις ἂν ταῖς τούτων νομαῖς χρῆσθαι, εἰ μέλλοις μικρὰ ὠφελῶν Χαλδαίους πολὺ πλείω ὠφελήσεσθαι; Καὶ σφόδρα ἄν, ἔφη, εἴπερ οἰοίμην ἀσφαλῶς νεμεῖν. Οὐκοῦν, ἔφη, ἀσφαλῶς ἂν νέμοιτε, εἰ τὰ ἄκρα ἔχοιτε σύμμαχα; ἔφη ὁ Ἀρμένιος. Ἀλλὰ μὰ Δί', ἔφασαν οἱ Χαλδαῖοι, οὐκ ἂν ἡμεῖς ἀσφαλῶς ἐργαζοίμεθα μὴ ὅτι τὴν τούτων, ἀλλ' οὐδ' ἂν τὴν ἡμετέραν, εἰ οὗτοι τὰ ἄκρα ἔχοιεν. Εἰ δ' ὑμῖν αὖ, ἔφη, τὰ ἄκρα σύμμαχα εἶεν; Οὕτως ἄν, ἔφασαν, ἡμῖν καλῶς ἔχοι. Ἀλλὰ μὰ Δί', ἔφη ὁ Ἀρμένιος, οὐκ ἂν ἡμῖν αὖ καλῶς ἔχοι, εἰ οὗτοι παραλήψονται πάλιν τὰ ἄκρα ἄλλως τε καὶ τετειχισμένα. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν· Οὕτωςι τοίνυν, ἔφη, ἐγὼ ποιήσω· οὐδετέροις ὑμῶν τὰ ἄκρα παραδώσω, ἀλλ' ἡμεῖς φυλάξομεν αὐτά· κὰν ἀδικῶσιν ὑμῶν ὁπότεροι, σὺν τοῖς ἀδικουμένοις ἡμεῖς ἐσόμεθα.

Ὡς δ' ἤκουσαν ταῦτα ἀμφότεροι, ἐπήνεσαν καὶ ἔλεγον ὅτι οὕτως ἂν μόνως ἢ εἰρήνῃ βεβαία γένοιτο. καὶ ἐπὶ τούτοις

|accomplish, , ἔφασαν οἱ Χαλδαῖοι· πολλὰ γὰρ ἂν |help, be useful  
|produce

οὐδὲν |work Σὺ δέ, ἔφη, ὦ Ἀρμένιε, ἐθέλεις ἂν

ταῖς τούτων |pasture; , ἵσθαι, εἰ μέλλεις |small |help, be useful  
|distribution

Χαλδαίους πολὺ πλείω |help, be useful , Καὶ |very much ᾗν,

ἔφη, |if indeed ὅμην ἀσφαλῶς νεμεῖν. |not so?; and ᾗς,

ἀσφαλῶς ἂν |distribute εἰ τὰ ἄκρα ἔχοιτε σύμμαχα; ἔφη ὁ

Ἀρμένιος. Ἀλλὰ μὰ Δί, ἔφασαν οἱ Χαλδαῖοι, οὐκ ἂν ἡμεῖς

ἀσφαλῶς |work μὴ ὅτι τὴν τούτων, ἀλλ' οὐδ' ἂν

τὴν |our, my , εἰ οὗτοι τὰ ἄκρα ἔχοιεν. Εἰ δ' ὑμῖν αὖ, ἔφη,

τὰ ἄκρα σύμμαχα εἶεν; Οὕτως ἂν, ἔφασαν, ἡμῖν καλῶς

ἔχοι. Ἀλλὰ μὰ Δί, ἔφη ὁ Ἀρμένιος, οὐκ ἂν ἡμῖν αὖ καλῶς

ἔχοι, εἰ οὗτοι |receive, undertake, ἵλιν τὰ ἄκρα ἄλλως τε καὶ  
|associate with

|build , καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν· Οὕτωςι |well, then ᾗη, ἐγὼν

ποιήσω· |neither ὑμῶν τὰ ἄκρα |hand over , ἀλλ' ἡμεῖς

|guard; αὐτά· κὰν |be, do ᾧ wrong; |which of two, ἢ τοῖς  
|watch |wrong someone |either of two

|be, do wrong; , μείς ἐσόμεθα.  
|wrong someone

Ὡς δ' ἤκουσαν ταῦτα |both , |concur καὶ ἔλεγον ὅτι

οὕτως ἂν μόνως ἡ |peace |steadfast; , ὅ. καὶ ἐπὶ τούτοις

your splendid mountains, would you let the Armenians use them for pasture if the graziers paid you what was fair?" "Surely yes," said the Chaldaeans, "it would mean much profit and no pains."

"Son of Armenia," said Cyrus, "would you take this land for grazing, if by paying a small sum to the Chaldaeans you got a far greater return yourself?"

"Right willingly," said he, "if I thought my flocks could feed in safety."

"And would they not be safe enough," suggested Cyrus, "if this pass were held for you?" To which the king agreed. But the Chaldaeans cried, "Heaven help us! We could not till our own fields in safety, not to speak of theirs, if the Armenians held the pass." "True," answered Cyrus, "but how would it be if the pass were held for you?" "Ah, then," said they, "all would be well enough." "Heaven help us!" cried the Armenian in his turn, "all might be well enough for them, but it would be ill for us if these neighbours of ours recovered the post, especially now that it is fortified." Then Cyrus said, "See, then, this is what I will do: I will hand over the pass to neither of you: we Persians will guard it ourselves, and if either of you injure the other, we will step in and side with the sufferers."

Then both parties applauded the decision, and said that only thus could they establish a lasting peace, and on these terms they exchanged pledges, and a covenant

*vocabulary***βιοτεύω** live, live on**διαμένω** continue, persevere**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish  
~practice**ἐθίζω** accustom**ἐλεύθερος** not enslaved**ἐπιγαμία** intermarriage**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
~station**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable**ἐσπέρα** evening, west**εὐκτός** cause for boasting ~vow**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near,

direct, stop ~station

**κοινός** communal, ordinary**ληίζομαι** plunder ~lucre**μισθοφορέω** work for wages**ὁπότερος** which of two, either of two**πιστός** faithful; trustworthy**πολύχρυσος** (υῦ) rich in gold**πρόθυμος** (ῶ) willing, eager ~fume**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near; add  
~ion**συνθήκη** combination; agreement**συντίθημι** hearken, mark ~thesis**φρούριον** fort

ἔδοσαν καὶ ἔλαβον πάντες τὰ πιστά, καὶ ἐλευθέρους μὲν ἀμφοτέρους ἀπ' ἀλλήλων εἶναι συνετίθεντο, ἐπιγαμίας δ' εἶναι καὶ ἐπεργασίας καὶ ἐπινομίας, καὶ ἐπιμαχίαν δὲ κοινήν, εἴ τις ἀδικοίη ὁποτέρους. οὕτω μὲν οὖν τότε διεπράχθη· καὶ νῦν δὲ ἔτι οὕτω διαμένουσιν αἱ τότε γινόμεναι συνθήκαι Χαλδαίοις καὶ τῷ τὴν Ἀρμενίαν ἔχοντι. ἐπεὶ δὲ αἱ συνθήκαι ἐγγένηντο, εὐθὺς συνετείχιζόν τε ἀμφότεροι προθύμως ὡς κοινὸν φρούριον καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια συνεισῆγον. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐσπέρα προσήει, συνδείπνους ἔλαβεν ἀμφοτέρους πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ὡς φίλους ἤδη. συσκηνοῦντων δὲ εἶπέ τις τῶν Χαλδαίων ὅτι τοῖς μὲν ἄλλοις σφῶν πᾶσιν εὐκτὰ ταῦτα εἶη· εἰσὶ δέ τινες τῶν Χαλδαίων οἱ ληζόμενοι ζῶσι καὶ οὐτ' ἐπίστανται ἐργάζεσθαι οὐτ' ἂν δύναιντο, εἰθισμένοι ἀπὸ πολέμου βιοτεύειν· αἰδὲ γὰρ ἐλήζοντο ἢ ἐμισθοφόρουν, πολλάκις μὲν παρὰ τῷ Ἰνδῶν βασιλεῖ καὶ γάρ, ἔφασαν, πολύχρυσος ἀνὴρ, πολλάκις δὲ καὶ παρ' Ἀστυάγει. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ἔφη· Τί οὖν οὐ καὶ νῦν παρ' ἐμοὶ μισθοφοροῦσιν; ἐγὼ γὰρ δώσω



ἔδοσαν καὶ ἔλαβον πάντες τὰ <sup>|faithful; ...|</sup> <sup>|not enslaved ,|</sup> <sup>|trustworthy|</sup> <sup>|both|</sup> ἀπ' ἀλλήλων εἶναι <sup>|hearken, mark|</sup> <sup>|intermarriage|</sup>  
 δ' εἶναι καὶ ἐπεργασίας καὶ ἐπινομίας, καὶ ἐπιμαχίαν  
 δὲ <sup>|communal, "tis|</sup> <sup>|be, do|</sup> <sup>|which of two,|</sup> οὕτω μὲν οὖν  
<sup>|ordinary|</sup> <sup>|wrong;|</sup> <sup>|either of two|</sup>  
 τότε <sup>|travel over,|</sup> <sup>|wrong|</sup> <sup>|someone|</sup> καὶ ἔτι οὕτω <sup>|continue,|</sup> <sup>|persevere|</sup>  
<sup>|accomplish|</sup>  
 αἱ τότε γενόμεναι <sup>|combination;|</sup> <sup>|αλδαίοις|</sup> καὶ τῷ τὴν  
<sup>|agreement|</sup>  
 Ἀρμενίαν ἔχοντι. ἐπεὶ δὲ αἱ <sup>|combination;|</sup> <sup>|εγένητο,|</sup> εὐθὺς  
<sup>|agreement|</sup>  
 συνετείχιζόν τε <sup>|both|</sup> <sup>|willing,|</sup> <sup>ὥς|</sup> <sup>|communal|</sup> <sup>|fort|</sup>  
<sup>|eager|</sup> <sup>|ordinary|</sup>  
 καὶ τὰ <sup>|fit, suitable|</sup> συνεισῆγον. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐσπέρα <sup>|approach,|</sup>  
 συνδείπνους ἔλαβεν <sup>|both|</sup> πρὸς ἑαυτὸν ὡς φίλους  
 ἦδη. συσκηνοῦντων δὲ εἶπέ τις τῶν Χαλδαίων ὅτι τοῖς  
 μὲν ἄλλοις σφῶν πάσιν <sup>|cause for boasting,|</sup> εἰς δὲ τινες  
 τῶν Χαλδαίων οἱ <sup>|λῆίζομαι?:|</sup> <sup>|plunder; or|</sup> οὐτ' ἐπίστανται  
<sup>|λῆίζομαι?:|</sup> <sup>|plunder|</sup>  
<sup>|work|</sup> οὐτ' ἂν δύναιτο, <sup>|accustom|</sup> ἀπὸ πολέμου  
<sup>|live, live on|</sup> αἰδὲ γὰρ <sup>|λῆίζομαι?:|</sup> <sup>ἢ|</sup> <sup>|work for wages|</sup> <sup>|often|</sup>  
<sup>|plunder;|</sup> <sup>|or|</sup>  
 μὲν παρὰ τῷ Ἰνδῶν <sup>|λῆίζομαι?:|</sup> <sup>|plunder|</sup> καὶ γάρ, ἔφασαν, <sup>|rich in gold|</sup>  
 ἀνὴρ, <sup>|often|</sup> δὲ καὶ παρ' Ἀστυάγει. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ἔφη·  
 Τί οὖν οὐ καὶ νῦν παρ' ἐμοὶ <sup>|work for wages|</sup> , ἐγὼ γὰρ δώσω

was made that both nations alike were to be free and independent, but with common rights of marriage, and tillage, and pasturage, and help in time of war if either were attacked. Thus the matter was concluded, and to this day the treaty holds between the Chaldaeans and Armenia.

Peace was no sooner made than both parties began building what they now considered their common fortress, working side by side and bringing up all that was needed. And when evening fell, Cyrus summoned them all as fellow-guests to his board, saying that they were friends already. At the supper as they sat together, one of the Chaldaeans said to Cyrus that the mass of his nation would feel they had received all they could desire, "But there are men among us," he added, "who live as freebooters: they do not know how to labour in the field, and they could not learn, accustomed as they are from youth up to get their livelihood either by plundering for themselves or serving as mercenaries, often under the king of India, for he is a man of much wealth, but sometimes under Astyages." Then Cyrus said: "Why should they not take service with me? I undertake to give them at least as

*vocabulary*

**ἀναμνήσκω** (+2 acc) remind  
 someone ~mnemonic  
**ἄφθονος** ungrudging, plentiful  
**δήποτε** at some time  
**δωρέω** give ~donate  
**καθοράω** look down ~panorama  
**κατασκέπτομαι** inspect, explore  
 ~skeptical  
**μισθός** reward, wages

**οἶχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**προσγίγνομαι** become ally to  
**συμπέμπω** send with ~pomp  
**συμπράσσω** cooperate  
**σύμφημι** assent, concede  
**συνομολογέω** agree  
**συστρατεύω** join in an expedition  
**τιμάω** (ι) honor, exalt  
**τοιόσδε** such  
**ὁμέτερος** (ὅ) yours

ὅσον τις καὶ ἄλλος πλείστον δῆποτε ἔδωκε. συνέφασαν οἱ, καὶ πολλοὺς γε ἔσεσθαι ἔλεγον τοὺς ἐθελήσοντας.

Καὶ ταῦτα μὲν δὴ οὕτω συνωμολογείτο. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ὡς ἤκουσεν ὅτι πολλάκις πρὸς τὸν Ἰνδὸν οἱ Χαλδαῖοι ἐπορεύοντο, ἀναμνησθεὶς ὅτι ἦλθον παρ' αὐτοῦ κατασκεψόμενοι εἰς Μήδους τὰ αὐτῶν πράγματα καὶ ᾤχοντο πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους, ὅπως αὐ καὶ τὰ ἐκείνων κατιδῶσιν, ἐβούλετο μαθεῖν τὸν Ἰνδὸν τὰ αὐτῶ πεπραγμένα. ἤρξατο οὖν λόγου τοιοῦδε· ὦ Ἀρμένιε, ἔφη, καὶ ὑμεῖς, ὦ Χαλδαῖοι, εἵπατέ μοι, εἴ τινα ἐγὼ νῦν τῶν ἐμῶν ἀποστέλλουμι πρὸς τὸν Ἰνδόν, συμπέμψαιτ' ἂν μοι τῶν ὑμετέρων οἵτινες αὐτῶ τήν τε ὁδὸν ἡγοῖντο ἂν καὶ συμπράττοιεν ὥστε γενέσθαι ἡμῖν παρὰ τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ ἃ ἐγὼ βούλομαι; ἐγὼ γὰρ χρήματα μὲν προσγενέσθαι ἔτι ἂν βουλοίμην ἡμῖν, ὅπως ἔχω καὶ μισθὸν ἀφθόνως διδόναι οἷς ἂν δέῃ καὶ τιμᾶν καὶ δωρεῖσθαι τῶν συστρατευομένων τοὺς ἀξίους· τούτων δὴ ἔνεκα βούλομαι ὡς ἀφθονώτατα χρήματα ἔχειν, δεῖσθαι τούτων νομίζων. τῶν δὲ

ὅσον τις καὶ ἄλλος πλείστον | at some time <sup>vs</sup> κε. | assent,  
| concede  
οἱ, καὶ πολλοὺς γε ἔσεσθαι ἔλεγον τοὺς ἐθελήσοντας.

Kαὶ ταῦτα μὲν δὴ οὕτω |agree                      ὁ δὲ  
Κῦρος ὥς ἤκουσεν ὅτι |often                      πρὸς τὸν Ἴνδον  
οἱ Χαλδαῖοι ἐπορεύοντο, ἀναμνησθεὶς ὅτι ἦλθον παρ'  
αὐτοῦ |inspect, explore                      εἰς Μήδους τὰ αὐτῶν |deed, fact, thing, affair;  
|difficulty  
καὶ |come, go                      πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους, ὅπως αὖ καὶ τὰ  
ἐκείνων |look down , ἐβούλετο |learn                      τὸν Ἴνδον τὰ αὐτῷ  
πεπραγμένα. ἡρξάτο οὖν λόγου |such                      ᾧ Ἀρμένιε, ἔφη,  
καὶ ὑμεῖς, ᾧ Χαλδαῖοι, εἵπατέ μοι, εἴ τινα ἐγὼ νῦν τῶν  
ἐμῶν |send; put on clothes ᾗ τὸν Ἴνδόν, |συμπέμπω?: ᾗ send . with; or  
|sympémpō?: send with  
τῶν |yours                      οἵτινες αὐτῷ τήν τε ὁδὸν ἠγοῖντο ἂν καὶ  
|cooperate                      ὥστε γενέσθαι ἡμῖν παρὰ τοῦ Ἴνδοῦ ἃ ἐγὼ  
βούλομαι; ἐγὼ γάρ |possession, ᾗ τὸν Ἴνδον, |become ally to                      ἔτι ἂν  
|money, business  
βουλοίμην ἡμῖν, ὅπως ἔχω καὶ |reward, |ungrudging, ᾗ δόναί  
|wages |plentiful  
οἷς ἂν δέη καὶ |honor                      καὶ δωρεῖσθαι τῶν |join in an expedition  
τοὺς |worthy                      τούτων δὴ |because, that                      μαι ὥς |ungrudging,  
|plentiful  
|possession, ᾗ τὸν Ἴνδον, δεῖσθαι τούτων |consider . cūs- δὲ  
|money, busi-  
ness                      |tomary; believe

much as they ever got elsewhere.” The Chaldaeans readily agreed with him and prophesied that he would have many volunteers.

So this matter was settled to the mind of all. But Cyrus, on hearing that the Chaldaeans were in the habit of going to India, remembered how Indian ambassadors had come to the Medes to spy out their affairs, and how they had gone on to their enemies—doubtless to do the same there—and he felt a wish that they should hear something of what he had achieved himself. So he said to the company: “Son of Armenia, and men of the Chaldaeans, I have something to ask you. Tell me, if I were to send ambassadors to India, would you send some of your own folk with them to show them the way, and support them in gaining for us all that I desire? I still need more money if I am to pay all the wages, as I wish, in full, and give rewards and make presents to such of my soldiers as deserve them. It is for such things I need all the money I can get, for I believe them to be essential. It would be pleasanter for me

*vocabulary*

**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance

**ἄφθονος** ungrudging, plentiful

**ἐκεῖσε** thither

**ἔξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion

**ἐξίστημι** displace, transform; (+gen) give up ~station

**ἐπιθυμέω** (ῥ) wish, covet

**ἐπιστέλλω** send to, order

**ἡγεμών** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide, chief ~hegemony

**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism

**οἴκοθεν** from home, from one's own

resources ~economics

**ὀπόσος** as many as, how many, how great

**ὀφείλω** owe, should, if only

**Πέρσης** Persian

**προσδέχομαι** await

**προσδέω** bind also; need also

**προχωρέω** proceed, come forward

**στρατιά** army ~strategy

**συμφέρω** bring together; be expedient; agree; (mp) happen ~bear

**σύμφορος** accompanying; suitable

**ὕμέτερος** (ῥ) yours

**χαρίζομαι** gratify ~charisma

ὑμετέρων ἡδὺ μοι ἀπέχεσθαι φαίνεται· φίλους γὰρ ὑμᾶς  
 ἤδη νομίζω· παρὰ δὲ τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ ἡδέως ἂν λάβοιμι,  
 εἰ διδοίη. ὁ οὖν ἄγγελος, ᾧ κελεύω ὑμᾶς ἡγεμόνας  
 δοῦναι καὶ συμπράκτορας γενέσθαι, ἐλθὼν ἐκείσε ὧδε  
 λέξει· Ἐπεμψέ με Κῦρος, ᾧ Ἰνδέ, πρὸς σέ· φησὶ δὲ  
 προσδεῖσθαι χρημάτων, προσδεχόμενος ἄλλην στρατιὰν  
 οἴκοθεν ἐκ Περσῶν· καὶ γὰρ προσδέχομαι, ἔφη· ἦν οὖν  
 αὐτῷ πέμψης ὅποσα σοι προχωρεῖ, φησὶν, ἦν θεὸς ἀγαθὸν  
 τέλος διδῶ αὐτῷ, πειράσεσθαι ποιῆσαι ὥστε σε νομίζειν  
 καλῶς βεβουλεῦσθαι χαρισάμενον αὐτῷ. ταῦτα μὲν ὁ παρ'  
 ἐμοῦ λέξει. τοῖς δὲ παρ' ὑμῶν ὑμεῖς αὖ ἐπιστέλλετε ὅ  
 τι ὑμῖν σύμφορον δοκεῖ εἶναι. καὶ ἦν μὲν λάβωμεν, ἔφη,  
 παρ' αὐτοῦ, ἀφθονωτέροις χρησόμεθα· ἦν δὲ μὴ λάβωμεν,  
 εἰσόμεθα ὅτι οὐδεμίαν αὐτῷ χάριν ὀφείλομεν, ἀλλ' ἐξέσται  
 ἡμῖν ἐκείνου ἔνεκα πρὸς τὸ ἡμέτερον συμφέρον πάντα  
 τίθεσθαι. ταῦτ' εἶπεν ὁ Κῦρος, νομίζων τοὺς ἰόντας  
 Ἀρμενίων καὶ Χαλδαίων τοιαῦτα λέξειν περὶ αὐτοῦ οἶα  
 αὐτὸς ἐπεθύμει πάντας ἀνθρώπους καὶ λέγειν καὶ ἀκούειν



|       |                  |  |
|-------|------------------|--|
| yours | sweet, <i>οι</i> | ward off, drive' off, refrain, <i>ἵλους γὰρ ὑμᾶς</i> |
|       |                  | be at some distance                                  |

ἡδη | consider | *cuș-* | δὲ τοῦ Ἰνδοῦ | sweet | ἂν λάβοιμι,  
| tomary; believe

εἰ διδοίη. ὁ οὖν |messenger ᾧ κελεύω ὑμᾶς |leader

δοῦναι καὶ συμπράκτορας γενέσθαι, ἐλθὼν |thither |thus

λέξει· Ἐπεμψέ με Κῦρος, ὦ Ἰνδέ, πρὸς σέ· φησὶ δὲ

προσδεῖσθαι | possession, , | await money, ἄλλην | army

|from home. Περσῶν· καὶ γὰρ |await , ἔφη· ἦν οὖν

αὐτῷ πέμψης | as/how | proceed, come | ῥσίν, ἦν θεὸς ἀγαθόν  
| many/great | forward

|end διδῶ ἀντῶ, πειράσεσθαι ποιῆσαι ὥστε σε |consider customary;  
|believe

|            |  |                   |  |         |  |                            |
|------------|--|-------------------|--|---------|--|----------------------------|
| καλῶς      |  | βουλεύω?: (mp)    |  | gratify |  | αὐτῷ. ταῦτα μὲν ὁ παρ'     |
|            |  | to deliberate; or |  |         |  |                            |
| ἐμοῦ λῆξαι |  | βουλεύω?: (mp)    |  |         |  | τοῖς σε παρ' ὑμῶν ὑμεῖς αὖ |
|            |  | to deliberate     |  |         |  | send to, order ὅ           |

τι ὑμῖν | accompanying;  
| suitable

παρ' αὐτοῦ, | ungrudging,  
| plentiful

εἰσόμεθα ὅτι οὐδεμίαν αὐτῷ | grace | owe, should, if 'only' ἔσται

|              |               |    |         |   |
|--------------|---------------|----|---------|---|
| ἡμῶν ἐκείνου | because, that | τὸ | our, my | bring together; be expedient;<br>agree; (mp) happen |
|--------------|---------------|----|---------|---|

πίθεσθαι. ταὐτ' εἶπεν ὁ Κῦρος, | consider cus- ἰόντας  
tomary; believe

Ἀρμενίων καὶ Χαλδαίων τοιαῦτα λέξειν περὶ αὐτοῦ οἷα

αὐτὸς | wish,  
| covet

not to draw on you, because I look on you already as my friends, but I should be glad to take from the Indian as much as he will give me. My messenger—the one for whom I ask guides and coadjutors—will go to the king and say: ‘Son of India, my master has sent me to you, bidding me say that he has need of more money. He is expecting another army from Persia,’ and indeed I do expect one,” Cyrus added. “Then my messenger will proceed, ‘If you can send my master all that you have at hand he will do his best, if God grant him success, that you should feel your kindness has not been ill-advised.’ That is what my emissary will say: and you must give such instructions to yours as you think fit yourselves. If I get money from the king, I shall have abundance at my disposal: if I fail, at least we shall owe him no gratitude, and as far as he is concerned we may look to our own interests alone.”

So Cyrus spoke, convinced that the ambassadors from Armenia and Chaldaea would speak of him as he desired all men might do. And then,

*vocabulary*

**ἀναπαύω** cause to cease ~pause  
**ἄχθομαι** be burdened with  
**διαλύω** break up; relax, weaken  
**ἐνδον** in the house of; within  
**ἐπιστέλλω** send to, order  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἐχθω** (mp) be hated ~external  
**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon  
**κατασκευάζω** equip, build  
**κρείσσω** more powerful; better  
**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics  
**οἰκουμένη** inhabited  
**προσήκω** belong to, it seems  
**προσλαμβάνω** add, borrow, take hold,

## help

**σκηνή** tent; stage  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**συλλαμβάνω** seize, capture;  
 understand ~epilepsy  
**σύμπας** (α) all together  
**συμπέμπω** send with ~pomp  
**συμπράσσω** cooperate  
**τετρακισχίλιοι** 4000 ~kilo-  
**ὕπαντάω** meet  
**ὕστεραίως** the next; later  
**φρούριον** fort  
**φύλαξ** -χος (m) guard; sentry  
 ~phylactery  
**χαρίζομαι** gratify ~charisma

περὶ αὐτοῦ. καὶ τότε μὲν δὴ, ὅποτε καλῶς εἶχε,  
διαλύσαντες τὴν σκηνὴν ἀνεπαύοντο.

### 3.3

Τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ ὃ τε Κῦρος ἔπεμπε τὸν ἄγγελον ἐπιστείλας  
ὅσαπερ ἔφη καὶ ὁ Ἀρμένιος καὶ οἱ Χαλδαῖοι συνέπεμπον  
οὓς ἱκανωτάτους ἐνόμιζον εἶναι καὶ συμπρᾶξαι καὶ εἰπεῖν  
περὶ Κύρου τὰ προσήκοντα. ἐκ δὲ τούτου κατασκευάσας  
ὁ Κῦρος τὸ φρούριον καὶ φύλαξιν ἱκανοῖς καὶ τοῖς  
ἐπιτηδείοις πᾶσι καὶ ἄρχοντ' αὐτῶν καταλιπὼν Μῆδον ὃν  
ᾤετο Κναξάρη ἂν μάλιστα χαρίσασθαι, ἀπῆει συλλαβὼν  
τὸ στράτευμα ὅσον τε ἦλθεν ἔχων καὶ ὁ παρ' Ἀρμενίων  
προσέλαβε, καὶ τοὺς παρὰ Χαλδαίων εἰς τετρακισχιλίους,  
οἳ ᾤοντο καὶ συμπάντων τῶν ἄλλων κρείττονες εἶναι.  
ὥς δὲ κατέβη εἰς τὴν οἰκουμένην, οὐδεὶς ἔμεινεν ἔνδον  
Ἀρμενίων οὔτ' ἀνὴρ οὔτε γυνή, ἀλλὰ πάντες ὑπήντων  
ἠδόμενοι τῇ εἰρήνῃ καὶ φέροντες καὶ ἄγοντες ὃ τι ἕκαστος  
ἄξιον εἶχε. καὶ ὁ Ἀρμένιος τούτοις οὐκ ἤχθετο, οὕτως ἂν  
νομίζων καὶ τὸν Κῦρον μᾶλλον ἠδεσθαι τῇ ὑπὸ πάντων

περὶ αὐτοῦ. καὶ τότε μὲν δὴ, |when καλῶς εἶχε,

|break up; re- τὴν |tent; |cause to cease.  
|lax, weaken |stage

## 3.3

Τῇ δ' |the next; later - Κῦρος ἔπεμπε τὸν ἄγγελον |send to, order

ὅσαπερ ἔφη καὶ ὁ Ἀρμένιος καὶ οἱ Χαλδαῖοι |send with

οὓς |sufficient; fit, ἐνόμιζον εἶναι καὶ |συμπράσσω?: ... cooperate; or  
|empowered |συμπράσσω?: cooperate

περὶ Κύρου τὰ |belong to, it ἐκ δὲ τούτου |equip, build  
|beseems

ὁ Κῦρος τὸ |fort καὶ |guard; |sufficient; fit, τοῖς  
|sentry |empowered

|fit, suitable πᾶσι καὶ ἄρχοντ' αὐτῶν |leave behind, Μῆδον ὃν  
|abandon

ᾧετο Κναξάρῃ ἂν μάλιστα |gratify |be |seize, capture;  
|absent, understand

τὸ |army ὅσον τε ἦλθεν ἔχων καὶ ὁ παρ' Ἀρμενίων  
|go away, return

|add, borrow, καὶ τοὺς παρὰ Χαλδαίων εἰς |4000  
|take hold, help

οἱ ὦντο καὶ |all together τῶν ἄλλων κρείττονες εἶναι.

ὥς δὲ |go down εἰς τὴν οἰκουμένην, οὐδεὶς ἔμεινεν |in the house of;  
|within

Ἀρμενίων οὐτ' ἀνὴρ οὔτε γυνή, ἀλλὰ πάντες |meet

|ἡδομαι?: be |peace καὶ φέροντες καὶ ἄγοντες ὃ τι ἕκαστος  
|pleased, enjoy;  
or |ἡδομαι?: be  
|worthy, enjoy καὶ ὁ Ἀρμένιος τούτοις οὐκ ἦχθετο, οὕτως ἂν  
|pleased, enjoy

νομίζων καὶ τὸν Κῦρον μᾶλλον |ἡδομαι?: be pleased, enjoy; or ἡδομαι?: be  
|pleased, enjoy

as the hour was come, they broke up the meeting and took their rest.

### 3.3

But on the next day Cyrus despatched his messenger with the instructions, and the Armenians and Chaldaeans sent their own ambassadors, choosing the men they thought would help Cyrus most and speak of his exploits in the most fitting terms. Cyrus put a strong garrison in the fort and stored it with supplies, and left an officer in command, a Mede, whose appointment, he thought, would gratify Cyaxares, and then he turned homewards, taking with him not only the troops he had brought, but the force the Armenians had furnished, and a picked body of Chaldaeans who considered themselves stronger than all the rest together. And as he came down from the hills into the cultivated land, not one of the Armenians, man or woman, stayed indoors: with one accord they all went out to meet him, rejoicing that peace was made, and bringing him offerings from their best, driving before them the animals they valued most. The king himself was not ill-pleased at this, for he thought that Cyrus would take

*vocabulary***ἀνακαλέω** call, summon, recall**ἀρκέω** satisfy; ward off, defend; suffice**διάγω** lead through; pass a time

~demagogue

**ἐκπέμπω** send forth ~pomp**εὐεργετέω** be a benefactor**εὐεργέτης** -ου (m, 1) benefactor**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism**ἡώς ἡῶθι** (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene**κατακρύπτω** hide, cover ~cryptic**κατασκευάζω** equip, build**κατορύσσω** bury**κοσμέω** marshal, array ~cosmos**κτάομαι** acquire, possess**μηκέτι** no more**μισθός** reward, wages**οἴκοι** at home ~economics**παρελαύνω** pass, outstrip ~elastic**περίειμι** be superior to; be left over;  
still exist**σαυτοῦ** yourself**στρατιά** army ~strategy**τελευτάω** bring about, finish ~apostle**ὕπαντάω** meet**χρυσίον** (ῥ) gold coin

τιμῇ. τέλος δὲ ὑπήντησε καὶ ἡ γυνὴ τοῦ Ἀρμενίου, τὰς θυγατέρας ἔχουσα καὶ τὸν νεώτερον υἱόν, καὶ σὺν ἄλλοις δώροις τὸ χρυσίον ἐκόμιζεν ὁ πρότερον οὐκ ἤθελε λαβεῖν Κῦρος. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ἰδὼν εἶπεν· Ὑμεῖς ἐμὲ οὐ ποιήσετε μισθοῦ περιόντα εὐεργετεῖν, ἀλλὰ σύ, ὦ γύναι, ἔχουσα ταῦτα τὰ χρήματα ἃ φέρεις ἅπιθι, καὶ τῷ μὲν Ἀρμενίῳ μηκέτι δῶς αὐτὰ κατορύξαι, ἔκπεμψον δὲ τὸν υἱὸν ὡς κάλλιστα ἀπ' αὐτῶν κατασκευάσασα ἐπὶ τὴν στρατιάν· ἀπὸ δὲ τῶν λοιπῶν κτῶ καὶ σαντῇ καὶ τῷ ἀνδρὶ καὶ ταῖς θυγατράσι καὶ τοῖς υἱοῖς ὅ τι κεκτημένοι καὶ κοσμήσεσθε κάλλιον καὶ ἥδιον τὸν αἰῶνα διάξετε· εἰς δὲ τὴν γῆν, ἔφη, ἀρκείτω τὰ σώματα, ὅταν ἕκαστος τελευτήσῃ, κατακρύπτειν. ὁ μὲν ταῦτ' εἰπὼν παρήλαυνεν· ὁ δ' Ἀρμένιος συμπρούπεμπε καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι πάντες ἄνθρωποι, ἀνακαλοῦντες τὸν εὐεργέτην, τὸν ἄνδρα τὸν ἀγαθόν· καὶ τοῦτ' ἐποιοῦν, ἕως ἐκ τῆς χώρας ἐξέπεμψαν. συναπέστειλε δ' αὐτῷ ὁ Ἀρμένιος καὶ στρατιὰν πλείονα, ὡς εἰρήνης οἶκοι οὔσης. οὕτω



|honor, τέλος δὲ |meet καὶ ἡ γυνὴ τοῦ Ἀρμενίου,  
 |value  
 τὰς θυγατέρας ἔχουσα καὶ τὸν νεώτερον υἱόν, καὶ σὺν  
 ἄλλοις δώροις τὸ |gold coin |tend; bring back/away; οὐκ ᾔθελε  
 |(mp) travel  
 λαβεῖν Κύρος. καὶ ὁ Κύρος ἰδὼν εἶπεν· Ὑμεῖς ἐμὲ  
 οὐ ποιήσετε |reward, |be superior|be a benefactor ἡ δὲ σύ, ὦ  
 |wages |to; be left  
 γύναι, ἔχουσα ταῦτα |exist |over; still χρήματα ἃ φέρεις |be absent, go  
 |away, return  
 τῷ μὲν Ἀρμενίῳ |no more ὧς αὐτὰ |bury , |send forth  
 δὲ τὸν υἱὸν ὡς κάλλιστα ἀπ' αὐτῶν |equip, build  
 ἐπὶ τὴν |army ἀπὸ δὲ τῶν λοιπῶν κτῶ καὶ |yourself  
 καὶ τῷ ἀνδρὶ καὶ ταῖς θυγατράσι καὶ τοῖς υἱοῖς ὅ τι  
 |acquire καὶ |marshal, κάλλιον καὶ |sweet τὸν |life force  
 |array  
 |lead through; δὲ τὴν γῆν, ἔφη, |satisfy; ward off, ὥματα,  
 |pass a time |defend; suffice  
 ὅταν ἕκαστος |bring about, |hide, cover . ὁ μὲν ταῦτ'  
 |finish  
 εἰπὼν |pass, outstrip ὁ δ' Ἀρμένιος συμπρούπεμπε καὶ οἱ  
 ἄλλοι πάντες ἄνθρωποι, |call, summon, τὸν |benefactor ,  
 |recall  
 τὸν ἄνδρα τὸν ἀγαθόν· καὶ τοῦτ' ἐποιοῦν, ἕως ἐκ τῆς  
 χώρας |send forth . συναπέστειλε δ' αὐτῷ ὁ Ἀρμένιος καὶ  
 |army πλείονα, ὡς |peace |at home ἤσῃς. οὕτω

delight in the honour the people showed him. Last of all came the queen herself, with her daughters and her younger son, bearing many gifts, and among them the golden treasure that Cyrus had refused before. But when he saw it he said: "Nay, you must not make me a mercenary and a benefactor for pay; take this treasure back and hie you home, but do not give it to your lord that he may bury it again; spend it on your son, and send him forth gloriously equipped for war, and with the residue buy yourself and for your husband and your children such precious things as shall endure, and bring joy and beauty into all your days. As for burying, let us only bury our bodies on the day when each must die."

With that he rode away, the king and all his people escorting him, like a guard of honour, calling him their saviour, their benefactor, and their hero, and heaping praises on him until he had left the land. And the king sent with him a larger army than ever he had sent before, seeing that now he had peace at home. Thus Cyrus took his departure,

*vocabulary*

ἄγαμαι wonder, admire; resent,  
 begrudge  
 διαδίδωμι distribute, send out  
 ἐπιτυγχάνω meet, attain  
 ἐτοιμάζω get ready  
 εὐφραίνω gladden ~frenzy  
 ἡνίκα when  
 θηράω hunt, chase  
 κοσμέω marshal, array ~cosmos  
 κτάομαι acquire, possess  
 λοχαγέω (ᾱ) lead a company

λοχαγός (ᾱ) captain  
 μεθόριος lying between  
 Πέρσης Persian  
 πλησίος near, neighboring  
 στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
 στρατιά army ~strategy  
 στρατοπεδεύω encamp or take up  
 station ~strategy  
 ταξίαρχος military rank  
 τιμάω (ι) honor, exalt  
 ὕστεραίος the next; later

δὴ ὁ Κῦρος ἀπῆει κεχρηματισμένος οὐχ ἃ ἔλαβε μόνον χρήματα, ἀλλὰ πολὺ πλείονα τούτων ἡτοιμασμένος διὰ τὸν τρόπον, ὥστε λαμβάνειν ὁπότε δέοιτο. καὶ τότε μὲν ἐστρατοπεδεύσατο ἐν τοῖς μεθορίοις. τῇ δ' ὑστεραία τὸ μὲν στράτευμα καὶ τὰ χρήματα ἔπεμψε πρὸς Κναζάρην· ὁ δὲ πλησίον ἦν, ὥσπερ ἔφησεν· αὐτὸς δὲ σὺν Τιγράνῃ καὶ Περσῶν τοῖς ἀρίστοις ἐθήρα ὅπουπερ ἐπιτυγχάνοιεν θηρίοις καὶ ἠὺφραίνετο.

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἀφίκετο εἰς Μήδους, τῶν χρημάτων ἔδωκε τοῖς αὐτοῦ ταξιάρχοις ὅσα ἐδόκει ἐκάστω ἱκανὰ εἶναι, ὅπως καὶ ἐκεῖνοι ἔχοιεν τιμᾶν, εἴ τινας ἄγαιντο τῶν ὑφ' αὐτοῦς· ἐνόμιζε γάρ, εἰ ἕκαστος τὸ μέρος ἀξιέπαινον ποιήσῃ, τὸ ὅλον αὐτῷ καλῶς ἔχειν. καὶ αὐτὸς δὲ ὅ τι πον καλὸν ἴδοι ἐς στρατιάν, ταῦτα κτώμενος διεδωρεῖτο τοῖς ἀεὶ ἀξιοτάτοις, νομίζων ὅ τι καλὸν καγαθὸν ἔχοι τὸ στράτευμα, τούτοις ἅπασιν αὐτὸς κεκοσμηθῆναι. ἡνίκα δὲ αὐτοῖς διεδίδου ὧν ἔλαβεν, ἔλεξεν ὧδέ πως εἰς τὸ μέσον τῶν ταξιάρχων καὶ λοχαγῶν καὶ πάντων ὅσους ἐτίμα.

δὴ ὁ Κῦρος |be absent, go away, return |μματισμένος οὐχ ἂ ἔλαβε μόνον  
 χρήματα, ἀλλὰ πολὺ πλείονα τούτων |get ready διὰ  
 τὸν τρόπον, ὥστε λαμβάνειν |when δέοιτο. καὶ τότε μὲν  
 |encamp or take up station ἐν τοῖς |lying between τῇ δ' |the next; later  
 μὲν |army καὶ τὰ χρήματα ἔπεμψε πρὸς Κναξάρην.  
 ὁ δὲ |near ἦν, ὥσπερ ἔφησεν· αὐτὸς δὲ σὺν Τιγράνῃ  
 καὶ Περσῶν τοῖς ἀρίστοις |hunt, chase ὅπουπερ |meet, attain  
 θηρίοις καὶ |gladden  
 Ἐπεὶ δ' |arrive εἰς Μήδους, τῶν χρημάτων ἔδωκε τοῖς  
 αὐτοῦ |military rank ὅσα ἐδόκει ἐκάστῳ |sufficient; fit, empowered ὅπως  
 καὶ ἐκεῖνοι ἔχοιεν |honor εἴ τινας |admire; begrudge  
 |consider, |cus- ἐἴ ἕκαστος τὸ μέρος ἀξίεπαινον ποιήσῃ,  
 |tomary; believe  
 τὸ ὅλον αὐτῷ καλῶς ἔχειν. καὶ αὐτὸς δὲ ὅ τι πού  
 καλὸν ἴδοι ἐς |army , ταῦτα |acquire διεδωρεῖτο τοῖς  
 ἀεὶ |worthy , |consider |cus- καλὸν κάγαθόν ἔχει τὸ  
 |tomary; believe  
 |army , τούτοις ἅπασιν αὐτὸς |marshal, array |when δὲ  
 αὐτοῖς |distribute, send out ἵν, ἔλεξεν |thus |somehow τὸ μέσον  
 τῶν |military rank καὶ λοχαγῶν καὶ πάντων ὅσους |honor .

having gained not only the actual money he took away with him, but a far ampler store of wealth, won by his own graciousness, on which he could draw in time of need.

For the first night he encamped on the borders of Armenia, but the next day he sent an army and the money to Cyaxares, who was close at hand, as he had promised to be, while he himself took his pleasure in hunting wherever he could find the game, in company with Tigranes and the flower of the Persian force.

And when he came back to Media he gave gifts of money to his chief officers, sufficient for each to reward their own subordinates, for he held to it that, if every one made his own division worthy of praise, all would be well with the army as a whole. He himself secured anything that he thought of value for the campaign, and divided it among the most meritorious, convinced that every gain to the army was an adornment to himself.

At every distribution he would take occasion to address the officers and all whom he chose to honour in some such words as these: "My friends,

*vocabulary***ἀγρυπνέω** lie awake**αἵτιος** blameworthy; the cause

~etiology

**αἰτίος** blameworthy; the cause

~etiology

**εἶκω** yield; seem likely, (pf+dat) seem

like, (pf) be fit/worthy of/to ~victor

**ἐπιθυμέω** (ō) wish, covet**ἐπιστήμων** skillful, clever ~station**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act,

uncommon) handle, take care of

**εὐπορία** ease, abundance**εὐφροσύνη** happiness ~frenzy**ἡδονή** pleasure**κατανοέω** notice, realize, learn**καταφρονέω** scorn; think of**ὀπλίζω** prepare, arm ~hoplite**ὀπλίσς** -τος (f) arming for war**ὅπου** where**πάντως** by all means**πειθός** persuasive**ποίη** grass**ποιός** what kind**πονέω** work; be busy ~osteopenia**πόνος** toil, suffering ~osteopenia**προσγίγνομαι** become ally to**προσήκω** belong to, it beseems**σκοπέω** behold, consider**σπεύδω** 'push on,' get going, hurry

~repudiate

**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,

mercenary ~strategy

**στρατιωτικός** military**τιμάω** (i) honor, exalt

Ἄνδρες φίλοι, δοκεῖ ἡμῖν εὐφροσύνη τις νῦν παρεῖναι, καὶ ὅτι εὐπορία τις προσγεγένηται καὶ ὅτι ἔχομεν ἀφ' ὧν τιμᾶν ἔξομεν οὓς ἂν βουλώμεθα καὶ τιμᾶσθαι ὡς ἂν ἕκαστος ἄξιος ᾗ. πάντως δὴ ἀναμνησκόμεθα τὰ ποῖ' ἅττα ἔργα τούτων τῶν ἀγαθῶν ἐστὶν αἷτια· σκοπούμενοι γὰρ εὐρήσετε τό τε ἀγρυπνήσαι ὅπου ἔδει καὶ τὸ πονῆσαι καὶ τὸ σπεῦσαι καὶ τὸ μὴ εἶξαι τοῖς πολεμίοις. οὕτως οὖν χρή καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν ἄνδρας ἀγαθοὺς εἶναι, γινώσκοντας ὅτι τὰς μεγάλας ἡδονὰς καὶ τὰγαθὰ τὰ μεγάλα ἢ πειθῶ καὶ ἢ καρτερία καὶ οἱ ἐν τῷ καιρῷ πόνοι καὶ κίνδυνοι παρέχονται.

Κατανοῶν δὲ ὁ Κύρος ὡς εὖ μὲν αὐτῷ εἶχον τὰ σώματα οἱ στρατιῶται πρὸς τὸ δύνασθαι στρατιωτικοὺς πόρους φέρειν, εὖ δὲ τὰς ψυχὰς πρὸς τὸ καταφρονεῖν τῶν πολεμίων, ἐπιστήμονες δ' ᾗσαν τὰ προσήκοντα τῇ ἑαυτῶν ἕκαστοι ὀπλίσει, καὶ πρὸς τὸ πείθεσθαι δὲ τοῖς ἄρχουσιν ἑώρα πάντας εὖ παρεσκευασμένους, ἐκ τούτων οὖν ἐπεθύμει τι ἤδη τῶν πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους πράττειν,



Ἄνδρες φίλοι, δοκεῖ ἡμῶν |happiness τις νῦν παρῆναι,  
καὶ ὅτι |ease, |dance |abun-|become ally to καὶ ὅτι ἔχομεν ἀφ'  
ὧν |honor ἔχομεν οὕς ἂν βουλώμεθα καὶ |honor ὥς ἂν  
ἕκαστος |worthy|. |by all means, ἀναμνησκόμεθα τὰ ποῖ  
ἅττα ἔργα τούτων τῶν ἀγαθῶν ἐστὶν αἴτια· |behold,  
|consider  
γὰρ εὐρήσετε τό τε |lie awake |where ἵδρι καὶ τὸ |work  
καὶ τὸ |'push on,' get |τὸ μὴ εἶξαι τοῖς πολέμοις. οὕτως οὖν  
|going, hurry  
|must, ... |τὸ |left over ἵνδρας ἀγαθοὺς εἶναι, γινώσκοντας  
|should  
ὅτι τὰς μεγάλας |pleasure καὶ τὰγαθὰ τὰ μεγάλα ἢ πειθῶ  
καὶ ἡ καρτερία καὶ οἱ ἐν τῷ καιρῷ |toil, suffering|danger  
|furnish

|notice, real- δὲ ὁ Κῦρος ὡς εἶ μὲν αὐτῷ εἶχον τὰ |body,  
|ize, learn |person,  
οἱ |soldier, πρὸς τὸ δύνασθαι |military |thing  
|mercenary |toil, suffering  
φέρειν, εἶ δὲ τὰς |soul; life πρὸς τὸ |scorn; think of τῶν  
πολεμίων, |skillful, clever δ' ἦσαν τὰ |belong to, it τῇ ἐαυτῶν  
|beseems  
ἕκαστοι ὀπλίσει, καὶ πρὸς τὸ πείθεσθαι δὲ τοῖς ἄρχουσιν  
ἑώρα πάντα εἶ |prepare, render , ἐκ τούτων οὖν  
|wish, |civet τι ἤδη τῶν πρὸς τοὺς πολέμοις πράττειν,

the god of mirth must be with us to-day: we have found a source of plenty, and we have the wherewithal to honour whom we wish and as they may deserve. Let us call to mind, all of us, the only way in which these blessings can be won. We shall find it is by toil, and watchfulness, and speed, and the resolve never to yield to our foes. After this pattern must we prove ourselves to be men, knowing that all high delights and all great joys are only gained by obedience and hardihood, and through pains endured and dangers confronted in their proper season.”

But presently, when Cyrus saw that his men were strong enough for all the work of war, and bold enough to meet their enemies with scorn, expert and skilful in the use of the weapons each man bore, and all of them perfect in obedience and discipline, the desire grew in his heart to be up and

*vocabulary*

**ἄναρχος** unruled; unruling ~oligarch  
**ἀνταγωνίζομαι** vie with  
**ἀπολύω** loose, free from ~loose  
**ἀριθμέω** to count ~arithmetic  
**ἀριθμός** number  
**ἀσπάζομαι** greet, salute  
**ἐξάγω** lead out ~demagogue  
**ἐξοπλίζω** prepare, arm ~hoplite  
**ἐπαινέω** concur, praise, advise  
**ἐπίφθονος** jealous  
**ἐφίημι** (τι) send at, let fly; mp: rush at, spring upon ~jet  
**καταλέγω** relate in detail, choose; enroll ~legion  
**καταλείπω** leave behind, abandon ~eclipse  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon  
**κοινός** communal, ordinary

**κοινός** make common; cooperate  
**κοσμέω** marshal, array ~cosmos  
**λοχαγός** (ἄ) captain  
**ὁμοῖος** like ~homoerotic  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle ~hoplite  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon, recommend, encourage  
**παρασκευή** preparation  
**στρατιά** army ~strategy  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy  
**συγκαλέω** call together ~gallo  
**συνεργός** cooperating; colleague  
**ταξίαρχος** military rank  
**ὕπακούω** listen, reply ~acoustic  
**φθονέω** envy  
**φιλόφρων** kindly

γιννώσκων ὅτι ἐν τῷ μέλλειν πολλάκις τοῖς ἄρχουσι καὶ τῆς καλῆς παρασκευῆς ἀλλοιοῦταί τι. ἔτι δ' ὁρῶν ὅτι φιλοτίμως ἔχοντες ἐν οἷς ἀντηγωνίζοντο πολλοὶ καὶ ἐπιφθόνως εἶχον πρὸς ἀλλήλους τῶν στρατιωτῶν, καὶ τούτων ἔνεκα ἐξάγειν αὐτοὺς ἐβούλετο εἰς τὴν πολεμίαν ὥς τάχιστα, εἰδὼς ὅτι οἱ κοινοὶ κίνδυνοι φιλοφρόνως ποιοῦσιν ἔχειν τοὺς συμμάχους πρὸς ἀλλήλους, καὶ οὐκέτι ἐν τούτῳ οὔτε τοῖς ἐν ὅπλοις κοσμουμένοις φθονοῦσιν οὔτε τοῖς δόξης ἐφιεμένοις, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον καὶ ἐπαινοῦσι καὶ ἀσπάζονται οἱ τοιοῦτοι τοὺς ὁμοίους, νομίζοντες συνεργοὺς αὐτοὺς τοῦ κοινοῦ ἀγαθοῦ εἶναι. οὕτω δὴ πρῶτον μὲν ἐξώπλισε τὴν στρατιὰν καὶ κατέταξεν ὥς ἐδύνατο κάλλιστά τε καὶ ἄριστα, ἔπειτα δὲ συνεκάλεσε μυριάρχους καὶ χιλιάρχους καὶ ταξιάρχους καὶ λοχαγούς. οὗτοι γὰρ ἀπολελυμένοι ἦσαν τοῦ καταλέγεσθαι ἐν τοῖς τακτικοῖς ἀριθμοῖς, καὶ ὁπότε δέοι ἢ ὑπακούειν τῷ στρατηγῷ ἢ παραγγέλλειν τι, οὐδ' ὥς οὐδὲν ἄναρχον κατελείπετο, ἀλλὰ δωδεκαδάρχους καὶ ἑξαδάρχους πάντα

γιγνώσκων ὅτι ἐν τῷ μέλλειν |often τοῖς ἄρχουσι  
 καὶ τῆς καλῆς |preparation ἀλλοιούται τι. ἔτι δ' ὁρῶν  
 ὅτι φιλοτίμως ἔχοντες ἐν οἷς |vie with πολλοὶ καὶ  
 |jealous εἶχον πρὸς ἀλλήλους τῶν |soldier, καὶ  
 |mercenary τούτων ἔνεκα |lead out αὐτοὺς ἐβούλετο εἰς τὴν πολεμίαν  
 ὡς τάχιστα, εἰδὼς ὅτι οἱ |common danger |kindly  
 |ordinary ποιοῦσιν ἔχειν τοὺς συμμάχους πρὸς ἀλλήλους, καὶ |no more  
 ἐν τούτῳ οὔτε τοῖς ἐν |tool |marshal, array |envy  
 οὔτε τοῖς δόξης |send flying at ἰλλὰ μᾶλλον καὶ |concur  
 καὶ |greet, salute οἱ τοιοῦτοι τοὺς |like , νομίζοντες  
 |cooperating; αὐτοὺς τοῦ κοινοῦ ἀγαθοῦ εἶναι. οὕτω δὴ  
 |colleague πρῶτον μὲν |prepare, arm ἡν |army καὶ κατέταξεν ὡς  
 ἐδύνατο κάλλιστα τε καὶ ἄριστα, ἔπειτα δὲ |call together  
 μυριάρχους καὶ χιλιάρχους καὶ |military rank καὶ |captain  
 οὔτοι γὰρ |loose, free from ἦσαν τοῦ |relate in detail, ἐν τοῖς  
 |choose; enroll τακτικοῖς ἀριθμοῖς, καὶ |when δέοι ἢ |listen, reply τῷ  
 στρατηγῷ ἢ |transmit; order, summon, ὥς οὐδὲν |unruled;  
 |recommend, encourage |unruling κατελείπετο, ἀλλὰ δωδεκαδάρχοις καὶ ἑξαδάρχοις πάντα

doing and achieve something against the foe. He knew well how often a general has found delay ruin his fairest armament. He noticed, moreover, that in the eagerness of rivalry and the strain of competition many of the soldiers grew jealous of each other; and for this, if for no other reason, he desired to lead them into the enemy's country without delay, feeling that common dangers awaken comradeship among those who are fighting in a common cause, and then all such bickerings cease, and no man is galled by the splendour of his comrade's arms, or the passion of his desire for glory: envy is swallowed up in praise, and each competitor greets his rivals with delight as fellow-workers for the common good.

Therefore Cyrus ordered his whole force to assemble under arms, and drew them up into battle-array, using all his skill to make the display a wonder of beauty and perfection. Then he summoned his chief officers, his generals, his brigadiers, and his company-captains. These men were not bound to be always in the ranks, and some were always free to wait on the commander-in- chief or carry orders along the lines without leaving the troops unofficered:

*vocabulary*

**αἰσχύνῃ** (ῥ) shame, dishonor  
**αἰσχύνω** (ῥ) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar  
**ἄχθομαι** be burdened with  
**διακοσμέω** marshal ~cosmos  
**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire a mental state ~ballistic  
**ἐξοδος** (f) leaving, way out  
**ἐξορμάω** veer off course ~hormone  
**ἐπιθυμία** (ῥ) desire, thing desired  
**ἐπικαίριος** at a fitting time; serious; vital  
**ἐρωτικός** amorous  
**εὖθυμος** (ῥ) well-disposed ~fume  
**ἰσχυρός** (ῥ) strong, forceful, violent

**καταλείπω** leave behind, abandon  
 ~eclipse  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon  
**πάλαι** long ago ~paleo  
**πάλη** wrestling ~Pallas  
**πάλλω** shake, brandish ~Pallas  
**παράγω** deflect; bring forward  
**σιωπάω** be silent  
**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war, campaign ~strategy  
**συνέρχομαι** come together  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military unit  
**τοιόσδε** such  
**ὕστεραῖος** the next; later

τὰ καταλειπόμενα διεκοσμεῖτο. ἐπεὶ δὲ συνήλθον οἱ ἐπικαίριοι, παράγων αὐτοὺς ἐπεδείκνυέ τε αὐτοῖς τὰ καλῶς ἔχοντα καὶ ἐδίδασκεν ἢ ἕκαστον ἰσχυρὸν ἦν τῶν συμμαχικῶν. ἐπεὶ δὲ κάκείνους ἐποίησεν ἐρωτικῶς ἔχειν τοῦ ἤδη ποιεῖν τι, εἶπεν αὐτοῖς νῦν μὲν ἀπιέναι ἐπὶ τὰς τάξεις καὶ διδάσκειν ἕκαστον τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ ἅπερ αὐτὸς ἐκείνους, καὶ πειραᾶσθαι αὐτοὺς ἐπιθυμίαν ἐμβαλεῖν πᾶσι τοῦ στρατεύεσθαι, ὅπως εὐθυμότατα πάντες ἐξορμῶντο, πρῶ δὲ παρεῖναι ἐπὶ τὰς Κναξάρου θύρας. τότε μὲν δὴ ἀπιόντες οὕτω πάντες ἐποιοῦν. τῇ δ' ὑστεραία ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ παρήσαν οἱ ἐπικαίριοι ἐπὶ θύραις. σὺν τούτοις οὖν ὁ Κῦρος εἰσελθὼν πρὸς τὸν Κναξάρην ἤρχετο λόγου τοιούδε.

Οἶδα μὲν, ἔφη, ὦ Κναξάρη, ὅτι ἂ μέλλω λέγειν σοὶ πάλαι δοκεῖ οὐδὲν ἦττον ἢ ἡμῖν· ἀλλ' ἴσως αἰσχύνῃ λέγειν ταῦτα, μὴ δοκῆς ἀχθόμενος ὅτι τρέφεις ἡμᾶς ἐξόδου μεμνήσθαι. ἐπεὶ οὖν σὺ σιωπᾶς, ἐγὼ λέξω καὶ ὑπὲρ σοῦ καὶ ὑπὲρ ἡμῶν. ἡμῖν γὰρ δοκεῖ πᾶσιν, ἐπείπερ



τὰ καταλειπόμενα |marshal . ἐπεὶ δὲ |come together

|at a fitting|deflect; bring ὑτοὺς ἐπεδείκνυε τε αὐτοῖς τὰ  
time; serious;|forward  
vital  
καλῶς ἔχοντα καὶ |teach ἥ ἕκαστον |strong, force- γῶν  
ful, violent

συμμαχικῶν. ἐπεὶ δὲ κάκείνους ἐποίησεν |amorous ἔχειν

τοῦ ἤδη ποιεῖν τι, εἶπεν αὐτοῖς νῦν μὲν |be absent, go τὰς  
away, return

τάξεις καὶ |teach ἕκαστον τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ ἅπερ αὐτὸς

ἐκείνους, καὶ |try, test αὐτοὺς |desire, thing|throw in; inspire  
desired

τοῦ |make an expedition, war,|well-disposed πάντες |veer off course  
campaign

πρῶ δὲ παρεῖναι ἐπὶ τὰς Κναζάρου |door . τότε μὲν δὴ

|be absent, go τῶ πάντες ἐποιοῦν. τῇ δ' |the next; later, τῇ  
away, return

ἡμέρᾳ παρήσαν οἱ |at a fitting time;|door . σὺν τούτοις  
serious; vital

οὖν ὁ Κῦρος εἰσελθὼν πρὸς τὸν Κναζάρην ἤρχετο λόγου

|such

Οἶδα μὲν, ἔφη, ὦ Κναζάρη, ὅτι ἂ μέλλω λέγειν σοὶ πάλαι

δοκεῖ οὐδὲν ἦττον ἢ ἡμῖν· ἀλλ' |equal αἰσχύνῃ λέγειν ταῦτα,

μὴ δοκῆς |be burdened with|nurture ἡμᾶς |leaving, |remind; (mid) remem-  
way out ber, turn one's thoughts

ἐπεὶ οὖν σὺν |be silent . ἐγὼ λέξω καὶ ὑπὲρ σου καὶ ὑπὲρ ἡμῶν.  
to

ἡμῖν γὰρ δοκεῖ πᾶσιν, ἐπείπερ

for the captains-of- twelve and the captains-of- six stepped into the gaps, and absolute order was preserved. So Cyrus assembled his staff and led them along the lines, pointing out the merits of the combined forces and the special strength of each, and thus he kindled in their hearts the passion for achievement, and then he bade them return to their regiments and repeat the lessons he had taught them, trying to implant in their own men the same desire for action, so that one and all might sally out in the best of heart; and the next morning they were to present themselves at Cyaxares' gates. So the officers went away and did as he commanded, and the next morning at daybreak they assembled at the trysting-place, and Cyrus met them and came before Cyaxares and said to him:

"I Know well that what I am about to say must often have been in your own mind, but you have shrunk from suggesting it yourself lest it seem that you were weary of supporting us. Therefore since you must keep silence, let me speak for both of us. We are all agreed that since our preparations are complete

*vocabulary*

**ἀέκων** unwilling  
**ἄκων** javelin; unwilling ~acme  
**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful  
**δαπανάω** spend, consume, waste  
**δαπάνη** cost, funds, extravagance  
**δαπανώ** spend, consume, waste  
**ἐκστρατεύω** march out; (mp) take the field  
**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire a mental state ~ballistic  
**ἐνθάδε** here, hither  
**ἐπειδάν** when, after

**ἐπειμι** lie upon; approach ~ion  
**ἐρρωμένος** vigorous, powerful  
**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism  
**ἴσχω** imitate, liken to, guess ~victor  
**σίνομαι** (ἷ) rob, damage  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy  
**συνάπτω** join, partake; adjoin; consult; fight ~haptic  
**ὕπαντάω** meet  
**ὕπομένω** stay behind, await ~remain  
**φίλιος** friendly

παρεσκευάσμεθα, μὴ ἐπειδὰν ἐμβάλωσιν οἱ πολέμιοι εἰς τὴν σὴν χώραν, τότε μάχεσθαι, μὴδ' ἐν τῇ φιλίᾳ καθημένους ἡμᾶς ὑπομένειν, ἀλλ' ἰέναι ὡς τάχιστα εἰς τὴν πολεμίαν. νῦν μὲν γὰρ ἐν τῇ σῇ χώρᾳ ὄντες πολλὰ τῶν σῶν σινόμεθα ἄκοντες· ἣν δ' εἰς τὴν πολεμίαν ἴωμεν, τὰ ἐκείνων κακῶς ποιήσομεν ἠδόμενοι. ἔπειτα νῦν μὲν σὺ ἡμᾶς τρέφεις πολλὰ δαπανῶν, ἣν δ' ἐκστρατευσώμεθα, θρεψόμεθα ἐκ τῆς πολεμίας. ἔτι δὲ εἰ μὲν μείζων τις ἡμῶν ὁ κίνδυνος ἔμελλεν εἶναι ἐκεῖ ἢ ἐνθάδε, ἴσως τὸ ἀσφαλέστατον ἦν αἰρετέον. νῦν δὲ ἴσοι μὲν ἐκεῖνοι ἔσονται, ἣν τε ἐνθάδε ὑπομένωμεν ἣν τε εἰς τὴν ἐκείνων ἰόντες ὑπαντῶμεν αὐτοῖς· ἴσοι δὲ ἡμεῖς ὄντες μαχούμεθα, ἣν τε ἐνθάδε ἐπιόντας αὐτοὺς δεχώμεθα ἣν τε ἐπ' ἐκείνους ἰόντες τὴν μάχην συνάπτωμεν. πολὺ μέντοι ἡμεῖς βελτίοσι καὶ ἐρρωμενεστέραις ταῖς ψυχαῖς τῶν στρατιωτῶν χρυσόμεθα, ἣν ἴωμεν ἐπὶ τοὺς ἐχθροὺς καὶ μὴ ἄκοντες ὁρᾶν δοκῶμεν τοὺς πολεμίους· πολὺ δὲ κακείνοι μᾶλλον ἡμᾶς φοβήσονται, ὅταν ἀκούσωσιν ὅτι

|prepare, render , μὴ |when, |throw in; inspire πολέμιοι  
 |after  
 εἰς τὴν σὴν χώραν, τότε μάχεσθαι, |and not; |not|friendly  
 |even  
 |sit ἡμᾶς |stay behind, await ἔναι ὡς τάχιστα εἰς τὴν  
 πολεμίαν. νῦν μὲν γὰρ ἐν τῇ σῇ χώρᾳ ὄντες πολλὰ τῶν  
 σῶν |rob, damage ἴοντες· ἣν δ' εἰς τὴν πολεμίαν |imitate, liken  
 |to, guess  
 ἐκείνων κακῶς ποιήσομεν |ἥδομαι?: be ἥπλεσθαι, enjoy; or ἥδομαι?: be  
 |pleased, enjoy  
 ἡμᾶς |nurture πολλὰ δαπανῶν, ἣν δ' |march out; (mp) take,  
 |the field  
 |nurture ἐκ τῆς πολεμίας. ἔτι δὲ εἰ μὲν μεῖζων τις  
 ἡμῶν ὁ |danger ἔμελλεν εἶναι ἐκεῖ ἢ |here, |ἴσως τὸ  
 |hither  
 |safe, easy, steady, ἣν αἰρετέον. νῦν δὲ ἴσοι μὲν ἐκείνοι  
 |careful  
 ἔσσονται, ἣν τε |here, |stay behind, await .ε εἰς τὴν ἐκείνων  
 |hither  
 ἴοντες |meet αὐτοῖς· ἴσοι δὲ ἡμεῖς ὄντες μαχούμεθα,  
 ἣν τε |here, |lie upon; approach . |accept, re- ἣν τε ἐπ'  
 |hither |ceive, await  
 ἐκείνους ἴοντες τὴν μάχην |join, partake; adjoin; cōn-|however  
 |sult; fight  
 ἡμεῖς βελτίοσι καὶ |vigorous, powerful ταῖς ψυχαῖς τῶν  
 |soldier, χρησόμεθα, ἣν |imitate, liken ἑτοῖμα, distasteful,  
 |mercenary |guess  
 ἄκοντες ὁρᾶν δοκῶμεν τοὺς πολεμίους· πολὺ δὲ κακῶς  
 μᾶλλον ἡμᾶς φοβήσονται, |whenever ὑπόσωσιν ὅτι

we should not wait until the enemy invades our territory before we give him battle, nor loiter here in a friendly land, but attack him on his own ground with what speed we may. For while we linger here, we injure your property in spite of ourselves, but once on the enemy's soil, we can damage his, and that with the best will in the world. As things are, you must maintain us, and the cost is great; but once launched on foreign service, we can maintain ourselves, and at our foe's expense. Possibly, if it were more dangerous to go forward than to stay here, the more cautious might seem the wiser plan. But whether we stay or whether we go, the enemy's numbers will be the same, and so will ours, whether we receive them here or join battle with them there. Moreover, the spirit of our soldiers will be all the higher and all the bolder if they feel that they are marching against the foe and not cowering before him; and his alarm will be all the greater when he hears that

*vocabulary*

**ἀναμένω** wait for ~remain  
**ἀπαντάω** encounter, come upon  
**ἄχθομαι** be burdened with  
**δηιόω** be inimical, hurt, tear, kill  
**ἐλαχύς** small; comp.: less ~light  
**ἔξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion  
**ἡώς ἡῶθι** (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene  
**θαρσαλέος** bold, over-bold  
**καίτοι** and yet; and in fact; although  
**κακόω** harm, disfigure ~cacophony  
**λογίζομαι** reckon, consider  
**οἴκοι** at home ~economics  
**ὁμολογέω** agree with/to

**Πέρσης** Persian

**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near; add  
 ~ion  
**προσίημι** be allowed near  
**πτήσσω** cower, cause to cower  
**ῥώμη** strength, might  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
**συσκευάζω** pack up  
**τοίνυν** well, then  
**ὑπονοέω** suspect, surmise  
**φθάνω** (ᾱ) do first, outstrip  
**φοβερός** frightful, afraid

οὐ φοβούμενοι πτήσομεν αὐτοὺς οἴκοι καθήμενοι, ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ αἰσθανόμεθα προσιόντας, ἀπαντῶμέν τε αὐτοῖς, ἔν' ὥς τάχιστα συμμείξωμεν, καὶ οὐκ ἀναμένομεν ἕως ἂν ἡ ἡμετέρα χώρα κακῶται, ἀλλὰ φθάνοντες ἤδη δηοῦμεν τὴν ἐκείνων γῆν. καίτοι, ἔφη, εἴ τι ἐκείνους μὲν φοβερωτέρους ποιήσομεν, ἡμᾶς δ' αὐτοὺς θαρραλεωτέρους, πολὺ τοῦτο ἡμῖν ἐγὼ πλεονέκτημα νομίζω, καὶ τὸν κίνδυνον οὕτως ἡμῖν μὲν ἐλάττω λογίζομαι, τοῖς δὲ πολεμίοις μείζω. πολὺ γὰρ μάλλον, ὥς καὶ ὁ πατήρ αἰεὶ λέγει καὶ σὺν φήσ, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι δὲ πάντες ὁμολογοῦσιν ὥς αἱ μάχαι κρίνονται μάλλον ταῖς ψυχαῖς ἢ ταῖς τῶν σωμάτων ῥώμασι. ὁ μὲν οὕτως εἶπε· Κναζάρης δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο· Ἄλλ' ὅπως μὲν, ὦ Κῦρε καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι Πέρσαι, ἐγὼ ἄχθομαι ὑμᾶς τρέφων μηδ' ὑπονοεῖτε· τό γε μέντοι ἰέναι εἰς τὴν πολεμίαν ἤδη καὶ ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ βέλτιον εἶναι πρὸς πάντα. Ἐπεὶ τοίνυν, ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος, ὁμογνωμονοῦμεν, συσκευαζώμεθα καὶ ἦν τὰ τῶν θεῶν ἡμῖν θάπτον συγκαταινῇ, ἐξίωμεν ὥς τάχιστα.

Ἐκ τούτου τοῖς μὲν στρατιώταις εἶπον συσκευάζεσθαι·



οὐ φοβούμενοι |cower, cause αὐτοὺς |at |sit , ἀλλ'  
 |to cower |home  
 ἐπεὶ |perceive προσιόντας, |encounter, come upon ἱς, ἔν'  
 ὥς τάχιστα |mix , καὶ οὐκ |wait for ἕως ἂν ἡ  
 |our, my |place |harm, disfigure` ` |be first ἥδη |δηιώ?: harm, kill; or  
 |δηιώ?: harm, kill  
 ἐκείνων γῆν. |and yet; and in` τι ἐκείνους μὲν |frightful, afraid  
 |fact; although  
 ποιήσομεν, ἡμᾶς δ' αὐτοὺς |bold , πολὺ τοῦτο  
 ἡμῖν ἐγὼ πλεονέκτημα |consider, customary;|danger οὕτως  
 |believe  
 ἡμῖν μὲν ἐλάττω |reckon, , τοῖς δὲ πολεμίοις μείζω. πολὺ  
 |consider  
 γὰρ μᾶλλον, ὥς καὶ ὁ πατήρ αἰεὶ λέγει καὶ σὺ φῆς, καὶ  
 οἱ ἄλλοι δὲ πάντες |agree with/to ὥς αἱ μάχαι κρίνονται  
 μᾶλλον ταῖς ψυχαῖς ἢ ταῖς τῶν σωμάτων |strength, ὁ μὲν  
 |might  
 οὕτως εἶπε· Κναζάρης δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο· Ἄλλ' ὅπως μὲν, ὦ  
 Κῦρε καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι Πέρσαι, ἐγὼ |be burdened|nurture |and not; not  
 |with |even  
 |suspect, τό γε |however ἔναι εἰς τὴν πολεμίαν ἥδη καὶ  
 |surmise  
 ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ βέλτιον εἶναι πρὸς πάντα. Ἐπεὶ |well, then` ῥη ὁ  
 Κῦρος, ὁμογνωμονοῦμεν, |pack up καὶ ἦν τὰ τῶν  
 θεῶν ἡμῖν θάπτον συγκαταινῇ, |go forth; ὥς τάχιστα.  
 |is possible  
 Ἐκ τούτου τοῖς μὲν |soldier, εἶπον |pack up  
 |mercenary

we are not crouching at home in terror but coming out to meet him as soon as we have heard of his advance, eager to close at once, not holding back until our territory suffers, but prompt to seize the moment and ravage his own land first. Indeed," he added, "if we do no more than quicken our own courage and his fears, I would reckon it a substantial gain, and count it so much the less danger for us and so much the more for him. My father never tires of telling me what I have heard you say yourself, and what all the world admits, that battles are decided more by the character of the troops than by their bodily strength."

He ended, and Cyaxares answered:

"Cyrus, both you and all my Persian friends may feel sure that I find it no trouble to maintain you; do not imagine such a thing; but I agree with you that the time is ripe for an advance on the enemy's land."

"Then," said Cyrus, "since we are all of one mind, let us make our final preparations, and, if heaven will, let us set forth without delay."

So they bade the soldiers prepare for the start, and

*vocabulary***ἄθροος** grouped**αἶσιος** auspicious ~etiology**ἄμελέω** disregard; (impers.) of course**ἀναφαίνω** reveal, shine ~phenomenon**ἄφθονος** ungrudging, plentiful**δηιώω** be inimical, hurt, tear, kill**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire a mental state ~ballistic**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable**εὐμενής** kind**ἡγεμών** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide, chief ~hegemony**ἡνίκα** when**ἥρω** hero ~hero**θυσία** sacrifice**θύω** (ὀ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω**ἱλάσκομαι** appease**ἱλεως** propitious, gracious**καλλιερῶ** have good signs**κηδεμών** -όνος (m, 3) mourner

~heinous

**λεία** booty**λεῖος** smooth**οἰκήτωρ** inhabitant**οἰωνός** vulture, large bird, bird of prey; omen ~avis**ὄριον** boundary**παντοῖος** all kinds of**πατρῷος** of the father(s), ancestral ~paternal**πατρῶος** of the father(s), ancestral**περιβάλλω** act: excel; mid: put on clothing ~ballistic**προάγω** lead forward, advance**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**στρατιά** army ~strategy**στρατοπεδεύω** encamp or take up station ~strategy**σύμβουλος** adviser**χοή** χῶς libation

ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἔθνε πρῶτον μὲν Διὶ βασιλεῖ, ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις θεοῖς, οὓς ἡγείτο ἕλεως καὶ εὐμενεῖς ὄντας ἡγεμόνας ἂν γενέσθαι τῇ στρατιᾷ καὶ παραστάτας ἀγαθοὺς καὶ συμμάχους καὶ συμβούλους τῶν ἀγαθῶν. συμπαρεκάλει δὲ καὶ ἥρωας γῆς Μηδίας οἰκήτορας καὶ κηδεμόνας. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐκαλλιέρησέ τε καὶ ἀθρόον ἦν αὐτῷ τὸ στράτευμα πρὸς τοῖς ὀρίοις, τότε δὴ οἰωνοῖς χρησάμενος αἰσίοις ἐνέβαλεν εἰς τὴν πολεμίαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ τάχιστα διέβη τὰ ὄρια, ἐκεῖ αὖ καὶ Γῆν ἱλάσκετο χοαῖς καὶ θεοὺς θυσίαις καὶ ἥρωας Ἀσσυρίας οἰκήτορας ἡυμένιζετο. ταῦτα δὲ ποιήσας αὖθις Διὶ πατρώῳ ἔθνε, καὶ εἴ τις ἄλλος θεῶν ἀνεφαίνετο, οὐδενὸς ἡμέλει.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ καλῶς ταῦτα εἶχεν, εὐθὺς τοὺς μὲν πεζοὺς προαγαγόντες οὐ πολλὴν ὁδὸν ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο, τοῖς δ' ἵπποις καταδρομὴν ποιησάμενοι περιεβάλλοντο πολλὴν καὶ παντοίαν λείαν. καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν δὲ μεταστρατοπεδεύομενοι καὶ ἔχοντες ἄφθονα τὰ ἐπιτήδεια καὶ δηοῦντες τὴν χώραν ἀνέμενον τοὺς πολεμίους. ἥνίκα

ὁ δὲ Κῦρος |rush; sacrifice ' μὲν Διὶ βασιλεῖ, ἔπειτα δὲ  
 καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις θεοῖς, οὓς ἡγείτο |propitious, |kind  
 |gracious  
 ὄντας ἡγεμόνας ἂν γενέσθαι τῇ στρατιᾷ καὶ παραστάτας  
 ἀγαθοὺς καὶ συμμάχους καὶ |adviser τῶν ἀγαθῶν.  
 συμπαρακάλει δὲ καὶ |hero γῆς Μηδίας |inhabitant καὶ  
 |mourner . ἐπεὶ δ' |have good signs - καὶ |grouped ἦν αὐτῷ τὸ  
 |army πρὸς τοῖς |boundary ἔτε δὴ |vulture, |χρησάμενος  
 |eagle,  
 |auspicious ἔβαλεν εἰς τὴν πολέμιαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ τάχιστα |pass over, cross  
 |omen  
 τὰ |boundary\_ αὐτῷ καὶ Γῆν |appease |libation αἱ θεοὺς θυσίαις  
 καὶ |hero Ἀσσυρίας |inhabitant ἠὺμενίζετο. ταῦτα δὲ  
 ποιήσας αὖθις Διὶ πατρώῳ |rush; sacrifice τις ἄλλος θεῶν  
 |reveal, shine , οὐδενὸς |disregard  
 Ἐπεὶ δὲ καλῶς ταῦτα εἶχεν, εὐθὺς τοὺς μὲν πεζοὺς  
 |lead forward, ad- οὐ πολλὴν ὁδὸν |encamp or take up,  
 |vance |station  
 τοῖς δ' ἵπποις καταδρομὴν ποιησάμενοι |excel; don  
 πολλὴν καὶ |all kinds of λείαν. καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν δὲ  
 μεταστρατοπεδευόμενοι καὶ ἔχοντες |ungrudging, |fit, suitable  
 |plentiful  
 καὶ |δηιώ?: harm, kill; or\_ν ἀνέμενον τοὺς πολέμιους. |when  
 |δηιώ?: harm, kill

Cyrus offered sacrifices to Zeus the Lord and to the other gods in due order, and prayed, "Look on us with favour, and be gracious to us; guide our army, stand beside us in the battle, aid us in council, help us in action, be the comrades of the brave." Also he called upon the Heroes of Media, who dwell in the land and guard it. Then, when the signs were favourable and his army was mustered on the frontier, he felt that the moment had come, and with all good omens to support him, he invaded the enemy's land. And so soon as he had crossed the border he offered libations to the Earth and victims to the gods, and sought to win the favour of the Heroes who guard Assyria. And having so done, once more he sacrificed to Zeus, the god of his fathers, and was careful to reverence every other god who came before his mind.

But when these duties were fulfilled, there was no further pause. He pushed his infantry on at once, a short day's march, and then encamped, while the cavalry made a swift descent and captured much spoil of every kind. For the future they had only to shift their camp from time to time, and they found supplies in abundance, and could ravage the enemy's land at their ease while waiting his approach. Presently news

*vocabulary***ἀέκων** unwilling**ἄκων** javelin; unwilling ~acme**ἀπαντάω** encounter, come upon**ἀπάτη** trick, fraud, deceit

~apatosaurus

**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance**βάρβαρος** non-Greek**δείπνον** meal, food**δείπνος** meal, food**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous**ἐγγύς** near**ἐμπίπτω** fall into; attack ~petal**ἐμπροσθεν** before (time, space)**καίω** burn ~caustic**κατάσκοπος** spy, inspector**νύκτωρ** by night**ὀπισθεν** behind, hereafter**περιβάλλω** act: excel; mid: put on clothing ~ballistic**ποιόω** make of a certain quality**πρόεμι** to have been before, earlier ~ion**πρόοιδα** foresee**πρόσεμι** approach, draw near; add ~ion**προσίημι** be allowed near**πρόσω** forward, in the future; far**προφυλακή** picket**πυρά** pyre ~pyre**πυρπολέω** tend a fire ~pole**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**συνδοκέω** seem good also**συντάσσω** gather, assemble ~syntax**τάφος** (f) ditch, trench ~epitaph**φάος** φῶς (n, 3) light; salvation; (pl) eyes ~photon

δὲ προσιόντες ἐλέγοντο οὐκέτι δέχ' ἡμερῶν ὁδὸν ἀπέχειν, τότε δὴ ὁ Κῦρος λέγει· ὦ Κναξάρη, ὥρα δὴ ἀπαντᾶν καὶ μῆτε τοῖς πολεμίοις δοκεῖν μῆτε τοῖς ἡμετέροις φοβουμένους μὴ ἀντιπροσιέναι, ἀλλὰ δηλοὶ ὦμεν ὅτι οὐκ ἄκοντες μαχούμεθα. ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα συνέδοξε τῷ Κναξάρη, οὕτω δὴ συντεταγμένοι προῆσαν τοσοῦτον καθ' ἡμέραν ὅσον ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς καλῶς ἔχειν. καὶ δειπνον μὲν αἰεὶ κατὰ φῶς ἐποιοῦντο, πυρὰ δὲ νύκτωρ οὐκ ἔκαιον ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ· ἔμπροσθεν μέντοι τοῦ στρατοπέδου ἔκαιον, ὅπως ὀρῶν μὲν εἴ τινες νυκτὸς προσίοιεν διὰ τὸ πῦρ, μὴ ὀρῶντο δ' ὑπὸ τῶν προσιόντων. πολλάκις δὲ καὶ ὄπισθεν τοῦ στρατοπέδου ἐπυρπόλουν ἀπάτης ἕνεκα τῶν πολεμίων. ὥστ' ἔστιν ὅτε καὶ κατάσκοποι ἐνέπιπτον εἰς τὰς προφυλακὰς αὐτῶν, διὰ τὸ ὄπισθεν τὰ πυρὰ εἶναι ἔτι πρόσω τοῦ στρατοπέδου οἰόμενοι εἶναι.

Οἱ μὲν οὖν Ἀσσύριοι καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτοῖς, ἐπεὶ ἤδη ἐγγὺς ἀλλήλων τὰ στρατεύματα ἐγίνοντο, τάφρον περιεβάλλοντο, ὅπερ καὶ νῦν ἔτι ποιοῦσιν οἱ βάρβαροι



δὲ προσιόντες ἐλέγοντο |no more ἔχ' ἡμερῶν ὁδὸν ἀπέχουν,  
 τότε δὴ ὁ Κῦρος λέγει· ὦ Κναξάρη, |season, |encounter, come upon  
 καὶ μήτε τοῖς πολεμίοις δοκεῖν μήτε τοῖς |our, my  
 φοβουμένους μὴ ἀντιπροσιέναι, ἀλλὰ |visible, |conspicuous ὅτι οὐκ  
 ἄκοντες μαχούμεθα. ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα |seem good also ὕαξάρη,  
 οὕτω δὴ |gather, assemble προῆσαν |so much καθ' ἡμέραν  
 ὅσον ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς καλῶς ἔχειν. καὶ δεῖπνον μὲν αἰεὶ  
 κατὰ φῶς |make off|pyre δὲ |by night οὐκ |burn ἐν τῷ  
 στρατοπέδῳ |a certain |quality |before (time, |however οὐ στρατοπέδου |burn  
 ὅπως ὀρώων μὲν εἴ τινες νυκτὸς προσίοιεν διὰ τὸ πῦρ,  
 μὴ ὀρώωντο δ' ὑπὸ τῶν προσιόντων. |often δὲ καὶ  
 |behind, τοῦ στρατοπέδου |tend a fire |trick, ἐνεκα τῶν  
 |hereafter |fraud  
 πολεμίων. ὥστ' ἔστιν ὅτε καὶ |spy, inspector ἐνέπιπτον εἰς  
 τὰς |picket αὐτῶν, διὰ τὸ |behind, τὰ |pyre εἶναι ἔτι  
 |hereafter  
 |forward, in the στρατοπέδου οἰόμενοι εἶναι.  
 |future; far  
 Οἱ μὲν οὖν Ἀσσύριοι καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτοῖς, ἐπεὶ ἤδη  
 |near ἀλλήλων τὰ |army ἐγύγνοντο, |ditch  
 |excel; don , ὅπερ καὶ νῦν ἔτι ποιοῦσιν οἱ |non-Greek

came of his advance: he was said to be barely ten days' off, and at that Cyrus went to Cyaxares and said: "The hour has come, and we must face the enemy. Let it not seem to friend or foe that we fear the encounter: let us show them that we enjoy the fight."

Cyaxares agreed, and they moved forward in good order, marching each day as far as appeared desirable. They were careful to take their evening meal by daylight, and at night they lit no fires in the camp: they made them in front of it, so that in case of attack they might see their assailants, while they themselves remained unseen. And often they lit other fires in their rear as well, to deceive the enemy; so that at times the Assyrian scouts actually fell in with the advance-guard, having fancied from the distance of the fires that they were still some way from the encampment.

Meanwhile the Assyrians and their allies, as the two armies came into touch, halted, and threw up an entrenchment, just as all barbarian leaders do to-day, whenever they encamp, finding no difficulty

*vocabulary***ἀδύνατος** unable; impossible**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance**ἀφανής** unseen, occult, obscure**βάρβαρος** non-Greek**γήλοφος** hill, mound**δύσχρηστος** hard to use**ἐγγύς** near**εἰλύω** crouch, curl, wrap ~helix**ἐξαίφνης** suddenly**ἐξουσία** authority, office**ἐπισάπτω** pile a load on**ἔρυμα** -τος (n, 3) protection ~serve**εὐπέτης** flying well**ἐχυρός** secure; persuasive**θωρακίζω** (ᾱ) to arm, armor**ἵππικός** of horses ~hippo**καταφανής** clearly seen**κώμη** village**ὅπου** where**παντάπασιν** altogether; yes, certainly**παρασάγγης** -ου (m, 1) Persian unit, ca. 5 km**περιβάλλω** act: excel; mid: put on clothing ~ballistic**πρόσεμι** approach, draw near; add ~ion**προσίημι** be allowed near**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**στρατοπεδεύω** encamp or take up station ~strategy**ταραχώδης** messed up ~trachea**τάφος** (f) ditch, trench ~epitaph**φάτνη** manger, crib**φοβερός** frightful, afraid**χαλινόω** (ι) bridle, bit

βασιλείς, ὅπου ἂν στρατοπεδεύωνται, τάφρον  
 περιβάλλονται εὐπετῶς διὰ τὴν πολυχειρίαν· ἴσασι  
 γὰρ ὅτι ἱππικὸν στράτευμα ἐν νυκτὶ ταραχῶδές ἐστι καὶ  
 δύσχρηστον ἄλλως τε καὶ βάρβαρον. πεποδισμένους γὰρ  
 ἔχουσι τοὺς ἵππους ἐπὶ ταῖς φάτναις, καὶ εἴ τις ἐπ' αὐτοὺς  
 ἴοι, ἔργον μὲν νυκτὸς λῦσαι ἵππους, ἔργον δὲ χαλινῶσαι,  
 ἔργον δ' ἐπισάξαι, ἔργον δὲ θωρακίσασθαι, ἀναβάντας  
 δ' ἐφ' ἵππων ἐλάσαι διὰ στρατοπέδου παντάπασιν  
 ἀδύνατον. τούτων δὴ ἔνεκα πάντων καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι καὶ  
 ἐκεῖνοι τὰ ἐρύματα περιβάλλονται, καὶ ἅμα αὐτοῖς δοκεῖ  
 τὸ ἐν ἐχυρῷ εἶναι ἐξουσίαν παρέχειν ὅταν βούλωνται  
 μάχεσθαι. τοιαῦτα μὲν δὴ ποιοῦντες ἐγγὺς ἀλλήλων  
 ἐγίγνοντο. ἐπεὶ δὲ προσιόντες ἀπείχον ὅσον παρασάγγην,  
 οἱ μὲν Ἀσσύριοι οὕτως ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο ὥσπερ εἴρηται,  
 ἐν περιτεταφρευμένῳ μὲν καταφανεῖ δέ, ὁ δὲ Κῦρος  
 ὡς ἐδύνατο ἐν ἀφανεστάτῳ, κώμας τε καὶ γηλόφους  
 ἐπίπροσθεν ποιησάμενος, νομίζων πάντα τὰ πολέμα  
 ἐξαίφνης ὁρώμενα φοβερώτερα τοῖς ἐναντίοις εἶναι.

βασιλείς, |where ἂν |encamp or take up sta- |ditch  
 tion  
 |excel; don |flying well διὰ τὴν πολυχειρίαν· ἴσασι  
 γὰρ ὅτι |of horses |army ἐν νυκτὶ |messed up ἐστὶ καὶ  
 |hard to use ἄλλως τε καὶ |non-Greek πεποδισμένους γὰρ  
 ἔχουσι τοὺς ἵππους ἐπὶ ταῖς |manger, crib ἢ εἴ τις ἐπ' αὐτοὺς  
 ἰοί, ἔργον μὲν νυκτὸς λῦσαι ἵππους, ἔργον δὲ |bridle, bit  
 ἔργον δ' |pile a load, on, γον δὲ |to arm, armor , ἀναβάντας  
 δ' ἐφ' ἵππων ἐλάσαι διὰ στρατοπέδου |altogether;  
 |yes, certainly  
 |unable; τούτων δὲ ἔνεκα πάντων καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι καὶ  
 |impossible  
 ἐκεῖνοι τὰ |protection |excel; don , καὶ ἅμα αὐτοῖς δοκεῖ  
 τὸ ἐν |secure; αὶ |authority, παρέχειν ὅταν βούλωνται  
 |persuasive |office  
 μάχεσθαι. τοιαῦτα μὲν δὴ ποιοῦντες |near ἀλλήλων  
 ἐγίγνοντο. ἐπεὶ δὲ προσιόντες |ward off, "drive|ca. 5 km  
 |off, refrain, be at  
 οἱ μὲν Ἀσσύριοι οὕτως |encamp |some distance  
 |station or take up ὥσπερ εἴρηται,  
 ἐν περιτεταφρευμένῳ μὲν |clearly seen δέ, ὁ δὲ Κῦρος  
 ὡς ἐδύνατο ἐν |unseen, occult,|village τε καὶ |hill,  
 |obscure |mound  
 ἐπίπροσθεν ποιησάμενος, νομίζων πάντα τὰ πολέμια  
 |suddenly ὁρώμενα |frightful, τοῖς ἐναντίοις εἶναι.  
 |afraid

in the work because of the vast numbers at their command, and knowing that cavalry may easily be thrown into confusion and become unmanageable, especially if they are barbarians. The horses must be tethered at their stalls, and in case of attack a dozen difficulties arise: the soldier must loose his steed in the dark, bridle and saddle him, put on his own armour, mount, and then gallop through the camp, and this last it is quite impossible to do. Therefore the Assyrians, like all barbarians, throw up entrenchments round their position, and the mere fact of being inside a fastness leaves them, they consider, the choice of fighting at any moment they think fit. So the two armies drew nearer and nearer, and when they were about four miles apart, the Assyrians proceeded to encamp in the manner described: their position was completely surrounded by a trench, but also perfectly visible, while Cyrus took all the cover he could find, screening himself behind villages and hillocks, in the conviction that the more sudden the disclosure of a hostile force the greater will be the

*vocabulary***ἀναπαύω** cause to cease ~pause**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous**δηλώω** show, disclose**ἐκάτερος** each of two**ἐκφαίνω** bring to light ~photon**ἐπικαίριος** at a fitting time; serious;  
vital**ἔρυμα** -τος (n, 3) protection ~serve**ἐχυρός** secure; persuasive**ἡγεμών** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide,  
chief ~hegemony**θαρσέω** be of good heart**κοιμάω** put to sleep; (pass) lie down,

have sex

**μηδამός** no one**περιμένω** wait for**πρέπω** be conspicuous, preeminent  
~refurbish**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near; add  
~ion**προσίημι** be allowed near**προφυλακή** picket**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**συντάσσω** gather, assemble ~syntax**τοιόσδε** such**ὕστεραῖος** the next; later

καὶ ἐκείνην μὲν τὴν νύκτα ὥσπερ ἔπρεπε προφυλακὰς ποιησάμενοι ἐκάτεροι ἐκοιμήθησαν.

Τῇ δ' ὑστεραία ὁ μὲν Ἀσσύριος καὶ ὁ Κροῖσος καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἡγεμόνες ἀνέπανον τὰ στρατεύματα ἐν τῷ ἐχυρῷ· Κῦρος δὲ καὶ Κναξάρης συνταξάμενοι περιέμενον, ὥς εἰ προσίοιεν οἱ πολέμοι, μαχούμενοι. ὥς δὲ δῆλον ἐγένετο ὅτι οὐκ ἐξίοιεν οἱ πολέμοι ἐκ τοῦ ἐρύματος οὐδὲ μάχην ποιήσουντο ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, ὁ μὲν Κναξάρης καλέσας τὸν Κῦρον καὶ τῶν ἄλλων τοὺς ἐπικαιρίους ἔλεξε τοιάδε· Δοκεῖ μοι, ἔφη, ὦ ἄνδρες, ὥσπερ τυγχάνομεν συντεταγμένοι οὕτως ἵεναι πρὸς τὸ ἔρυμα τῶν ἀνδρῶν καὶ δηλοῦν ὅτι θέλομεν μάχεσθαι. οὕτω γάρ, ἔφη, ἐὰν μὴ ἀντεπεξίωσιν ἐκεῖνοι, οἱ μὲν ἡμέτεροι μᾶλλον θαρρήσαντες ἀπίασιν, οἱ πολέμοι δὲ τὴν τόλμαν ἰδόντες ἡμῶν μᾶλλον φοβήσονται. τούτῳ μὲν οὕτως ἐδόκει. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος, μηδαμῶς, ἔφη, πρὸς τῶν θεῶν, ὦ Κναξάρη, οὕτω ποιήσωμεν. εἰ γὰρ ἤδη ἐκφανέντες πορευσόμεθα, ὥς σὺ κελεύεις, νῦν τε προσιόντας ἡμᾶς οἱ πολέμοι



καὶ ἐκείνην μὲν τὴν νύκτα ὥσπερ |be con-|picket  
 ποιησάμενοι |each of two...|οιμήθησαν. |spicuous,  
 |preemi-  
 |nent

Τῇ δ' |the next; later μὲν Ἀσσύριος καὶ ὁ Κροῖσος καὶ οἱ  
 ἄλλοι |leader |cause to cease...|army ἐν τῷ |secure;  
 |persuasive  
 Κῦρος δὲ καὶ Κναξάρης |gather, assemble |wait for , ὥς  
 εἰ προσίοιεν οἱ πολέμοι, μαχοῦμενοι. ὥς δὲ |visible,  
 |conspicuous  
 ἐγένετο ὅτι οὐκ ἐξίοιεν οἱ πολέμοι ἐκ τοῦ |protection οὐδὲ  
 μάχην ποιήσουντο ἐν ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, ὁ μὲν Κναξάρης  
 καλέσας τὸν Κῦρον καὶ τῶν ἄλλων τοὺς |at a fitting time; ἐξε  
 |serious; vital  
 |such Δοκεῖ μοι, ἔφη, ὦ ἄνδρες, ὥσπερ τυγχάνομεν  
 |gather, assemble οὕτως ἵεναι πρὸς τὸ |protection...|ἀνδρῶν  
 καὶ |show, ὅτι θέλομεν μάχεσθαι. οὕτω γάρ, ἔφη,  
 |disclose  
 εἰ μὴ ἀντεπεξίωσιν ἐκείνοι, οἱ μὲν |our, my μάλλον  
 |be of good heart|be absent, go πολέμοι δὲ τὴν τόλμαν ἰδόντες  
 |away, return  
 ἡμῶν μάλλον |scare, scare. τούτῳ μὲν οὕτως ἐδόκει. ὁ δὲ  
 |away  
 Κῦρος, |no one , ἔφη, πρὸς τῶν θεῶν, ὦ Κναξάρη, οὕτω  
 ποιήσωμεν. εἰ γὰρ ἤδη |bring to light τορευσόμεθα, ὥς σὺ  
 κελεύεις, νῦν τε προσιόντας ἡμᾶς οἱ πολέμοι

enemy's alarm.

During the first night neither army did more than post the customary guards before they went to sleep, and on the next day the king of Assyria, and Croesus, and their officers, still kept the troops within their lines. But Cyrus and Cyaxares drew up their men, prepared to fight if the enemy advanced.

Ere long it was plain that they would not venture out that day, and Cyaxares summoned Cyrus and his staff and said:

"I Think, gentlemen, it would be well for us to march up to the breastworks in our present order, and show them that we wish to fight. If we do so," he added, "and they refuse our challenge, it will increase the confidence of our own men, and the mere sight of our boldness will add to the enemy's alarm."

So it seemed to Cyaxares, but Cyrus protested: "In the name of heaven, Cyaxares, let us do no such thing. By such an advance we should only reveal our numbers to them:

*vocabulary*

**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful  
**αὔριον** tomorrow  
**δειπνοποιέω** make dinner  
**διαλέγω** go through, debate ~legion  
**ἐνδεής** inadequate  
**ἐξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion  
**ἐπειδάν** when, after  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
 ~station  
**ἐρρωμένος** vigorous, powerful  
**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near,  
 direct, stop ~station  
**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider  
 ~theater  
**θυσία** sacrifice  
**θύω** (ῥ) rush; sacrifice ~θύω  
**καθοράω** look down ~panorama  
**καίω** burn ~caustic  
**καταφρονέω** scorn; think of  
**κοιμάω** put to sleep; (pass) lie down,

have sex

**μάντις** -ος (m) seer ~mantis  
**ὁμόσε** to the same spot ~homoerotic  
**ὁμότιμος** (ι) equally honored  
**πάλαι** long ago ~paleo  
**πάλη** wrestling ~Pallas  
**πάλλω** shake, brandish ~Pallas  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
 recommend, encourage  
**πότε** when?  
**πυρά** pyre ~pyre  
**στεφανώ** crown  
**συγκαλέω** call together ~gallo  
**συνδοκέω** seem good also  
**ὕστεραῖος** the next; later  
**φανερὸς** visible, conspicuous ~photon  
**φροντίζω** consider, ponder  
**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch  
 ~phylactery  
**φυλακός** guard; sentry

θεάσονται οὐδὲν φοβούμενοι, εἰδότες ὅτι ἐν ἀσφαλεῖ εἰσι τοῦ μηδὲν παθεῖν, ἐπειδάν τε μηδὲν ποιήσαντες ἀπίωμεν, πάλιν καθορῶντες ἡμῶν τὸ πλῆθος πολὺ ἐνδεέστερον τοῦ ἑαυτῶν καταφρονήσουσι, καὶ αὔριον ἐξΐασι πολὺ ἐρρωμενεστέrais ταῖς γνώμαις. νῦν δ', ἔφη, εἰδότες μὲν ὅτι πάρεσμεν, οὐχ ὀρώντες δὲ ἡμᾶς, εὖ τοῦτο ἐπίστω, οὐ καταφρονοῦσιν, ἀλλὰ φροντίζουσι τί ποτε τοῦτ' ἔστι, καὶ διαλεγόμενοι περὶ ἡμῶν ἐγῶδ' ὅτι οὐδὲν παύονται. ὅταν δ' ἐξΐωσι, τότε δεῖ αὐτοῖς ἅμα φανεροῦς τε ἡμᾶς γενέσθαι καὶ ἰέναι εὐθύς ὁμόσε, εἰληφότας αὐτοὺς ἔνθα πάλαι ἐβουλόμεθα. λέξαντος δ' οὕτω Κύρου συνέδοξε ταῦτα καὶ Κναξάρη καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις. καὶ τότε μὲν δειπνοποιησάμενοι καὶ φυλακὰς καταστησάμενοι καὶ πυρὰ πολλὰ πρὸ τῶν φυλακῶν καύσαντες ἐκοιμήθησαν. τῇ δ' ὑστεραίᾳ πρῶ Κῦρος μὲν ἐστεφανωμένος ἔθνε, παρήγγειλε δὲ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ὁμοτίμοις ἐστεφανωμένοις πρὸς τὰ ἱερὰ παρεῖναι. ἐπεὶ δὲ τέλος εἶχεν ἡ θυσία, συγκαλέσας αὐτοὺς ἔλεξεν· ἄνδρες, οἱ μὲν θεοί, ὥς οἳ τε μάντις φασὶ καὶ ἐμοὶ

θεάσονται οὐδὲν φοβούμενοι, εἰδότες ὅτι ἐν |safe, easy,  
 |steady, careful  
 τοῦ μηδὲν παθεῖν, |when, τε μηδὲν ποιήσαντες |be absent, go  
 |after |away, return  
 πάλιν |look down ἡμῶν τὸ πλῆθος πολὺ |inadequate  
 τοῦ ἐαυτῶν |scorn; think of , καὶ |tomor- |go forth; |λὺ  
 |row |is possible  
 |vigorous, powerful ταῖς |sign, mind, ἢν δ', ἔφη, εἰδότες μὲν  
 |will, decision  
 ὅτι πάρεσμεν, οὐχ ὀρώντες δὲ ἡμᾶς, εὖ τοῦτο ἐπίστω, οὐ  
 |scorn; think of , ἀλλὰ |consider, τί ποτε τοῦτ' ἔστι, καὶ  
 |ponder  
 |go through, debate, ἡμῶν ἐγῶ δ' ὅτι οὐδὲν παύονται. ὅταν  
 δ' ἐξίωσι, τότε δεῖ αὐτοῖς ἅμα |visible, ἡμᾶς γενέσθαι  
 |conspicuous  
 καὶ ἵεναι εὐθὺς |to the same spot ἵεναι αὐτοὺς ἔνθα πάλαι  
 ἐβουλόμεθα. λέξαντος δ' οὕτω Κύρου |seem good also . καὶ  
 Κυαζάρη καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις. καὶ τότε μὲν |make dinner  
 καὶ |guard, καταστησάμενοι καὶ |pyre πολλὰ πρὸ τῶν  
 |prison, φυλακῶν |watch ἐκοιμήθησαν. τῇ δ' |the next; later, ἡ  
 Κῦρος μὲν |crown |rush; |transmit; order, ἡμῶν  
 |sacri- |recommend, encourage  
 |fice  
 ἄλλοις |equally |crown πρὸς τὰ ἱερὰ παρῆναι.  
 |honored  
 ἐπεὶ δὲ τέλος εἶχεν ἡ θυσία, |call together αὐτοὺς ἔλεξεν·  
 ἄνδρες, οἱ μὲν θεοί, ὥς οἱ τε |seer φασὶ καὶ ἐμοὶ

they would watch us at their ease, conscious that they are safe from any danger, and when we retire without doing them any harm they will have another look at us and despise us because of our inferiority in numbers, and to-morrow they will come out much emboldened. At present," he added, "they know that we are here, but they have not seen us, and you may be sure they do not despise us; they are asking what all this means, and they never cease discussing the problem; of that I am convinced. They ought not to see us until they sally out, and in that moment we ought to come to grips with them, thankful to have caught them as we have so long desired."

So Cyrus spoke, and Cyaxares and the others were convinced, and waited. In the evening they took their meal, and posted their pickets and lit watch-fires in front of their outposts, and so turned to sleep. But early the next morning Cyrus put a garland on his head and went out to offer sacrifice, and sent word to all the Peers of Persia to join him, wearing garlands like himself. And when the rite was over, he called them together and said: "Gentlemen, the soothsayers tell us, and I agree, that the

*vocabulary***ἀγαπητός** beloved**αἰσχύνω** (ῶ) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar**ἀσκέω** work on**δείκνυμι** (ῶ) show, point out**δείξις** proof, display**ἔοικότως** like; fairly**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
~station**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near,  
direct, stop ~station**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism**θαυμαστός** wonderful; admirable**κατανοέω** notice, realize, learn**μελετάω** pursue, attend to, exercise**νίκη** (ι) victory ~Nike**ὁμοῖος** like ~homoerotic**παραινέω** recommend, exhort, warn**πεῖρα** an attempt**πείρω** pierce, run through ~pierce**ποῖος** what kind**συνδοκέω** seem good also**σωτηρία** saving, preservation**τοιόσδε** such**ὑπισχνέομαι** promise, agree to do  
~ischemia

συνδοκεί, μάχην τ' ἔσεσθαι προαγγέλλουσι καὶ νίκην  
 διδόασι καὶ σωτηρίαν ὑπισχνοῦνται ἐν τοῖς ἱεροῖς. ἐγὼ  
 δὲ ὑμῖν μὲν παραινῶν ποίους τινὰς χρή εἶναι ἐν τῷ τοιῷδε  
 κὰν αἰσχυνοίμην ἄν· οἶδα γὰρ ὑμᾶς ταῦτα ἐπισταμένους  
 καὶ μεμελετηκότας καὶ ἀσκούντας διὰ τέλους οἰάπερ ἐγώ,  
 ὥστε κὰν ἄλλους εἰκότως ἂν διδάσκοιτε. τάδε δὲ εἰ μὴ  
 τυγχάνετε κατανενοηκότες, ἀκούσατε· οὓς γὰρ νεωστὶ  
 συμμάχους τε ἔχομεν καὶ πειρώμεθα ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς ὁμοίους  
 ποιεῖν, τούτους δὲ ἡμᾶς δεῖ ὑπομμνήσκειν ἐφ' οἷς τε  
 ἐτρεφόμεθα ὑπὸ Κναζάρου, ἃ τε ἡσκούμεν, ἐφ' ἃ τε αὐτοὺς  
 παρακεκλήκαμεν, ὧν τε ἄσμενοι ἀνταγωνιστὰὶ ἔφασαν  
 ἡμῖν ἔσεσθαι. καὶ τοῦτο δ' αὐτοὺς ὑπομμνήσκετε ὅτι ἦδε ἡ  
 ἡμέρα δείξει ὧν ἕκαστός ἐστιν ἄξιος. ὧν γὰρ ἂν ὀψιμαθεῖς  
 ἄνθρωποι γένωνται, οὐδὲν θαυμαστὸν εἴ τινες αὐτῶν καὶ  
 τοῦ ὑπομμνήσκοντος δέοιντο, ἀλλ' ἀγαπητὸν εἰ καὶ ἐξ  
 ὑποβολῆς δύναιντο ἄνδρες ἀγαθοὶ εἶναι. καὶ ταῦτα μέντοι  
 πράττοντες ἅμα καὶ ὑμῶν αὐτῶν πείραν λήψεσθε. ὁ μὲν  
 γὰρ δυνάμενος ἐν τῷ τοιῷδε καὶ ἄλλους βελτίους



|seem good, also ἴσθι τὸ ἔσθαι προαγγέλλουσι καὶ |victory  
 διδόσιν καὶ |saving, |promise, agree ἐν τοῖς ἱεροῖς. ἐγὼ  
 |preservation  
 δὲ ὑμῖν μὲν |recommend, |what kind ὥς |must, |αι ἐν τῷ |such  
 |exhort, warn |should  
 κὰν |spoil, disgrace ἄν· οἶδα γὰρ ὑμᾶς ταῦτα ἐπισταμένους  
 καὶ |pursue, attend to, καὶ |work on διὰ |end οἰάπερ ἐγώ,  
 |exercise  
 ὥστε κὰν ἄλλους |like; ἂν |teach . τάδε δὲ εἰ μὴ  
 |fairly  
 τυγχάνετε |notice, realize,, ἀκούσατε· οὗς γὰρ |young; neuter:  
 |learn |recently  
 συμμάχους τε ἔχομεν καὶ πειρώμεθα ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς |like  
 ποιεῖν, τούτους δὲ ἡμᾶς δεῖ ὑπομνησκέειν ἐφ' οἷς τε  
 |nurture ὑπὸ Κναζάρου, ἃ τε |work on , ἐφ' ἃ τε αὐτοὺς  
 |summon, exhort,, ὧν τε |be pleased, enjoy, ὧνισται ἔφασαν  
 |(pass) repent  
 ἡμῖν ἔσθαι. καὶ τοῦτο δ' αὐτοὺς ὑπομνησκετε ὅτι ἦδε ἡ  
 ἡμέρα δείξει ὧν ἕκαστός ἐστιν |worthy ὧν γὰρ ἂν ὀψιμαθεῖς  
 ἄνθρωποι γένωνται, οὐδὲν |wonderful; εἴ τινες αὐτῶν καὶ  
 |admirable  
 τοῦ ὑπομνησκοντος δέοντο, ἀλλ' |beloved εἰ καὶ ἐξ  
 ὑποβολῆς δύναιντο ἄνδρες ἀγαθοὶ εἶναι. καὶ ταῦτα |however  
 πράττοντες ἅμα καὶ ὑμῶν αὐτῶν πεῖραν λήψεσθε. ὁ μὲν  
 γὰρ δυνάμενος ἐν τῷ |such καὶ ἄλλους βελτίους

gods announce by the signs in the victims that the battle is at hand, and they assure us of victory, they promise us salvation. I should be ashamed to admonish you at such a season, or tell you how to bear yourselves: I do not forget that we have all been brought up in the same school, you have learnt the same lessons as I, and practised them day by day, and you might well instruct others. But you may not have noticed one point, and for this I would ask a hearing. Our new comrades, the men we desire to make our peers—it may be well to remind them of the terms on which Cyaxares has kept us and of our daily discipline, the goal for which we asked their help, and the race in which they promised to be our friendly rivals. Remind them also that this day will test the worth of every man. With learners late in life, we cannot wonder if now and then a prompter should be needed: it is much to be thankful for if they show themselves good men and true with the help of a reminder. Moreover, while you help them you will be putting your own powers to the test. He who can give another strength at such a crisis may well have confidence in his own, whereas one who keeps his

*vocabulary*

**ἀρέσκω** please, satisfy; make amends  
**ἀριστάω** eat lunch ~aristocrat  
**ἔζομαι** act: set, seat; pass: sit down, sit up ~sit  
**ἐντέλλω** (mp) command  
**ἐντιμος** (ι) honored  
**ἐοικότως** like; fairly  
**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ῶ) display, exhibit  
**ἐπιλέγω** say re, say also; choose; (mid) think over  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand ~station  
**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near, direct, stop ~station  
**ἐφοράω** look upon ~panorama  
**ἡλικία** time of life, contemporaries  
**ἡμιτελής** half-finished ~hemisphere  
**θαρρέω** be of good heart  
**θαρσέω** be of good heart  
**κράτιστος** best

**κρείσσων** more powerful; better  
**ὅμοιος** like ~homoerotic  
**ὀμότιμος** (ι) equally honored  
**ὀπισθεν** behind, hereafter  
**οὐραγός** (ᾱ) leader of the rearguard  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**πλησιάζω** bring/be near; have sex  
**προσκαλέω** call on, summon  
**σπονδή** libation, treaty ~spontaneous  
**στέφανος** ring  
**στεφανόω** crown  
**σύνοιδα** know about someone; think proper  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military unit  
**τελέεις** unblemished (victim)  
**τοίνυν** well, then  
**τοιόσδε** such  
**ὕάγω** lead under the yoke, lead away from ~demagogue  
**φρόνιμος** sensible, prudent

ποιεῖν εἰκότως ἂν ἤδη καὶ ἑαυτῷ συνειδείῃ τελέως ἀγαθὸς  
 ἀνὴρ ὢν, ὁ δὲ τὴν τούτων ὑπόμνησιν αὐτὸς μόνος ἔχων  
 καὶ τοῦτ' ἀγαπῶν, εἰκότως ἂν ἡμιτελῇ αὐτὸν νομίζοι.  
 τούτου δ' ἔνεκα οὐκ ἐγώ, ἔφη, αὐτοῖς λέγω, ἀλλ' ὑμᾶς  
 κελεύω λέγειν, ἵνα καὶ ἀρέσκειν ὑμῖν πειρῶνται· ὑμεῖς  
 γὰρ καὶ πλησιάζετε αὐτοῖς ἕκαστος τῷ ἑαυτοῦ μέρει.  
 εὖ δ' ἐπίστασθε ὥς ἦν θαρροῦντας τούτοις ὑμᾶς αὐτοὺς  
 ἐπιδεικνύητε, καὶ τούτους καὶ ἄλλους πολλοὺς οὐ λόγῳ  
 ἀλλ' ἔργῳ θαρρεῖν διδάξετε. τέλος εἶπεν ἀπιόντας ἀριστᾶν  
 ἐστεφανωμένους καὶ σπονδὰς ποιησαμένους ἥκειν εἰς τὰς  
 τάξεις αὐτοῖς στεφάνοις. ἐπεὶ δ' ἀπῆλθον, αἰθῆς τοὺς  
 οὐραγοὺς προσεκάλεσε, καὶ τούτοις τοιάδε ἐνετέλλετο.

Ἄνδρες Πέρσαι, ὑμεῖς καὶ τῶν ὁμοτίμων γεγόνατε  
 καὶ ἐπιλεγμένοι ἐστέ, οἳ δοκεῖτε τὰ μὲν ἄλλα τοῖς  
 κρατίστοις ὅμοιοι εἶναι, τῇ δ' ἡλικία καὶ φρονιμώτεροι.  
 καὶ τοίνυν χώραν ἔχετε οὐδὲν ἡττον ἔντιμον τῶν  
 πρωτοστατῶν· ὑμεῖς γὰρ ὀπισθεν ὄντες τοὺς τ' ἀγαθοὺς  
 ἂν ἐφορῶντες καὶ ἐπικελεύοντες αὐτοῖς ἔτι κρείττους

ποιεῖν |like; |fairly ἂν ἤδη καὶ ἐαυτῷ |know |unblemished (victim)  
 |about  
 ἀνὴρ ὢν, ὁ δὲ τὴν τούτων ὑπόμνησιν αὐτὸς μόνος ἔχων  
 |someone; |think  
 καὶ τοῦτ' ἀγαπῶν, |like; ἂν |half-finished |ὅτ' |consider. customary;  
 |fairly |believe  
 τούτου δ' ἕνεκα οὐκ ἐγώ, ἔφη, αὐτοῖς λέγω, ἀλλ' ὑμᾶς  
 κελεύω λέγειν, ἵνα καὶ |please, |satisfy; |try, test ὑμεῖς  
 |make amends  
 γὰρ καὶ |bring/be near; |ὑποῖς ἕκαστος τῷ ἐαυτοῦ μέρει.  
 |have sex  
 εἰ δ' ἐπίστασθε ὥς ἦν θαρροῦντας τούτοις ὑμᾶς αὐτοὺς  
 |display, exhibit, καὶ τούτους καὶ ἄλλους πολλοὺς οὐ λόγῳ  
 ἀλλ' ἔργῳ θαρρεῖν διδάξετε. |end εἶπεν |be absent, |eat lunch  
 |go away,  
 |crown καὶ |libation, |ποιησαμένους ἦκειν εἰς τὰς  
 |treaty  
 τάξεις αὐτοῖς |ring . ἐπεὶ δ' ἀπηλθον, |back, again,  
 |moreover  
 |leader |call on, summon αἱ τούτοις |such ἐνετέλλετο.  
 |of the  
 |rearguard  
 Ἄνδρες Πέρσαι, ὑμεῖς καὶ τῶν |equally γεγόνατε  
 |honored  
 καὶ |say, |choose, ἐστέ, οἳ δοκεῖτε τὰ μὲν ἄλλα τοῖς  
 |think over  
 |best |like εἶναι, τῇ δ' |time of life, |sensible,  
 |contempo- |prudent  
 καὶ |well, then, ὥραν ἔχετε οὐδεὶς ἦττον |honored τῶν  
 πρωτοστατῶν· ὑμεῖς γὰρ |behind, ὄντες τοὺς τ' ἀγαθοὺς  
 |hereafter  
 ἂν |look upon καὶ ἐπικελεύοντες αὐτοῖς ἔτι κρείττους

ideal to himself and is content with that, ought to remember that he is only half a man. There is another reason," he added, "why I do not speak to them myself, but ask you to do so. I want them to try to please you: you are nearer to them than I, each of you to the men of his own division: and be well assured that if you show yourselves stout-hearted you will be teaching them courage, and others too, by deeds as well as words."

With that Cyrus dismissed them, and bade them break their fast and make libation, and then take their places in the ranks, still wearing their garlands on their heads. As they went away he summoned the leaders of the rearguard and gave them his instructions:

"Men of Persia, you have been made Peers and chosen for special duties, because we think you equal to the best in other matters, and wiser than most in virtue of your age. The post that you hold is every whit as honourable as theirs who form the front: from your position in the rear you can single out the gallant fighters, and your praise will make them outdo themselves in valour, while

*vocabulary*

**ἀνακαλέω** call, summon, recall  
**ἀριστάω** eat lunch ~aristocrat  
**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot  
**βάρος** -ους (n, 3) weight, burden  
**εἴπερ** if indeed  
**ἐμπροσθεν** before (time, space)  
**ἐξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion  
**ἐπιτρέπω** entrust, decide, allow  
 ~trophy  
**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of  
**ἐρρωμένος** vigorous, powerful  
**ἡλικία** time of life, contemporaries  
**ἡσάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat  
**θρασύς** brave, strong  
**μαλακίζομαι** weaken, feminize

**παρακελεύομαι** recommend, encourage  
**παρατάσσω** place beside  
**παρεγγυάω** entrust; pass an order  
**παρελαύνω** pass, outstrip ~elastic  
**στεφανώ** crown  
**στολή** equipment  
**συμφέρω** bring together; be expedient; agree; (mp) happen ~bear  
**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military unit  
**τοιόσδε** such  
**ὕμέτερος** (ὑ) yours  
**ὕπακούω** listen, reply ~acoustic  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**ψυχός** -εος (n, 3) coolness  
 ~psychology

ποιοῖτε, καὶ εἴ τις μαλακίζοιτο, καὶ τοῦτον ὀρώντες οὐκ  
 ἂν ἐπιτρέποιτε αὐτῷ. συμφέρει δ' ὑμῖν, εἴπερ τῷ καὶ  
 ἄλλῳ, τὸ νικᾶν καὶ διὰ τὴν ἡλικίαν καὶ διὰ τὸ βάρος τῆς  
 στολῆς. ἦν δ' ἄρα ὑμᾶς καὶ οἱ ἔμπροσθεν ἀνακαλοῦντες  
 ἔπεσθαι παρεγγνώσιν, ὑπακούετε αὐτοῖς, καὶ ὅπως μηδ' ἐν  
 τούτῳ αὐτῶν ἡττηθήσεσθε, ἀντιπαρακελευόμενοι αὐτοῖς  
 θάττον ἡγείσθαι ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους. καὶ ἀπιόντες,  
 ἔφη, ἀριστήσαντες καὶ ὑμεῖς ἦκετε σὺν τοῖς ἄλλοις  
 ἐστεφανωμένοι ἐς τὰς τάξεις. οἱ μὲν δὴ ἀμφὶ Κῦρον ἐν  
 τούτοις ἦσαν· οἱ δὲ Ἀσσύριοι καὶ δὴ ἡρισθηκότες ἐξῆλθόν  
 τε θρασέως καὶ παρετάττοντο ἐρρωμένως. παρέταττε δὲ  
 αὐτοὺς αὐτὸς ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐφ' ἄρματος παρελαύνων καὶ  
 τοιάδε παρεκελεύετο.

Ἄνδρες Ἀσσύριοι, νῦν δεῖ ἄνδρας ἀγαθοὺς εἶναι· νῦν γὰρ  
 ὑπὲρ ψυχῶν τῶν ὑμετέρων ἀγῶν καὶ ὑπὲρ γῆς ἐν ᾗ ἔφυτε  
 καὶ περὶ οἴκων ἐν οἷς ἐτράφητε, καὶ ὑπὲρ γυναικῶν τε καὶ  
 τέκνων καὶ περὶ πάντων ὧν πέπασθε ἀγαθῶν. νικήσαντες  
 μὲν γὰρ ἀπάντων τούτων ὑμεῖς



ποιοῖτε, καὶ εἴ τις |weaken, , καὶ τοῦτον ὀρώντες οὐκ  
|feminize

ἂν |entrust, de- αὐτῷ. |bring together; be ex-|if indeed, καὶ  
|cide, allow |pedient; agree; (mp)

ἄλλῳ, τὸ νικᾶν καὶ διὰ τὴν |happen |time of life, cōtempo-|weight, τῆς  
|raries |burden

|equipment ἢ δ' ἄρα ὑμᾶς καὶ οἱ |before (time|call, summon,  
|space) |recall

ἔπεσθαι |entrust; pass an|listen, reply αὐτοῖς, καὶ ὅπως |and not; not even  
|order

τούτῳ αὐτῶν |(pass) be weaker, be over- ἀκελευόμενοι αὐτοῖς  
|come; (active) defeat

θᾶττον ἡγεῖσθαι ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους. καὶ |be absent, go  
|away, return

ἔφη, |eat lunch καὶ ὑμεῖς |be present, τοῖς ἄλλοις  
|have arrived

|crown ἐς τὰς τάξεις. οἱ μὲν δὴ ἀμφὶ Κῦρον ἐν

τούτοις ἦσαν· οἱ δὲ Ἀσσύριοι καὶ δὴ |eat lunch |go forth;  
|is possible

τε |brave, καὶ |place beside |vigorous, . |place beside δὲ  
|strong |powerful

αὐτοὺς αὐτὸς ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐφ' |chariot |pass, outstrip καὶ

|such παρεκελεύετο.

Ἄνδρες Ἀσσύριοι, νῦν δεῖ ἄνδρας ἀγαθοὺς εἶναι· νῦν γὰρ

ὑπὲρ ψυχῶν τῶν |yours ἄγων καὶ ὑπὲρ γῆς ἐν ᾗ |produce,  
|beget; clasp

καὶ περὶ οἴκων ἐν οἷς |nurture , καὶ ὑπὲρ γυναικῶν τε καὶ

|child καὶ περὶ πάντων ὧν πέπασθε ἀγαθῶν. νικήσαντες

μὲν γὰρ ἀπάντων τούτων ὑμεῖς

if any man should be tempted to give way, your eyes will be upon him and you will not suffer it. Victory will mean even more to you than to the others, because of your age and the weight of your equipment. If the men in front call on you to follow, answer readily, and let them see that you can hold your own with them, shout back to them, and bid them lead on quicker still. And now," said he, "go back and take your breakfast, and then join your ranks with the rest, wearing your garlands on your heads."

Thus Cyrus and his men made their preparations, and meanwhile the Assyrians on their side took their breakfast, and then sallied forth boldly and drew up in gallant order. It was the king himself who marshalled them, driving past in his chariot and encouraging his troops.

"Men of Assyria," he said, "to-day you must show your valour. To-day you fight for your lives and your land, the land where you were born and the homes where you were bred, and for your wives and your children, and all the blessings that are yours. If you win, you will possess them all in safety as

*vocabulary***ἀναμένω** wait for ~remain**ἀποβάλλω** throw away, lose**ἄτε** as if; since**ἄω** aor: to sate ~sate**ἕζομαι** act: set, seat; pass: sit down, sit up ~sit**ἐννυμι** (ῶ) clothe in (+2 acc) ~vest**ἐπιθυμέω** (ῶ) wish, covet**ἐπιχειρέω** do, try, attack ~chiral**ἔρυμα** -τος (n, 3) protection ~serve**ἔσθω** eat ~eat**ἐσσόομαι** (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat**εὐπέτης** flying well**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism**ἡσάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat**ἡττάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat**ἡώς ἡῶθι** (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene**ἵσκω** imitate, liken to, guess ~victor**νίκη** (ι) victory ~Nike**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)**προσίημι** be allowed near**προσλαμβάνω** add, borrow, take hold, help**προστίθηναι** add; impose; (mp) agree; side with ~thesis**τυφλός** blind

ὥσπερ πρόσθεν κύριοι ἔσεσθε· εἰ δ' ἡττηθήσεσθε, εὖ ἴστε ὅτι παραδώσετε ταῦτα πάντα τοῖς πολεμίοις. ἅτε οὖν νίκης ἐρῶντες μένοντες μάχεσθε. μῶρον γὰρ τὸ κρατεῖν βουλομένους τὰ τυφλὰ τοῦ σώματος καὶ ἄοπλα καὶ ἄχειρα ταῦτα ἐναντία τάττειν τοῖς πολεμίοις φεύγοντας· μῶρος δὲ καὶ εἴ τις ζῆν βουλόμενος φεύγειν ἐπιχειροίη, εἰδὼς ὅτι οἱ μὲν νικῶντες σώζονται, οἱ δὲ φεύγοντες ἀποθνήσκουσι μᾶλλον τῶν μενόντων· μῶρος δὲ καὶ εἴ τις χρημάτων ἐπιθυμῶν ἦτταν προσίεται. τίς γὰρ οὐκ οἶδεν ὅτι οἱ μὲν νικῶντες τά τε ἑαυτῶν σώζουσι καὶ τὰ τῶν ἡττωμένων προσλαμβάνουσιν, οἱ δὲ ἡττώμενοι ἅμα ἑαυτούς τε καὶ τὰ ἑαυτῶν πάντα ἀποβάλλουσιν; ὁ μὲν δὴ Ἀσσύριος ἐν τούτοις ἦν.

Ὁ Δὲ Κναζάρης πέμπων πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἤδη καιρὸς εἴη ἄγειν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους· εἰ γὰρ νῦν, ἔφη, ἔτι ὀλίγοι εἰσὶν οἱ ἔξω τοῦ ἐρύματος, ἐν ᾧ ἂν προσίωμεν πολλοὶ ἔσσονται· μὴ οὖν ἀναμείνωμεν ἕως ἂν πλείους ἡμῶν γένωνται. ἀλλ' ἴωμεν ἕως ἔτι οἰόμεθα εὐπετῶς ἂν αὐτῶν

ὥσπερ πρόσθεν κύριοι ἔσεσθε· εἰ δ' <sup>|(pass) be weaker, be overcome; (ac-  
|tive) defeat</sup>

ὅτι |hand over ταῦτα πάντα τοῖς πολεμίοις. ἅτε οὖν

|victory ῥῶντες μένοντες μάχεσθε. μῶρον γὰρ τὸ |rule

βουλομένους τὰ |blind τοῦ |body, και ἄσπλα και ἄχειρα

ταῦτα |opposite |arrange τοῖς πολεμίοις φεύγοντας· μῶρος  
|thing

δὲ και εἴ τις ζῆν βουλόμενος φεύγειν |do, try, attack ὥδως ὅτι

οἱ μὲν |win, defeat ἰφίζονται, οἱ δὲ φεύγοντες ἀποθνήσκουσι

μᾶλλον τῶν μενόντων· μῶρος δὲ και εἴ τις |possession,  
|money, busi-

|wish, covet ἦτταν |be allowed near· γὰρ οὐκ οἶδεν ὅτι οἱ μὲν  
|ness

|win, defeat ἅ τε ἑαυτῶν σώζουσιν και τὰ τῶν ἡττωμένων

|add, borrow, take, οἱ δὲ ἡττώμενοι ἅμα ἑαυτοὺς τε και  
|hold, help

τὰ ἑαυτῶν πάντα |throw away, lose, ὁ μὲν δὲ Ἀσσύριος ἐν

τούτοις ἦν.

Ὁ δὲ Κυαζάρης πέμπων πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἦδη

καιρὸς εἶναι ἄγειν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους· εἰ γὰρ νῦν, ἔφη,

ἔτι ὀλίγοι εἰσὶν οἱ ἔξω τοῦ |protection, ἐν ᾧ ἂν |be allowed near

πολλοὶ ἔσονται· μὴ οὖν |wait for ἕως ἂν πλείους ἡμῶν

γένωνται. ἀλλ' |imitate, liken τι οἰόμεθα |flying well ἐν αὐτῶν  
|to, guess

before, but if you lose, you must surrender them into the hands of your enemies. Abide, therefore, and do battle as though you were enamoured of victory. It would be folly for her lovers to turn their backs to the foe, sightless, handless, helpless, and a fool is he who flies because he longs to live, for he must know that safety comes to those who conquer, but death to those who flee; and fools are they whose hearts are set on riches, but whose spirits are ready to admit defeat. It is the victor who preserves his own possessions and wins the property of those whom he overcomes: the conquered lose themselves and all they call their own."

Thus spoke the king of Assyria.

But meanwhile Cyaxares sent to Cyrus saying that the moment for attack had come. "Although," he added, "there are as yet but few of them outside the trenches, by the time we have advanced there will be quite enough. Let us not wait until they outnumber us, but charge at once while we are satisfied we can master

*vocabulary*

**ἀμείνων** comparative of ἀγαθός, noble  
**αὐτόμολος** deserting, defecting  
**ἕζομαι** act: set, seat; pass: sit down, sit  
 up ~sit  
**εἰκός** likely  
**ἔξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion  
**ἐπιχειρέω** do, try, attack ~chiral  
**ἑρωτάω** ask about something  
**ἥμισυς** half ~hemisphere  
**ἡσάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be  
 overcome; (active) defeat  
**ἡώς ἡῶθι** (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene  
**ἰσχυρός** (ῶ) strong, forceful, violent  
**λυπέω** (ῶ) annoy, distress

**οἶχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone  
**ὀμότιμος** (ῖ) equally honored  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
**ὀπόσος** as many as, how many, how  
 great  
**παρακελεύομαι** recommend,  
 encourage  
**παρατάσσω** place beside  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
**συγκαλέω** call together ~gallo  
**ταμιεύω** manage, dispense, husband

κρατήσαι. ὁ δ' αὖ Κῦρος ἀπεκρίνατο· ὦ Κναζάρη, εἰ μὴ ὑπὲρ ἡμῶν αὐτῶν ἔσονται οἱ ἡττηθέντες, εἶ ἴσθι ὅτι ἡμᾶς μὲν ἐροῦσι φοβουμένους τὸ πλῆθος τοῖς ὀλίγοις ἐπιχειρήσαι, αὐτοὶ δὲ οὐ νομιοῦσιν ἡττηθῆσαι, ἀλλ' ἄλλης σοι μάχης δεήσει, ἐν ᾗ ἄμεινον ἂν ἴσως βουλευσάιντο ἢ νῦν βεβούλευνται, παραδόντες ἑαυτοὺς ἡμῖν ταμιεύεσθαι ὥσθ' ὅπόσοις ἂν βουλώμεθα αὐτῶν μάχεσθαι. οἱ μὲν δὴ ἄγγελοι ταῦτ' ἀκούσαντες ὥχοντο.

Ἐν τούτῳ δὲ ἦκε Χρυσάντας ὁ Πέρσης καὶ ἄλλοι τινὲς τῶν ὁμοτίμων αὐτομόλους ἄγοντες. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ὥσπερ εἰκὸς ἡρώτα τοὺς αὐτομόλους τὰ ἐκ τῶν πολεμίων. οἱ δ' ἔλεγον ὅτι ἐξίοιεν τε ἤδη σὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις καὶ παρατάττοι αὐτοὺς αὐτὸς ὁ βασιλεὺς ἔξω ὧν καὶ παρακελεύοιτο μὲν δὴ τοῖς αἰεὶ ἔξω οὔσι πολλὰ τε καὶ ἰσχυρά, ὡς ἔφασαν λέγειν τοὺς ἀκούοντας. ἔνθα δὴ ὁ Χρυσάντας εἶπε· Τί δ', ἔφη, ὦ Κῦρε, εἰ καὶ σὺ συγκαλέσας ἕως ἔτι ἔξεστι παρακελεύσαιο, εἰ ἄρα τι καὶ σὺ ἀμείνους ποιήσῃς τοὺς στρατιώτας; καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν· ὦ Χρυσάντα, μηδὲν σε λυπούντων αἰ τοῦ Ἀσσυρίου





them easily.”

But Cyrus answered him, “Unless those we conquer are more than half their number, they are sure to say that we attacked when they were few, because we were afraid of their full force, and in their hearts they will not feel that they are beaten; and we shall have to fight another battle, when perhaps they will make a better plan than they have made to-day, delivering themselves into our hands one by one, to fight with as we choose.”

So the messengers took back his reply, but meanwhile Chrysantas and certain other Peers came to Cyrus bringing Assyrian deserters with them, and Cyrus, as a general would, questioned the fugitives about the enemy’s doings, and they told him that the Assyrians were marching out in force and that the king himself had crossed the trenches and was marshalling his troops, addressing them in stirring words, as all the listeners said. Then Chrysantas turned to Cyrus:

”What if you also were to summon our men, while there is yet time, and inspire them with your words?”

But Cyrus answered:

”Do not be disturbed by the thought of

*vocabulary***αἰδώς** awe, shame, respect; genitals**αἰρετός** takeable, desirable ~heresy**αἰσχρός** shameful**ἀκοντιστής** -οῦ (m, 1) spearman

~acute

**ἀμείνων** comparative of ἀγαθός, noble**ἄρα** interrogative pcl**ἄρή** bane, harm; prayer**ἄρην** ἄρνός (m, 3) lamb, sheep; wool**ἄρης** war, warlike spirit**ἀρκέω** satisfy; ward off, defend; suffice**ἀσκέω** work on**αὐθήμερος** on the same day**βέβαιος** steadfast; sure**βίος** life ~biology**διάνοια** a thought; intelligence**ἐγγράφω** engrave, enroll**ἔμμονος** lasting, steadfast**ἐμπίπλημι** fill ~plethora**ἐμπροσθεν** before (time, space)**ἐντιμος** (i) honored**ἔπαινος** (noun) praise**κωλύω** (ō) hinder, prevent**μελετάω** pursue, attend to, exercise**παραίνεσις** -εως (f) speech; advice**παρακχεύομαι** recommend, encourage**παρακέλευσις** -εως (f) cheering on**πονέω** work; be busy ~osteopenia**πόνος** toil, suffering ~osteopenia**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)**προστίθημι** add; impose; (mp) agree; side with ~thesis**προτρέπω** prompt, urge, compel; (mp) go, flee to ~trophy**ταπεινός** low**τοξότης** -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic**ὕποδύομαι** (mp) get under; play a character

παρακελεύσεις· οὐδεμία γάρ ἐστιν οὕτω καλὴ παραίνεσις  
 ἥτις τοὺς μὴ ὄντας ἀγαθοὺς αὐθήμερον ἀκούσαντας  
 ἀγαθοὺς ποιήσει· οὐκ ἂν οὖν τοξότας γε, εἰ μὴ ἔμπροσθεν  
 τοῦτο μεμελετηκότες εἶεν, οὐδὲ μὴν ἀκοντιστάς, οὐδὲ μὴν  
 ἱππέας, ἀλλ' οὐδὲ μὴν τά γε σώματα ἱκανοὺς πονεῖν,  
 ἣν μὴ πρόσθεν ἡσκηκότες ᾧσι. καὶ ὁ Χρυσάντας εἶπεν·  
 Ἄλλ' ἀρκεῖ τοι, ᾧ Κῦρε, ἣν τὰς ψυχὰς αὐτῶν ἀμείνονας  
 παρακελευσάμενος ποιήσης. Ἡ καὶ δύναιτ' ἂν, ἔφη ὁ  
 Κῦρος, εἰς λόγος ῥηθεὶς αὐθήμερον αἰδοῦς μὲν ἐμπλήσαι  
 τὰς ψυχὰς τῶν ἀκούοντων, ἢ ἀπὸ τῶν αἰσchrῶν κωλύσαι,  
 προτρέψαι δὲ ὡς χρὴ ἐπαίνου μὲν ἔνεκα πάντα μὲν  
 πόνον, πάντα δὲ κίνδυνον ὑποδύεσθαι, λαβεῖν δ' ἐν ταῖς  
 γνώμαις βεβαίως τοῦτο ὡς αἰρετώτερόν ἐστι μαχομένους  
 ἀποθνήσκειν μᾶλλον ἢ φεύγοντας σώζεσθαι; ἄρ' οὐκ, ἔφη,  
 εἰ μέλλουσι τοιαῦται διάνοιαι ἐγγραφήσεσθαι ἀνθρώποις  
 καὶ ἔμμονοι ἔσεσθαι, πρῶτον μὲν νόμους ὑπάρξαι δεῖ  
 τοιούτους δι' ὧν τοῖς μὲν ἀγαθοῖς ἔντιμος καὶ ἐλευθέριος  
 ὁ βίος παρασκευασθήσεται, τοῖς δὲ κακοῖς ταπεινός

|cheering on οὐδεμία γάρ ἐστιν οὕτω καλὴ |speech;  
 |advice  
 ἥτις τοὺς μὴ ὄντας ἀγαθοὺς αὐθημερὸν ἀκούσαντας  
 ἀγαθοὺς ποιήσει· οὐκ ἂν οὖν |archer γε, εἰ μὴ ἔμπροσθεν  
 τοῦτο |pursue, attend to, εἶεν, οὐδὲ μὴν |spearman , οὐδὲ μὴν  
 |exercise  
 |rider , ἀλλ' οὐδὲ μὴν τά γε σώματα ἱκανοὺς |work  
 ἦν μὴ πρόσθεν |work on ὦσι. καὶ ὁ Χρυσάντας εἶπεν·  
 Ἄλλ' |satisfy; ward off, ὕρε, ἦν τὰς ψυχὰς αὐτῶν |better  
 |defend; suffice  
 |recommend, ποιήσης. Ἡ καὶ δύναιτ' ἄν, ἔφη ὁ  
 |encourage  
 Κῦρος, εἰς λόγος ῥηθεὶς αὐθημερὸν |awe, shame, fill  
 |respect; geni-  
 τὰς ψυχὰς τῶν ἀκουόντων, ἣ ἀπὸ τῶν |shameful |hinder,  
 |prevent  
 |prompt, urge, ὁμπελ; (mp) (noun) praise. ἔνεκα πάντα μὲν  
 |go, flee to  
 |toil, suffering α δὲ |danger |(mp) get under; |βεῖν δ' ἐν ταῖς  
 |play a character  
 |sign, |steadfast; sure ο ὥς |takeable, ἐστι μαχομένους  
 |mind, will, |desirable  
 |decision  
 ἀποσησκὲν μᾶλλον ἢ φεύγοντας σώζεσθαι; ἄρ' οὐκ, ἔφη,  
 εἰ μέλλουσι τοιαῦται |a thought; engrave, enroll ἀνθρώποις  
 |intelli-  
 καὶ |lasting, ἔσεσθαι, |prῶτον μὲν νόμους ὑπάρξει δεῖ  
 |steadfast  
 τοιούτους δι' ὧν τοῖς μὲν ἀγαθοῖς |honored καὶ ἐλευθέρους  
 ὁ |life |prepare, render , τοῖς δὲ κακοῖς |low

the Assyrian's exhortations; there are no words so fine that they can turn cowards into brave men on the day of hearing, nor make good archers out of bad, nor doughty spearmen, nor skilful riders, no, nor even teach men to use their arms and legs if they have not learnt before."

"But," replied Chrysantas, "could you not make the brave men braver still, and the good better?"

"What!" cried Cyrus, "can one solitary speech fill the hearer's soul on the selfsame day with honour and uprightness, guard him from all that is base, spur him to undergo, as he ought, for the sake of glory every toil and every danger, implant in him the faith that it is better to die sword in hand than to escape by flight? If such thoughts are ever to be engraved in the hearts of men and there abide, we must begin with the laws, and frame them so that the righteous can count on a life of honour and liberty, while the bad have to face humiliation, suffering, and pain, and

*vocabulary*

ἀέθλιος prize ~athlete  
 ἄθλιος wretched ~athlete  
 ἀλγεινός painful  
 ἀπαιδευτος uneducated, loutish  
 ~pediatrician  
 ἀρετή goodness, excellence  
 ἀσκέω work on  
 δείκνυμι (ὄ) show, point out  
 διατίθημι arrange; set out goods for  
 sale ~thesis  
 διδάσκαλος teacher  
 δράω do, accomplish  
 δυσκλεής infamous ~Euclid  
 ἐγγίγνομαι live in ~genus  
 ἐθίζω accustom  
 ἔμμονος lasting, steadfast  
 ἐξίστημι displace, transform; (+gen)  
 give up ~station

ἐπιλανθάνω mp: forget ~Lethe  
 εὐδαίμων blessed with a good genius  
 εὐκλεής honored ~Euclid  
 κρείσσων more powerful; better  
 μάθημα -τος (n, 3) lesson, knowledge  
 ὄπλον tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
 ὀρθός upright, straight; correct, just  
 ~orthogonal  
 ὀρθόω stand up  
 παλαιός old ~paleo  
 παντάπασιν altogether; yes, certainly  
 παράδειγμα -τος (n, 3) model,  
 precedent  
 παραχρῆμα on the spot  
 πολεμικός warlike, hostile ~polemic  
 ὑποβάλλω put under, interrupt  
 ~ballistic

τε καὶ ἀλγεινὸς καὶ ἀβίωτος ὁ αἰὼν ἐπανακείσεται;  
 ἔπειτα διδασκάλους οἶμαι δεῖ καὶ ἄρχοντας ἐπὶ τούτοις  
 γενέσθαι οἳ τινες δείξουσίν τε ὀρθῶς καὶ διδάξουσι καὶ  
 ἐθιοῦσι ταῦτα δρᾶν, ἔστ' ἂν ἐγγένηται αὐτοῖς τοὺς μὲν  
 ἀγαθοὺς καὶ εὐκλεεῖς εὐδαιμονεστάτους τῷ ὄντι νομίζειν,  
 τοὺς δὲ κακοὺς καὶ δυσκλεεῖς ἀθλιωτάτους ἀπάντων  
 ἡγεῖσθαι. οὕτω γὰρ δεῖ διατεθῆναι τοὺς μέλλοντας  
 τοῦ ἀπὸ τῶν πολεμίων φόβου τὴν μάθησιν κρείττονα  
 παρέξεσθαι. εἰ δέ τοι ἰόντων εἰς μάχην σὺν ὅπλοις, ἐν  
 ᾧ πολλοὶ καὶ τῶν παλαιῶν μαθημάτων ἐξίστανται, ἐν  
 τούτῳ δυνήσεται τις ἀπορραψωδῆσας παραχρῆμα ἄνδρας  
 πολεμικοὺς ποιῆσαι, πάντων ἂν ῥᾶστον εἶη καὶ μαθεῖν  
 καὶ διδάξαι τὴν μεγίστην τῶν ἐν ἀνθρώποις ἀρετὴν. ἐπεὶ  
 ἔγωγ', ἔφη, οὐδ' ἂν τούτοις ἐπίστευον ἐμμόνοις ἔσεσθαι  
 οὓς νῦν ἔχοντες παρ' ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς ἡσκοῦμεν, εἰ μὴ καὶ ὑμᾶς  
 ἑώρων παρόντας, οἳ καὶ παράδειγμα αὐτοῖς ἔσεσθε οἷους  
 χρὴ εἶναι καὶ ὑποβαλεῖν δυνήσεσθε, ἣν τι ἐπιλανθάνωνται.  
 τοὺς δ' ἀπαιδεύτους παντάπασιν ἀρετῆς θαυμάζοιμι ἄν,



τε καὶ |painful καὶ ἀβίωτος ὁ |life force ἀνακείσεται;  
 ἔπειτα |teacher οἶμαι δεῖ καὶ ἄρχοντας ἐπὶ τούτοις  
 γενέσθαι οἳ τινες |show τε ὁρθῶς καὶ διδάξουσι καὶ  
 |accustom αὐτὰ |do, accomplish |live in αὐτοῖς τοὺς μὲν  
 ἀγαθοὺς καὶ |honored |blessed with a good τῷ ὄντι νομίζειν,  
 |genius  
 τοὺς δὲ κακοὺς καὶ |infamous ἀθλιωτάτους ἀπάντων  
 ἡγεῖσθαι. οὕτω γὰρ δεῖ |arrange; set out ὑς μέλλοντας  
 |goods for sale  
 τοῦ ἀπὸ τῶν πολεμίων |fear τὴν μάθησιν κρείττονα  
 |furnish εἰ δέ τοι ἰόντων εἰς μάχην σὺν |tool , ἐν  
 ᾧ πολλοὶ καὶ τῶν παλαιῶν |lesson, |displace, transform; (+gen)  
 |knowledge |give up  
 τούτῳ δυνήσεται τις ἀπορραψωδῆσας |on the spot ἄνδρας  
 |warlike, ποιῆσαι, πάντων ἂν |easy εἷη καὶ |learn  
 |hostile  
 καὶ διδάξαι τὴν μεγίστην τῶν ἐν ἀνθρώποις |excellence ὑπὲρ  
 ἑγῶγ', ἔφη, οὐδ' ἂν τούτοις ἐπίστευον |lasting, ἔσεσθαι  
 |steadfast  
 οὓς νῦν ἔχοντες παρ' ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς |work on , εἰ μὴ καὶ ὑμᾶς  
 ἐώρων παρόντας, οἳ καὶ |model, αὐτοῖς ἔσεσθε οἷους  
 |precedent  
 |must, ... αὶ καὶ |put under, interrupt ... θε, ἣν τι ἐπιλανθάνωνται.  
 |should  
 τοὺς δ' |uneducated, |altogether; yes, |excel- |marvel ἄν,  
 |loutish |certainly |lence

a life that is no life at all. And then we ought to have tutors and governors to instruct and teach and train our citizens until the belief is engendered in their souls that the righteous and the honourable are the happiest of all men born, and the bad and the infamous the most miserable. This is what our men must feel if they are to show that their schooling can triumph over their terror of the foe. Surely, if in the moment of onset, amid the clash of arms, at a time when lessons long learnt seem suddenly wiped away, it were possible for any speaker, by stringing a few fine sentiments together, to manufacture warriors out of hand, why, it would be the easiest thing in all the world to teach men the highest virtue man can know. For my own part," he added, "I would not trust our new comrades yonder, whom we have trained ourselves, to stand firm this day unless they saw you at their side, to be examples unto them and to remind them if they forget. As for men who are utterly undisciplined, I should be astonished if any

*vocabulary***ἀγγέλλω** carry a message, announce

~angel

**ᾄδω** sing**ἀείδω** sing**ἀνδραγαθία** bravery**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise

~angel

**ἀπαιίδευτος** uneducated, loutish

~pediatrician

**ᾠσμα** -τος (n, 3) ode, hymn**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful**διαλέγω** go through, debate ~legion**διατρίβω** (ι) wear down, delay

~tribology

**ἐξάγω** lead out ~demagogue**ἐξαμαρτάνω** miss; err, do wrong**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand

~station

**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of**ἐρρωμένος** vigorous, powerful**εὐτακτος** orderly, disciplined**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near, direct, stop ~station**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism**μελετάω** pursue, attend to, exercise**μουσική** art, music**ὁμόσε** to the same spot ~homoerotic**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless**οὐπω** no longer**προσεύχομαι** pray, vow**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military unit**τοξότης** -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic**φρόνιμος** sensible, prudent**ὠφελέω** help, be useful

ἔφη, ὦ Χρυσάντα, εἴ τι πλεόν ἂν ὠφελήσκει λόγος καλῶς ῥηθεὶς εἰς ἀνδραγαθίαν ἢ τοὺς ἀπαιδευτοὺς μουσικῆς ᾄσμα καλῶς ἀσθὲν εἰς μουσικήν.

Οἱ μὲν ταῦτα διελέγοντο. ὁ δὲ Κναζάρης πάλιν πέμπων ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἐξαμαρτάνοι διατρίβων καὶ οὐκ ἄγων ὡς τάχιστα ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ἀπεκρίνατο δὴ τότε τοῖς ἀγγέλοις· ἀλλ' εὖ μὲν ἴστω, ἔφη, ὅτι οὐπω εἰσὶν ἔξω ὅσους δεῖ· καὶ ταῦτα ἀπαγγέλλετε αὐτῷ ἐν ἅπασιν· ὅμως δέ, ἐπεὶ ἐκείνῳ δοκεῖ, ἄξω ἡδῆ. ταῦτ' εἰπὼν καὶ προσευξάμενος τοῖς θεοῖς ἐξῆγε τὸ στράτευμα. ὡς δ' ἤρξατο ἄγειν, ἡδῆ θάπτον ἡγείτο, οἱ δ' εἶποντο εὐτάκτως μὲν διὰ τὸ ἐπίστασθαί τε καὶ μεμελετηκέναι ἐν τάξει πορεύεσθαι, ἐρρωμένως δὲ διὰ τὸ φιλονίκως ἔχειν πρὸς ἀλλήλους καὶ διὰ τὸ τὰ σώματα ἐκπεπονῆσθαι καὶ διὰ τὸ πάντας ἄρχοντας τοὺς πρωτοστάτας εἶναι, ἡδέως δὲ διὰ τὸ φρονίμως ἔχειν· ἠπίσταντο γὰρ καὶ ἐκ πολλοῦ οὕτως ἐμεμαθήκεσαν ἀσφαλέστατον εἶναι καὶ ῥᾶστον τὸ ὁμόσε ἰέναι τοῖς πολεμίοις, ἄλλως τε καὶ τοξόταις καὶ

ἔφη, ὦ Χρυσάντα, εἴ τι πλέον ἂν |help, be useful ἵγος καλῶς

ῥηθείς εἰς |bravery ἥ τοὺς |uneducated, |art, music |ode, hymn  
|loutish

καλῶς ἀσθὲν εἰς |art, music .

Οἱ μὲν ταῦτα |go through, debate Ἐκταξάρης πάλιν πέμπων

ἔλεγεν ὅτι |miss; err, do|wear down, delay οὐκ ἄγων ὥς  
|wrong

τάχιστα ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος |to separate; reject; (mp) an-  
|swer, defend oneself

τότε τοῖς ἀγγέλοις· ἀλλ' εὖ μὲν ἴστω, ἔφη, ὅτι |no longer ἔν

ἔξω ὅσους δεῖ· καὶ ταῦτα |announce, or- αὐτῷ ἐν ἅπασιν·  
|der, promise

|anyway, nevertheless ἔνω δοκεῖ, ἄξω ἤδη. ταῦτ' εἰπὼν καὶ

|pray, vow τοῖς θεοῖς |lead out δ' |army ὥς δ'

ἤρξατο ἄγειν, ἤδη θάπτον ἡγείτο, οἱ δ' εἶποντο |orderly,  
|disciplined

μὲν διὰ τὸ ἐπίστασθαί τε καὶ |pursue, attend to, ἐν τάξει  
|exercise

πορεύεσθαι, |vigorous, δὲ διὰ τὸ φιλονίκως ἔχειν πρὸς  
|powerful

ἀλλήλους καὶ διὰ τὸ τὰ |body, ἐκπεπονήσθαι καὶ διὰ τὸ  
|person,  
|thing

πάντας ἄρχοντας τοὺς πρωτοστάτας εἶναι, |sweet δὲ διὰ

τὸ |sensible, ἔχειν· |know γὰρ καὶ ἐκ πολλοῦ οὕτως  
|prudent

|learn |safe, easy, steady, εἶναι καὶ |easy τὸ |to the same spot  
|careful

ιέναι τοῖς πολεμίοις, ἄλλως τε καὶ |archer καὶ

speech, however splendid, did one whit more to encourage valour in their hearts than a song well sung could do to make a musician of a man who had no music in his soul.”

But while they were speaking, Cyaxares sent again, saying that Cyrus did ill to loiter instead of advancing against the enemy with all speed. And Cyrus sent back word there and then by the messengers:

”Tell Cyaxares once more, that even now there are not as many before us as we need. And tell him this so that all may hear. But add that, if it so please him, I will advance at once.”

So saying and with one prayer to the gods, he led his troops into battle.

Once the advance began he quickened the pace, and his men followed in perfect order, steadily, swiftly, joyously, brimful of emulation, hardened by toil, trained by their long discipline, every man in the front a leader, and all of them alert. They had laid to heart the lesson of many a day that it was always safest and easiest to meet enemies at close quarters, especially archers, javelin-men, and cavalry.

*vocabulary***ἀκοντιστής** -οῦ (m, 1) spearman

~acute

**ἀνταποδίδωμι** give in exchange**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot**βέλος** -εος (n, 3) missile ~ballistic**ἐγγύς** near**ἕζομαι** act: set, seat; pass: sit down, sit up ~sit**ἐξάρχω** take the lead in ~oligarch**ἐπιστάτης** -ου (m, 1) suppliant, dependant ~station**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of**ἐρρωμένος** vigorous, powerful**ἡγεμών** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide, chief ~hegemony**ἡώς ἡῶθι** (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene**θάρσος** boldness, over-boldness**θεοσεβής** revering the gods**μεστός** full**ὀμότιμος** (ι) equally honored**ὀνομάζω** to address, name ~name**ὀπισθεν** behind, hereafter**παιάν** -ήνοος (m, 3) paean**παιδεύω** raise; train**παρεγγυάω** entrust; pass an order**παροράω** notice; overlook, neglect**προθυμία** (υ) zeal, alacrity ~fume**ρῶμη** strength, might**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**συμπήγνυμι** (υῦ) curdle ~fang**σύνθημα** -τος (n, 3) agreed signal**σωφροσύνη** discretion, moderation**ὕπεναντίος** opposed, contrary**ὕπεξάγω** lead to safety ~demagogue**φαιδρός** beaming ~photon**φιλοτιμία** (ι) ambition

ἀκοντισταῖς καὶ ἵππευσιν. ἕως δ' ἔτι ἕξω βελῶν ἦσαν,  
 παρηγγυά ὁ Κῦρος σύνθημα Ζεὺς σύμμαχος καὶ ἡγεμών.  
 ἐπεὶ δὲ πάλιν ἦκε τὸ σύνθημα ἀνταποδιδόμενον, ἐξήρχεν  
 αὐτὸς ὁ Κῦρος παιᾶνα τὸν νομιζόμενον· οἱ δὲ θεοσεβῶς  
 πάντες συνεπήχησαν μεγάλη τῇ φωνῇ· ἐν τῷ τοιούτῳ  
 γὰρ δὴ οἱ δεισιδαίμονες ἦττον τοὺς ἀνθρώπους φοβοῦνται.  
 ἐπεὶ δ' ὁ παιὰν ἐγένετο, ἅμα πορευόμενοι οἱ ὁμότιμοι  
 φαιδροὶ πεπαιδευμένοι καὶ παρορῶντες εἰς ἀλλήλους,  
 ὀνομάζοντες παραστάτας, ἐπιστάτας, λέγοντες πολὺ τὸ  
 Ἄγετ' ἄνδρες φίλοι, Ἄγετ' ἄνδρες ἀγαθοί, παρεκάλουν  
 ἀλλήλους ἔπεσθαι. οἱ δ' ὅπισθεν αὐτῶν ἀκούσαντες  
 ἀντιπαρεκελεύοντο τοῖς πρώτοις ἡγείσθαι ἐρρωμένως. ἦν  
 δὲ μεστὸν τὸ στράτευμα τῷ Κύρῳ προθυμίας, φιλοτιμίας,  
 ῥώμης, θάρρους, παρακελευσμοῦ, σωφροσύνης, πειθοῦς,  
 ὅπερ οἶμαι δεινότατον τοῖς ὑπεναντίοις. τῶν δ' Ἀσσυρίων  
 οἱ μὲν ἀπὸ τῶν ἀρμάτων προμαχοῦντες, ὡς ἐγγὺς ἦδη  
 προσεμίγνυε τὸ Περσικὸν πλῆθος, ἀνέβαινόν τε ἐπὶ τὰ  
 ἅρματα καὶ ὑπεξῆγον πρὸς τὸ ἑαυτῶν πλῆθος· οἱ δὲ



|spearman καὶ |rider ἕως δ' ἔτι ἔξω |missile ἦσαν,  
 |entrust; pass<sup>c</sup> Kṗros |agreed Ζεὺς σύμμαχος καὶ |leader  
 |an order |signal  
 ἐπεὶ δὲ πάλιν ἦκε τὸ |agreed |give in exchange , |take the lead in  
 |signal  
 αὐτὸς ὁ Kṗros παιᾶνα τὸν νομιζόμενον· οἱ δὲ |revering the gods  
 πάντες |curdle μεγάλη τῇ φωνῇ· ἐν τῷ τοιούτῳ  
 γὰρ δὴ οἱ δεισιδαίμονες ἦττον τοὺς ἀνθρώπους φοβοῦνται.  
 ἐπεὶ δ' ὁ παιᾶν ἐγένετο, ἅμα πορευόμενοι οἱ |equally  
 |honored  
 |beaming |raise; train καὶ |notice; over- εἰς ἀλλήλους,  
 |look, neglect  
 |to address, name \_ραστάτας, ἐπιστάτας, λέγοντες πολὺ τὸ  
 Ἄγετ' ἄνδρες φίλοι, Ἄγετ' ἄνδρες ἀγαθοί, |summon, exhort,  
 |(pass) repent  
 ἀλλήλους ἔπεσθαι. οἱ δ' |behind, αὐτῶν ἀκούσαντες  
 |hereafter  
 ἀντιπαρεκελεύοντο τοῖς πρώτοις ἡγεῖσθαι |vigorous,  
 |powerful ἦν  
 δὲ |full τὸ |army τῷ Κύρῳ προθυμίας, φιλοτιμίας,  
 |strength, |boldness , παρακελευσμοῦ, |discretion, , πειθοῦς,  
 |might |moderation  
 ὅπερ οἶμαι δεινότατον τοῖς |opposed, τῶν δ' Ἀσσυρίων  
 |contrary  
 οἱ μὲν ἀπὸ τῶν |chariot προμαχοῦντες, ὥς |near ἥδη  
 προσεμῖγνυε τὸ Περσικὸν πλῆθος, |go up, embark ἐπὶ τὰ  
 |chariot καὶ |lead to safety, ὃς τὸ ἐαυτῶν πλῆθος· οἱ δὲ

While they were still out of range, Cyrus sent the watchword along the lines, "Zeus our help and Zeus our leader." And as soon as it was returned to him, he sounded the first notes of the battle-paeon, and the men took up the hymn devoutly, in one mighty chorus. For at such times those who fear the gods have less fear of their fellow-men. And when the chant was over, the Peers of Persia went forward side by side, radiant, high-bred, disciplined, a band of gallant comrades; they looked into each other's eyes, they called each other by name, with many a cheery cry, "Forward, friends, forward, gallant gentlemen!" And the rear-ranks heard the call, and sent back a ringing cheer, bidding the van lead on. The whole army of Cyrus was brimming with courage and zeal and strength and hardihood and comradeship and self-control; more terrible, I imagine, to an opponent than aught else could be. On the Assyrian side, those in the van who fought from the chariots, as soon as the mass of the Persian force drew near, leapt back and drove to their own main body; but the

*vocabulary*

**ἀκοντιστής** -οῦ (m, 1) spearman  
 ~acute  
**ἄρμα** -τος (n, 3) chariot  
**βάδην** step by step ~basis  
**βέλος** -εος (n, 3) missile ~ballistic  
**δρόμος** running, racing ground  
 ~hippodrome  
**εἴσοδος** (f) entrance ~odometer  
**ἐμπίπτω** fall into; attack ~petal  
**ἐνιοι** some  
**ἐξικνέομαι** arrive at  
**ἔπειμι** lie upon; approach ~ion  
**ἐπιβαίνω** (+gen) set foot on, board, climb ~basis  
**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ῶ) display, exhibit  
**ἐπιλανθάνω** mp: forget ~Lethe  
**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of  
**ἔρυμα** -τος (n, 3) protection ~serve  
**ἐφέπω** drive, meet, follow ~sequel  
**ἐψω** boil, be boiling  
**καταβάλλω** throw down, cast off

~ballistic  
**ὁμός** same ~homoerotic  
**ὁμόσε** to the same spot ~homoerotic  
**ὁμοῦ** together  
**ὁμόω** unite ~homoerotic  
**παρεγγυάω** entrust; pass an order  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**προθυμία** (ῶ) zeal, alacrity ~fume  
**σπεύδω** 'push on,' get going, hurry  
 ~repudiate  
**στρέφω** turn, veer ~atrophy  
**σφενδονήτης** -ου (m, 1) slinger  
**τάφος** (f) ditch, trench ~epitaph  
**τοξότης** -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic  
**φάλαγξ** -γος (f) rank of battle  
 ~phalanx  
**φθέγγομαι** make a sound, utter  
 ~diphthong  
**φονεύω** kill  
**χωρέω** withdraw, give way to (+dat)  
 ~heir  
**ώθέω** push

τοξόται καὶ ἀκοντισταὶ καὶ σφενδονῆται αὐτῶν ἀφίεσαν  
τὰ βέλη πολὺ πρὶν ἐξικνεῖσθαι. ὥς δ' ἐπιόντες οἱ  
Πέρσαι ἐπέβησαν τῶν ἀφειμένων βελῶν, ἐφθέγγατο δὴ ὁ  
Κῦρος· Ἄνδρες ἄριστοι, ἤδη θᾶπτόν τις ἰὼν ἐπιδεικνύτω  
ἐαυτὸν καὶ παρεγγνάτω. οἱ μὲν δὴ παρεδίδουσιν ὑπὸ  
δὲ προθυμίας καὶ μένους καὶ τοῦ σπεύδειν συμμείξαι  
δρόμου τινὲς ἤρξαν, συνεφείπετο δὲ καὶ πᾶσα ἡ φάλαγξ  
δρόμῳ. καὶ αὐτὸς δὲ ὁ Κῦρος ἐπιλαθόμενος τοῦ βάδην  
δρόμῳ ἡγείτο, καὶ ἅμα ἐφθέγγετο Τίς ἔψεται; Τίς ἀγαθός;  
Τίς ἄνδρα πρῶτος καταβαλεῖ; οἱ δὲ ἀκούσαντες ταῦτο  
τοῦτο ἐφθέγγοντο, καὶ διὰ πάντων δὲ ὥσπερ παρηγγύα  
οὕτως ἐχώρει Τίς ἔψεται; Τίς ἀγαθός; οἱ μὲν δὴ Πέρσαι  
οὕτως ἔχοντες ὁμόσε ἐφέροντο. οἳ γε μὴν πολέμιοι  
οὐκέτι ἐδύναντο μένειν, ἀλλὰ στραφέντες ἔφευγον εἰς τὸ  
ἔρυμα. οἱ δ' αὖ Πέρσαι κατὰ τε τὰς εἰσόδους ἐφεπόμενοι  
ὠθυμένων αὐτῶν πολλοὺς κατεστρώννυσαν, τοὺς δ'  
εἰς τὰς τάφρους ἐμπίπτοντας ἐπεισπηδῶντες ἐφόνεον  
ἄνδρας ὁμοῦ καὶ ἵππους· ἓνια γὰρ τῶν ἀρμάτων εἰς

|archer καὶ |spearman καὶ |slinger αὐτῶν ἀφίεσαν  
 τὰ |missile πολὺ πρὶν |arrive at . ὥς δ' ἐπιόντες οἱ  
 Πέρσαι ἐπέβησαν τῶν ἀφειμένων |missile , |make a sound, ὑττέρ  
 Κῦρος· Ἄνδρες ἄριστοι, ἤδη θάπτον τις ἰὼν |display,  
 |exhibit  
 ἑαυτὸν καὶ |entrust; pass οἱ μὲν δὴ παρεδίδοσαν· ὑπὸ  
 |an order  
 δὲ προθυμίας καὶ μένους καὶ τοῦ |'push on,' get, μείξαι  
 |going, hurry  
 |running τινὲς ἤρξαν, συνεφείπετο δὲ καὶ πᾶσα ἡ |rank of battle  
 |running καὶ αὐτὸς δὲ ὁ Κῦρος ἐπιλαθόμενος τοῦ |step by step  
 |running ἡγεῖτο, καὶ ἅμα |make a sound, ὑττέρ' αἱ; Τίς ἀγαθός;  
 Τίς ἄνδρα πρῶτος |throw down, cast off ἰκούσαντες ταῦτο  
 τοῦτο |make a sound, utter ἡ δὲ πάντων δὲ ὥσπερ |entrust; pass  
 |an order  
 οὕτως |withdraw, γίγνεται; Τίς ἀγαθός; οἱ μὲν δὴ Πέρσαι  
 |way to (+dat)  
 οὕτως ἔχοντες |to the same spot . ο. οἱ γε μὴν πολέμιοι  
 οὐκέτι ἐδύναντο μένειν, ἀλλὰ |turn ἔφευγον εἰς τὸ  
 |protection ' δ' αὖ Πέρσαι κατὰ τε τὰς |entrance |drive, meet, follow  
 |push αὐτῶν πολλοὺς κατεστρώννυσαν, τοὺς δ'  
 εἰς τὰς |ditch ἐμπίπτοντας ἐπεισηδῶντες |kill  
 ἄνδρας ὁμοῦ καὶ ἵππους· |some ἄρ τῶν |chariot εἰς

archers, javelin-men, and slingers, let fly long before they were in range. And as the Persians steadily advanced, stepping over the spent missiles, Cyrus called to his men:

”Forward now, bravest of the brave! Show us what your pace can be!”

They caught the word and passed it on, and in their eagerness and passion for the fray some of the leaders broke into a run, and the whole phalanx followed at their heels. Cyrus himself gave up the regular march and dashed forward at their head, shouting:

”Brave men to the front! Who follows me? Who will lay the first Assyrian low?”

At this the men behind took up the shout till it rang through the field like a battle-cry: ”Who follows? Brave men to the front!” Thus the Persians closed. But the enemy could not hold their ground; they turned and fled to their entrenchments. The Persians swept after them, many a warrior falling as they crowded in at the gates or tumbled into the trenches. For in the rout some of the chariots were carried into

*vocabulary*

**ἀκοντίζω** throw, (+gen) at ~acute  
**ἀναγκάζω** force, compel  
**ἀνακράζω** yell, scream  
**διακόπτω** cut through, interrupt  
**δρύπτω** tear at/off ~dermatology  
**ἐγκλίνω** (ι) rest on ~incline  
**εἴσοδος** (f) entrance ~odometer  
**ἐκπλήσσω** panic, be knocked out  
 ~plectrum  
**ἐμπίπτω** fall into; attack ~petal  
**ἐνδον** in the house of; within  
**ἐντός** within  
**ἔρυμα** -τος (n, 3) protection ~serve  
**θέω** run, run for

**ἰκετεύω** approach to beg  
**κατακαίνω** kill  
**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon  
**καταμανθάνω** examine, observe  
**καταρρήγνυμι** (υ) break down  
**πέπλος** woman's dress, a folded cylinder of cloth  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**πιστός** faithful; trustworthy  
**τάφος** (f) ditch, trench ~epitaph  
**τάχα** quickly, soon; perhaps  
 ~tachometer  
**τοξεύω** shoot an arrow at ~toxic  
**φόνος** killing ~offend  
**φυγή** flight, means of escape ~fugitive

τὰς τάφρους ἡναγκάσθη φεύγοντα ἐμπεσεῖν. καὶ οἱ τῶν Μήδων δ' ἵππεῖς ὀρώντες ταῦτα ἤλαυνον εἰς τοὺς ἱππέας τοὺς τῶν πολεμίων· οἱ δ' ἐνέκλιναν καὶ αὐτοί. ἔνθα δὴ καὶ ἵππων διωγμὸς ἦν καὶ ἀνδρῶν, καὶ φόνος δὲ ἀμφοτέρων. οἱ δ' ἐντὸς τοῦ ἐρύματος τῶν Ἀσσυρίων ἐστηκότες ἐπὶ τῆς κεφαλῆς τῆς τάφρου τοξεύειν μὲν ἢ ἀκοντίζειν εἰς τοὺς κατακαίνοντας οὔτε ἐφρόνουν οὔτε ἐδύναντο διὰ τὰ δεινὰ ὁράματα καὶ διὰ τὸν φόβον. τάχα δὲ καὶ καταμαθόντες τῶν Περσῶν τινὰς διακεκοφώτας πρὸς τὰς εἰσόδους τοῦ ἐρύματος ἐτράποντο καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν κεφαλῶν τῶν ἔνδον. ἰδοῦσαι δ' αἱ γυναῖκες τῶν Ἀσσυρίων καὶ τῶν συμμάχων ἤδη φυγὴν καὶ ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ ἀνέκραγον καὶ ἔθρον ἐκπεπληγμέναι, αἱ μὲν καὶ τέκνα ἔχουσai, αἱ δὲ καὶ νεώτεραι, καταρρηγνύμεναί τε πέπλους καὶ δρυπτόμεναι, καὶ ἰκετεύουσai πάντας ὅτῳ ἐντυγχάνοιεν μὴ φεύγειν καταλιπόντας αὐτάς, ἀλλ' ἀμῦναι καὶ αὐταῖς καὶ τέκνοις καὶ σφίσιν αὐτοῖς. ἔνθα δὴ καὶ αὐτοὶ οἱ βασιλεῖς σὺν τοῖς πιστοτάτοις στάντες ἐπὶ



τὰς |ditch |force, compel φεύγοντα ἔμπεσεῖν. καὶ οἱ τῶν  
 Μήδων δ' ἵππεῖς ὁρῶντες ταῦτα ἤλαυνον εἰς τοὺς ἱππέας  
 τοὺς τῶν πολεμίων· οἱ δ' |rest on καὶ αὐτοί. ἔνθα δὴ καὶ  
 ἵππων διωγμὸς ἦν καὶ ἀνδρῶν, καὶ |killing δὲ ἀμφοτέρων.  
 οἱ δ' |within τοῦ |protection τῶν Ἀσσυρίων ἐστηκότες ἐπὶ τῆς  
 κεφαλῆς τῆς |ditch |shoot an arrow at |throw, (+gen) at τοῦς  
 |kill οὔτε |think, be wise. εἰ ἐδύναντο διὰ τὰ δεινὰ  
 ὁράματα καὶ διὰ τὸν |fear |quickly, soon; |examine, observe  
 |perhaps  
 τῶν Περσῶν τινας |cut through, in- πρὸς τὰς |entrance τοῦ  
 |interrupt  
 |protection |divert καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν κεφαλῶν τῶν |in the house of;  
 |within  
 ἰδοῦσαι δ' αἱ γυναῖκες τῶν Ἀσσυρίων καὶ τῶν συμμάχων  
 ἤδη |flight, means of escape ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ |yell, scream καὶ |run  
 |panic, be knocked, out αἱ μὲν καὶ τέκνα ἔχουσαι, αἱ δὲ καὶ  
 νεώτεραι, |break down τε |woman's dress |tear at/off ,  
 καὶ |approach to beg ἵντας ὅτῳ ἐντυγχάνοιεν μὴ φεύγειν  
 |leave behind, ἀτάς, ἀλλ' |ward off; defend; |s καὶ τέκνοις  
 |abandon |(mp) have revenge  
 καὶ σφίσιν αὐτοῖς. ἔνθα δὴ καὶ αὐτοὶ οἱ βασιλεῖς σὺν τοῖς  
 |faithful; trust- στάντες ἐπὶ  
 |worthy

the fosse, and the Persians sprang down after them and slew man and horse where they fell. Then the Median troopers, seeing how matters stood, charged the Assyrian cavalry, who swerved and broke before them, chased and slaughtered, horse and rider, by their conquerors. Meanwhile the Assyrians within the camp, though they stood upon the breastworks, had neither wit nor power to draw bow or fling spear against the destroyers, dazed as they were by their panic and the horror of the sight. Then came the tidings that the Persians had cut their way through to the gates, and at that they fled from the breastworks. The women, seeing the rout in the camp, fell to wailing and lamentations, running hither and thither in utter dismay, young maidens, and mothers with children in their arms, rending their garments and tearing their cheeks and crying on all they met, "Leave us not, save us, save your children and yourselves!" Then the princes gathered the trustiest men and stood at the gates, fighting on the breastworks themselves,

*vocabulary*

**ἀκριβής** (ἶ) exact  
**ἀπάγω** lead away, back ~demagogue  
**βέλος** -εος (n, 3) missile ~ballistic  
**βιάζω** use force on, violate  
**βιάω** use force against, overcome  
**δηλώω** show, disclose  
**εἴσοδος** (f) entrance ~odometer  
**ἐτοιμός** ready; fulfilled  
**μέτριος** medium, moderate  
**ὀμότιμος** (ἶ) equally honored  
**ὅπου** where  
**παιδεύω** raise; train  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
 recommend, encourage  
**παρακελεύομαι** recommend,

encourage  
**παρεγγυάω** entrust; pass an order  
**προπέμπω** send, send ahead ~pomp  
**σκοπός** (f) lookout, overseer, spy,  
 target ~telescope  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
**στρατοπεδεύω** encamp or take up  
 station ~strategy  
**συγκαλέω** call together ~gallo  
**σφάλλω** overthrow, balk, stagger  
**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch  
 ~phylactery  
**χορός** dance; chorus ~terpsichorean

τὰς εἰσόδους καὶ ἀναβάντες ἐπὶ τὰς κεφαλὰς καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐμάχοντο καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις παρεκελεύοντο. ὥς δ' ἔγνων ὁ Κῦρος τὰ γιγνόμενα, δείσας μὴ καὶ εἰ βιάσαιντο εἶσω, ὀλίγοι ὄντες ὑπὸ πολλῶν σφαλεῖέν τι, παρηγγύησεν ἐπὶ πόδ' ἀνάγειν ἔξω βελῶν καὶ πείθεσθαι. ἔνθα δὴ ἔγνων τις ἂν τοὺς ὁμοτίμους πεπαιδευμένους ὥς δεῖ· ταχὺ μὲν γὰρ αὐτοὶ ἐπείθοντο, ταχὺ δὲ τοῖς ἄλλοις παρήγγελλον. ὥς δ' ἔξω βελῶν ἐγένοντο, ἔστησαν κατὰ χώραν, πολὺ μᾶλλον χοροῦ ἀκριβῶς εἰδότες ὅπου ἔδει ἕκαστον αὐτῶν γενέσθαι.

#### 4

##### 4.1

Μείνας δὲ ὁ Κῦρος μέτριον χρόνον αὐτοῦ σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι καὶ δηλώσας ὅτι ἔτοιμοί εἰσι μάχεσθαι εἴ τις ἐξέρχοιτο, ὥς οὐδεὶς ἀντεξήει, ἀπήγαγεν ὅσον ἐδόκει καλῶς ἔχειν καὶ ἐστρατοπεδεύσατο. φυλακὰς δὲ καταστησάμενος καὶ σκοποὺς προπέμψας, στὰς εἰς τὸ μέσον συνεκάλεσε τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ στρατιώτας καὶ ἔλεξε

τὰς |entrance καὶ |go up, embark ἰ τὰς |head; καὶ αὐτοὶ  
 |height  
 ἐμάχοντο καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις παρεκελεύοντο. ὥς δ' ἔγνω ὁ  
 Κῦρος τὰ γιγνόμενα, |to fear μὴ καὶ εἰ βιάσαιντο εἴσω,  
 ὀλίγοι ὄντες ὑπὸ πολλῶν |overthrow, balk |entrust; pass an ἐπὶ  
 |order  
 πόδ' |lead up; ἵ(μρ)|missile καὶ πείθεσθαι. ἔνθα δὴ ἔγνω τις  
 |set sail  
 ἂν τοὺς |equally |raise; train ὥς δεῖ· ταχὺ μὲν γὰρ  
 |honored  
 αὐτοὶ ἐπείθοντο, ταχὺ δὲ τοῖς ἄλλοις |transmit; order, summon, recom-  
 |mend, encourage  
 ἔξω |missile ἐγένοντο, ἔστησαν κατὰ |place , πολὺ μᾶλλον  
 |dance; ἀκριβῶς εἰδότες |where ἴδει ἕκαστον αὐτῶν γενέσθαι.  
 |chorus

## 4

## 4.1

Μείνας δὲ ὁ Κῦρος |medium, χρόνον αὐτοῦ σὺν τῷ  
 |moderate  
 |army καὶ |show, ὅτι ἑτοιμοὶ εἰσι μάχεσθαι  
 |disclose  
 εἴ τις ἐξέρχοιτο, ὥς οὐδεὶς ἀντεξήει, |lead away, back ἢ  
 ἐδόκει καλῶς ἔχειν καὶ |encamp or take up sta- |guard, δὲ  
 |tion |prison,  
 |set down, land; be- καὶ |lookout |send, send ahead ἅς εἰς τὸ  
 |come, be  
 μέσον |call together τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ |soldier, καὶ ἔλεξε  
 |mercenary

and urging their troops to make a stand. Cyrus, seeing this, and fearing that if his handful of Persians forced their way into the camp they would be overborne by numbers, gave the order to fall back out of range. Then was shown the perfect discipline of the Peers; at once they obeyed the order and passed it on at once. And when they were all out of range they halted and reformed their ranks, better than any chorus could have done, every man of them knowing exactly where he ought to be.

## 4

### 4.1

Cyrus waited, with his troops as they were, long enough to show that he was ready to do battle again if the enemy would come out; but as they did not stir he drew the soldiers off as far as he thought well, and there encamped. He had guards posted and scouts sent forward, and then he gathered his warriors round him and

*vocabulary***ἀνατείνω** lift, reach out, threaten**ἀναχωρέω** return, retreat ~heir**ἀποτελέω** accomplish, produce**βέλος** -εος (n, 3) missile ~ballistic**ἐγγύς** near**ἐντείνω** tauten ~tend**ἐπαινέω** concur, praise, advise**ἐπανάγω** sit up, bring up; retreat; set sail**ἐπειδάν** when, after**κατανοέω** notice, realize, learn**μάχαιρα** knife, dagger**νίκη** (i) victory ~Nike**ὀνομαστί** by name**παίω** hit**παλτός** brandished, hurled**παρεγγυάω** entrust; pass an order**πειράζω** test a person ~pierce**Πέρσης** Persian**προσήκω** belong to, it seems**πύθω** (ū) rot ~putrid**σύμπας** (ā) all together**σωτηρία** saving, preservation**ταξίαρχος** military rank**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military unit**τοιόσδε** such**τόξον** bow ~toxic**ὕπακούω** listen, reply ~acoustic**φθάζω** do first, outstrip**φθάνω** (ā) do first, outstrip

τοιάδε. Ἄνδρες Πέρσαι, πρῶτον μὲν τοὺς θεοὺς ἐγὼ  
 ἐπαινῶ ὅσον δύναμαι, καὶ ὑμεῖς δὲ πάντες, οἶμαι· νίκης  
 τε γὰρ τετυχήκαμεν καὶ σωτηρίας. τούτων μὲν οὖν  
 χρὴ χαριστήρια ὦν ἂν ἔχωμεν τοῖς θεοῖς ἀποτελεῖν.  
 ἐγὼ δὲ σύμπαντας μὲν ὑμᾶς ἤδη ἐπαινῶ· τὸ γὰρ  
 γεγενημένον ἔργον σύμπασιν ὑμῖν καλῶς ἀποτετέλεσται·  
 ὦν δ' ἕκαστος ἄξιος, ἐπειδὴν παρ' ὧν προσήκει πύθωμαι,  
 τότε τὴν ἀξίαν ἐκάστω καὶ λόγῳ καὶ ἔργῳ πειράσομαι  
 ἀποδιδόναι. τὸν δ' ἐμοῦ ἐγγύτατα ταξίαρχον Χρυσάνταν  
 οὐδὲν ἄλλων δέομαι πυνθάνεσθαι, ἀλλ' αὐτὸς οἶδα οἷος ἦν·  
 τὰ μὲν γὰρ ἄλλα ὅσαπερ οἶμαι καὶ πάντες ὑμεῖς ἐποιεῖτε·  
 ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγὼ παρηγγύησα ἐπανάγειν καλέσας αὐτὸν  
 ὀνομαστί, ἀνατεταμένος οὗτος τὴν μάχαιραν ὥς παίσων  
 πολέμιον ὑπήκουσέ τε ἐμοὶ εὐθὺς ἀφείς τε ὃ ἔμελλε ποιεῖν  
 τὸ κελευόμενον ἔπραττεν· αὐτὸς τε γὰρ ἐπανήγε καὶ τοῖς  
 ἄλλοις μάλα ἐπισπερχῶς παρηγγύα· ὥστ' ἔφθασεν ἔξω  
 βελῶν τὴν τάξιν ποιήσας πρὶν τοὺς πολεμίους κατανοῆσαι  
 ὅτι ἀνεχωροῦμεν καὶ τόξα ἐντείνασθαι καὶ τὰ παλτὰ



|such . Ἄνδρες Πέρσαι, πρῶτον μὲν τοὺς θεοὺς ἐγὼ  
 |concur ὅσον δύναμαι, καὶ ὑμεῖς δὲ πάντες, οἶμαι· |victory  
 τε γὰρ τετυχήκαμεν καὶ σωτηρίας. τούτων μὲν οὖν  
 χρὴ χαριστήρια ὧν ἂν ἔχωμεν τοῖς θεοῖς |accomplish,  
 |produce  
 ἐγὼ δὲ |all together μὲν ὑμᾶς ἤδη |concur τὸ γὰρ  
 γεγενημένον ἔργον |all together ὑμῖν καλῶς |accomplish,  
 |produce  
 ὧν δ' ἕκαστος |worthy |when, παρ' ὧν |belong to, πύθωμαι,  
 |after |it beseems  
 τότε τὴν ἀξίαν ἐκάστω καὶ λόγῳ καὶ ἔργῳ πειράσομαι  
 |repay . τὸν δ' ἐμοῦ |near |military rank ὕρυσάνταν  
 οὐδὲν ἄλλων δέομαι πυνθάνεσθαι, ἀλλ' αὐτὸς οἶδα οἷος ἦν·  
 τὰ μὲν γὰρ ἄλλα ὅσαπερ οἶμαι καὶ πάντες ὑμεῖς ἐποιεῖτε·  
 ἐπεὶ δ' ἐγὼ |entrust; pass an|sit up, bring up; λέσας αὐτὸν  
 |order |retreat; set sail  
 |by name , |lift, reach out, οὗτος τὴν |knife ὥς |hit  
 |threaten  
 πολέμιον |listen, τε ἐμοὶ εὐθὺς ἀφείς τε ὃ ἔμελλε ποιεῖν  
 |reply  
 τὸ κελευόμενον ἔπραττεν· αὐτός τε γὰρ ἐπανήγε καὶ τοῖς  
 ἄλλοις μάλα ἐπισπερχῶς |entrust; pass ὥστ' ἔφθασεν ἔξω  
 |an order  
 |missile τὴν τάξιν ποιήσας πρὶν τοὺς πολεμίους |notice, realize,  
 |learn  
 ὅτι |return, retreat καὶ |bow |tauten καὶ τὰ |brandished,  
 |hurled

spoke to them as follows:

”Men of Persia, first and foremost I thank the gods of heaven with all my soul and strength; and I know you render thanks with me, for we have won salvation and victory, and it is meet and right to thank the gods for all that comes to us. But in the next place I must praise you, one and all; it is through you all that this glorious work has been accomplished, and when I have learnt what each man’s part has been from those whose place it is to tell me, I will do my best to give each man his due, in word and deed. But I need none to tell me the exploits of your brigadier Chrysantas; he was next to me in the battle and I could see that he bore himself as I believe you all have done. Moreover, at the very moment when I called on him to retire, he had just raised his sword to strike an Assyrian down, but he heard my voice, and at once he dropped his hand and did my bidding. He sent the word along the lines and led his division out of range before the enemy could lay one arrow to the string or let one javelin fly. Thus he brought himself and his men safely out

*vocabulary*

**ἀπαλλάσσω** free from, remove; be freed, depart

**ἀποφαίνω** display, declare

**ἀρετή** goodness, excellence

**ἄρτι** at the same time

**δειπνοποιέω** make dinner

**διανοέω** have in mind

**ἐνθυμέομαι** (ῥ) take to heart

**ἐπαφίημι** throw at, loose on

**ἐπιλήθω** mp: forget ~Lethe

**ἐργάτης** -ου (ᾱ, m, 1) worker

**ἡδονή** pleasure

**θεοφιλῆς** beloved by the gods; loving God

**μήποτε** absolutely never

**ὅποῖος** whatever kind

**παιάν** -ήνοος (m, 3) paean

**πεῖρα** an attempt

**πείρω** pierce, run through ~pierce

**ποῖος** what kind

**πότερος** which, whichever of two

**ῥαίω** smite

**σκέπτομαι** look, look at, watch

~skeptic

**σπονδή** libation, treaty ~spontaneous

**σώφρων** sensible, prudent ~frenzy

**τιμάω** (ι) honor, exalt

**τιμόω** honor, exalt

**τιτρώσκω** wound, bring to grief

~trauma

**ὑπομνήσκω** remind of ~mnemonic

**φρόνιμος** sensible, prudent

**φυγή** flight, means of escape ~fugitive

ἐπαφείναι· ὥστε αὐτός τε ἀβλαβῆς καὶ τοὺς αὐτοῦ  
 ἄνδρας ἀβλαβεῖς διὰ τὸ πείθεσθαι παρέχεται. ἄλλους  
 δ', ἔφη, ὁρῶ τετρωμένους, περὶ ὧν ἐγὼ σκεψάμενος ἐν  
 ὁποίῳ χρόνῳ ἐτρώθησαν, τότε τὴν γνώμην περὶ αὐτῶν  
 ἀποφανοῦμαι. Χρυσάνταν δὲ ὡς καὶ ἐργάτην τῶν ἐν  
 πολέμῳ καὶ φρόνιμον καὶ ἄρχεσθαι ἱκανὸν καὶ ἄρχειν  
 χιλιαρχία μὲν ἤδη τιμῶ· ὅταν δὲ καὶ ἄλλο τι ἀγαθὸν ὁ  
 θεὸς δῶ, οὐδὲ τότε ἐπιλήσομαι αὐτοῦ. καὶ πάντας δὲ  
 βούλομαι ὑμᾶς, ἔφη, ὑπομῆσαι· ἃ γὰρ νῦν εἶδετε ἐν τῇ  
 μάχῃ τῇδε, ταῦτα ἐνθυμούμενοι μήποτε παύεσθε, ἵνα παρ'  
 ὑμῖν αὐτοῖς αἰεὶ κρίνητε πότερον ἢ ἀρετὴ μᾶλλον ἢ ἡ φυγὴ  
 σῶζει τὰς ψυχὰς καὶ πότερον οἱ μάχεσθαι ἐθέλοντες ῥᾶον  
 ἀπαλλάττουσιν ἢ οἱ οὐκ ἐθέλοντες, καὶ ποῖαν τινὰ ἡδονὴν  
 τὸ νικᾶν παρέχει· ταῦτα γὰρ νῦν ἄριστ' ἂν κρίναιτε πείραν  
 τε αὐτῶν ἔχοντες καὶ ἄρτι γεγεννημένου τοῦ πράγματος.  
 καὶ ταῦτα μὲν, ἔφη, ἀεὶ διανοούμενοι βελτίους ἂν εἴητε·  
 νῦν δὲ ὡς θεοφιλεῖς καὶ ἀγαθοὶ καὶ σώφρονες ἄνδρες  
 δειπνοποιεῖσθε καὶ σπονδὰς τοῖς θεοῖς ποιεῖσθε καὶ παιᾶνα

|throw at, loose on ε αὐτός τε ἀβλαβῆς καὶ τοὺς αὐτοῦ  
 ἄνδρας ἀβλαβεῖς διὰ τὸ πείθεσθαι |furnish ἄλλους  
 δ', ἔφη, ὁρῶ |wound, bring, περὶ ὧν ἐγὼ |look, look at, watch  
 |to grief  
 |whatever kind, |wound, bring τότε τὴν γνώμην περὶ αὐτῶν  
 |to grief  
 |display, declare Χρυσάνταν δὲ ὡς καὶ |worker τῶν ἐν  
 πολέμῳ καὶ |sensible, καὶ ἄρχεσθαι |sufficient; fit, ἄρχειν  
 |prudent |empowered  
 χιλιαρχία μὲν ἤδη τιμῶ· |whenever καὶ ἄλλο τι ἀγαθὸν ὁ  
 θεὸς δῶ, οὐδὲ τότε |mp: forget αὐτοῦ. καὶ πάντας δὲ  
 βούλομαι ὑμᾶς, ἔφη, ὑπομνήσαι· ἃ γὰρ νῦν εἶδετε ἐν τῇ  
 μάχῃ τῇδε, ταῦτα |take to heart |absolutely stop, ἵνα παρ'  
 |never  
 ὑμῖν αὐτοῖς αἰεὶ κρίνητε |which, |excellence ἄλλον ἢ ἢ |flight, means of  
 |whichever |escape  
 σώζει τὰς ψυχὰς καὶ |which, ἢ μάχεσθαι ἐθέλοντες ῥᾶον  
 |whichever  
 |free from, remove; ἢ οἱ οὐκ ἐθέλοντες, καὶ |what kind ἢ |pleasure  
 |be freed, depart  
 τὸ |win, |furnish ταῦτα γὰρ νῦν ἄριστ' ἂν κρίναιτε πειράν  
 |defeat  
 τε αὐτῶν ἔχοντες καὶ |at the same time' οὐ τοῦ πράγματος.  
 καὶ ταῦτα μέν, ἔφη, αἰεὶ διανοούμενοι βελτίους ἂν εἴητε·  
 νῦν δὲ ὡς |beloved by the ἰγαθοὶ καὶ |sensible, ἄνδρες  
 |gods; loving God |prudent  
 |make dinner καὶ |libation, τοῖς θεοῖς ποιείσθε καὶ παιᾶνα  
 |treaty

of action, because he had learnt to obey. But some of you, I see, are wounded, and when I hear at what moment they received their wounds I will pronounce my opinion on their deserts. Chrysantas I know already to be a true soldier and a man of sense, able to command because he is able to obey, and here and now I put him at the head of a thousand troops, nor shall I forget him on the day when God may please to give me other blessings. There is one reminder I would make to all. Never let slip the lesson of this day's encounter, and judge for yourselves whether it is cowardice or courage that saves a man in war, whether the fighters or the shirkers have the better chance, and what the joy is that victory can yield. To-day of all days you can decide, for you have made the trial and the result is fresh. With such thoughts as these in your hearts you will grow braver and better still. And now you may rest in the consciousness that you are dear to God and have done your duty bravely and steadily, and so take your meal and make

*vocabulary***ἀθυμέω** (ῥ) be disheartened**ἀθυμία** (ῥ) despondency**ἀχέομαι** heal, fix**ἄμαξα** wagon**ἀπελαύνω** expel, exclude, ward off;

(intrans) ride away

**ἀποδιδράσκω** escape**ἄτε** as if; since**ἄω** aor: to sate ~sate**βέλτιστος** best, noblest**δειπνοποιέω** make dinner**διαβιβάζω** carry over**εἰκός** likely**ἐκλείπω** leave out, pass over**ἐξάρχω** take the lead in ~oligarch**ἐρημος** empty**ἔρομαι** ask a question, ask about, go

searching through

**καταλείβω** drip**καταλείπω** leave behind, abandon

~eclipse

**κοιμάω** put to sleep; (pass) lie down,

have sex

**κοινός** communal, ordinary**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,

recommend, encourage

**Πέρσης** Persian**πρόβατον** cattle, flocks, herds**προνοέω** foresee, think of ~paranoia**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**στρατιά** army ~strategy**συνήδομαι** rejoice, sympathize with**σχεδόν** near, approximately at

~ischemia

**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch

~phylactery

**φύλον** race, tribe, class ~phylum

ἐξάρχεσθε καὶ ἅμα τὸ παραγγελλόμενον προνοεῖτε. εἰπὼν δὲ ταῦτα ἀναβὰς ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον ἤλασε καὶ πρὸς Κρυζάρην ἐλθὼν καὶ συνησθεὶς ἐκείνῳ κοινῇ ὥς εἰκὸς καὶ ἰδὼν τὰ κεῖ καὶ ἐρόμενος εἴ τι δέοιτο, ἀπήλυνεν εἰς τὸ αὐτοῦ στρατεύμα. καὶ οἱ μὲν δὴ ἀμφὶ Κῦρον δειπνοποιησάμενοι καὶ φυλακὰς καταστησάμενοι ὥς ἔδει ἐκοιμήθησαν.

Οἱ δὲ Ἀσσύριοι, ἅτε καὶ τεθνηκότος τοῦ ἄρχοντος καὶ σχεδὸν σὺν αὐτῷ τῶν βελτίστων, ἡθύμουν μὲν πάντες, πολλοὶ δὲ καὶ ἀπεδίδρασκον αὐτῶν τῆς νυκτὸς ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου. ὁρῶντες δὲ ταῦτα ὁ τε Κροῖσος καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι σύμμαχοι αὐτῶν ἡθύμουν· πάντα μὲν γὰρ ἦν χαλεπά· ἀθυμίαν δὲ πλείστην παρείχε παῖσιν ὅτι τὸ ἡγούμενον τῆς στρατιᾶς φύλον διέφθαρτο τὰς γνώμας. οὕτω δὴ ἐκλείπουσι τὸ στρατόπεδον καὶ ἀπέρχονται τῆς νυκτός. ὥς δ' ἡμέρα ἐγένετο καὶ ἔρημον ἀνδρῶν ἐφάνη τὸ τῶν πολεμίων στρατόπεδον, εὐθὺς διαβιβάζει ὁ Κῦρος τοὺς Πέρσας πρώτους· κατελέλειπτο δὲ ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων πολλὰ μὲν πρόβατα, πολλοὶ δὲ βόες, πολλαὶ δὲ ἄμαξαι



|take the lead in ἵμα τὸ |transmit; order, sum-foresee, εἰπὼν  
 |mon, recommend, en-think of  
 δὲ ταῦτα |go up, embark |courage |drive καὶ πρὸς Κυμαξάρην  
 ἐλθὼν καὶ |rejoice, sym-ῥκείνω κοινῇ ὥς |likely καὶ ἰδὼν  
 |pathize with  
 τὰ κεῖ καὶ |ask, search through ἵτο, |expel, exclude, ward off; τοῦ  
 |(intrans) ride away  
 |army καὶ οἱ μὲν δὴ ἀμφὶ Κῦρον |make dinner  
 καὶ |guard, καταστησάμενοι ὥς ἔδει ἐκοιμήθησαν.  
 |prison,  
 |watch  
 Οἱ δὲ Ἀσσύριοι, ἅτε καὶ τεθνηκότος τοῦ ἄρχοντος καὶ  
 |about σὺν αὐτῷ τῶν |best, noblest, ἡθύμουν μὲν πάντες,  
 πολλοὶ δὲ καὶ |escape αὐτῶν τῆς νυκτὸς ἐκ τοῦ  
 |army camp ὁρῶντες δὲ ταῦτα ὅ τε Κροῖσος καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι  
 σύμμαχοι αὐτῶν ἡθύμουν· πάντα μὲν γὰρ ἦν |hard to bear  
 |despondency· πλείστην |furnish πᾶσιν ὅτι τὸ ἡγούμενον  
 τῆς |army |race, |destroy, corrupt;sign, mind, ἵτω δὴ  
 |tribe, |(pf.) to be beside|will, decision  
 |class |oneself  
 |leave out, pass|army camp καὶ |go away, depart ἵς νυκτός.  
 |over  
 ὥς δ' ἡμέρα ἐγένετο καὶ ἔρημον ἀνδρῶν ἐφάνη τὸ τῶν  
 πολεμίων |army camp , εὐθὺς |carry over ὁ Κῦρος τοὺς  
 Πέρσας πρώτους· κατελέλειπτο δὲ ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων  
 πολλὰ μὲν |cattle, flocks, ολλοὶ δὲ βόες, πολλαὶ δὲ |wagon  
 |herds

your libations and sing the paeon and be ready for the watchword.”

So saying, Cyrus mounted his horse and galloped on to Cyaxares, and the two rejoiced together as victors will. And then, after a glance at matters there and an inquiry if aught were needed, he rode back to his own detachment. Then the evening meal was taken and the watches were posted and Cyrus slept with his men.

Meanwhile the Assyrians, finding that their king was among the slain and almost all his nobles with him, fell into utter despair, and many of them deserted during the night. And at this fear crept over Croesus and the allies; they saw dangers on every side, and heaviest of all was the knowledge that the leading nation, the head of the whole expedition, had received a mortal blow. Nothing remained but to abandon the encampment under cover of night. Day broke, and the camp was seen to be deserted, and Cyrus, without more ado, led his Persians within the entrenchments, where they found the stores that the enemy had left: herds of sheep and goats and kine,

*vocabulary***ἄπειρος** untested; infinite**ἀποδιδράσκω** escape**ἀριστάω** eat lunch ~aristocrat**ἀριστοποιέω** (ᾱ) make breakfast**βέλτιστος** best, noblest**διαβαίνω** pass over, cross ~basis**ἐκλείπω** leave out, pass over**ἐνταῦθα** there, here**ἔρυμα** -τος (n, 3) protection ~serve**ἡσάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat**ἰσόπεδον** (ι) flat spot**κατάδηλος** manifest, visible**κατακαίνω** kill**κράτιστος** best**μεστός** full**ὀχέω** carry; be afflicted with ~wagon**προσδέω** bind also; need also**συγκαλέω** call together ~gallo**ταξίαρχος** military rank**τοιόσδε** such**ὑπομένω** stay behind, await ~remain

πολλῶν ἀγαθῶν μεσταί· ἐκ δὲ τούτου διέβαινον ἤδη καὶ οἱ ἀμφὶ Κναξάρην Μῆδοι πάντες καὶ ἡριστοποιοῦντο ἐνταῦθα. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡρίστησαν, συνεκάλεσεν ὁ Κῦρος τοὺς αὐτοῦ ταξιάρχους καὶ ἔλεξε τοιάδε. Οἶά μοι δοκοῦμεν καὶ ὅσα ἀγαθὰ, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἀφείναι, θεῶν ἡμῖν αὐτὰ διδόντων. νῦν γὰρ ὅτι οἱ πολέμοι ἡμᾶς ἀποδεδράκασιν αὐτοὶ ὁράτε· οἷτινες δὲ ἐν ἐρύματι ὄντες ἐκλιπόντες τοῦτο φεύγουσι, πῶς ἂν τις τούτους οἶοιτ' ἂν μῆναι ἰδόντας ἡμᾶς ἐν τῷ ἰσοπέδῳ; οἷτινες δὲ ἡμῶν ἄπειροι ὄντες οὐχ ὑπέμειναν, πῶς νῦν γ' ἂν ὑπομείναιαν, ἐπεὶ ἡττηνταί τε καὶ πολλὰ κακὰ ὑφ' ἡμῶν πεπόνθασιν; ὧν δὲ οἱ βέλτιστοι ἀπολώλασι, πῶς οἱ πονηρότεροι ἐκείνων μάχεσθαι ἂν ἡμῖν ἐθέλοιεν; καὶ τις εἶπε· Τί οὖν οὐ διώκομεν ὡς τάχιστα, καταδήλων γε οὕτω τῶν ἀγαθῶν ὄντων; καὶ ὃς εἶπεν· Ὅτι ἵππων προσδεόμεθα· οἱ μὲν γὰρ κράτιστοι τῶν πολεμίων, οὓς μάλιστα καιρὸς ἦν ἢ λαβεῖν ἢ κατακανεῖν, οὗτοι ἐφ' ἵππων ὀχοῦνται· οὓς ἡμεῖς τρέπεσθαι μὲν σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ἱκανοί, διώκοντες δὲ αἰρεῖν οὐχ ἱκανοί. Τί οὖν, ἔφασαν,

πολλῶν ἀγαθῶν |full ἐκ δὲ τούτου |pass over, crōss, καὶ  
οἱ ἀμφὶ Κναξάρην Μῆδοι πάντες καὶ |make breakfast  
|there, here ἐπεὶ δὲ |eat lunch , |call together ὁ Κῦρος τοὺς  
αὐτοῦ |military rank καὶ ἔλεξε |such . Οἶά μοι δοκοῦμεν  
καὶ ὅσα ἀγαθὰ, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἀφείναι, θεῶν ἡμῖν αὐτὰ  
διδόντων. νῦν γὰρ ὅτι οἱ πολέμοι ἡμᾶς |escape  
αὐτοὶ ὀράτε· οἵτινες δὲ ἐν |protection ὄντες |leave out, pass over  
φεύγουσι, |how? why? ∴ τούτους οἶοιτ' ἂν μέναι ἰδόντας  
ἡμᾶς ἐν τῷ |flat spot , οἵτινες δὲ ἡμῶν |untested; ὄντες οὐχ  
|infinite  
|stay behind, await νῦν γ' ἂν |stay behind, await ὃ |(pass) be weaker, be over-  
|come; (active) defeat  
καὶ πολλὰ κακὰ ὑφ' ἡμῶν πεπόνθασιν; ὧν δὲ οἱ |best,  
|noblest  
ἀπολώλασι, πῶς οἱ |oppressed; knav- κείνων μάχεσθαι ἂν  
|ish; useless  
ἡμῖν ἐθέλοιεν; καὶ τις εἶπε· Τί οὖν οὐ |chase ὥς τάχιστα,  
|manifest, γε οὕτω τῶν ἀγαθῶν ὄντων; καὶ ὃς εἶπεν· Ὅτι  
|visible  
ἔππων προσδεόμεθα· οἱ μὲν γὰρ |best τῶν πολεμίων,  
οὓς μάλιστα καιρὸς ἦν ἢ λαβεῖν ἢ |kill , οὔτοι ἐφ'  
ἔππων |carry; be af- οὓς ἡμεῖς |divert μὲν σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς  
|flicted with  
|suffi- , |chase δὲ αἰρεῖν οὐχ |sufficient; fit, ἵν, ἔφασαν,  
|cient; fit, |empowered  
|empow-  
|ered

and long rows of waggons laden with good things. Cyaxares and his Medes followed, and all arms took their breakfast in the camp. But when the meal was over, Cyrus summoned his brigadiers and said to them:

”Think what blessings we are flinging away now, spurning, as it were, the very gifts of heaven! So at least it seems to me. The enemy have given us the slip, as you see with your own eyes. Is it likely that men who forsook the shelter of their own fortress will ever face us in fair field on level ground? Will those who shrink from us before they put our prowess to the test ever withstand us now when we have overthrown and shattered them? They have lost their best and bravest, and will the cowards dare to give us battle?”

At that one of his officers cried, ”Why not pursue at once, if such triumphs are before us?”

And Cyrus answered, ”Because we have not the horses. The stoutest of our enemies, those whom we must seize or slay, are mounted on steeds that could sweep past us like the wind. God helping us, we can

*vocabulary***ἀκίνδυνος** (ὑ) safe**ἄπληστος** insatiable, greedy**διάκειμαι** be in a condition**διακέομαι** repair**διαφυλάσσω** guard, observe**ἐγκρατής** firm, powerful**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable**ἕπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of**εὐδαιμονέω** be lucky, happy**εὐτυχέω** be lucky, prosper, succeed**εὐτυχία** good luck, success**ἡδονή** pleasure**κινδυνεύω** encounter danger; (+inf)

there is a danger that

**μελετάω** pursue, attend to, exercise**παραγίγνομαι** be beside, attend

~genus

**πειράζω** test a person ~pierce**Πέρσης** Persian**συμφέρω** bring together; be expedient; agree; (mp) happen ~bear**σώφρων** sensible, prudent ~frenzy**τοίνυν** well, then

οὐκ ἔλθων Κυαζάρη λέγεις ταῦτα; καὶ ὃς εἶπε· Συνέπεσθε τοῖνυν μοι πάντες, ὥς εἶδῃ ὅτι πᾶσιν ἡμῖν ταῦτα δοκεῖ. ἐκ τούτου εἵποντό τε πάντες καὶ ἔλεγον οἷα ἐπιτήδεια ἐδόκουν εἶναι ὑπὲρ ὧν ἐδέοντο.

Καὶ ὁ Κυαζάρης ἅμα μὲν ὅτι ἐκείνοι ἦρχον τοῦ λόγου, ὥσπερ ὑπεφθόνει· ἅμα δ' ἴσως καλῶς ἔχειν ἐδόκει αὐτῷ μὴ πάλιν κινδυνεύειν· καὶ γὰρ αὐτός τε περὶ εὐθυμίαν ἐτύγχανεν ὧν καὶ τῶν ἄλλων Μήδων ἐώρα πολλοὺς τὸ αὐτὸ ποιοῦντας· εἶπε δ' οὖν ὧδε. Ἄλλ', ὦ Κῦρε, ὅτι μὲν κάλλιστα ἀνθρώπων μελετᾶτε ὑμεῖς οἱ Πέρσαι μηδὲ πρὸς μίαν ἡδονὴν ἀπλήστως διακείσθαι καὶ ὁρῶν καὶ ἀκούων οἶδα· ἐμοὶ δὲ δοκεῖ τῆς μεγίστης ἡδονῆς πολὺν μάλιστα συμφέρειν ἐγκρατὴ εἶναι. μείζω δὲ ἡδονὴν τί παρέχει ἀνθρώποις εὐτυχίας ἢ νῦν ἡμῖν παραγεγένηται; ἦν μὲν τοῖνυν, ἐπεὶ εὐτυχοῦμεν, σωφρόνως διαφυλάττωμεν αὐτήν, ἴσως δυναίμεθ' ἂν ἀκινδύνως εὐδαιμονοῦντες γηρᾶν· εἰ δ' ἀπλήστως χρώμενοι ταύτῃ ἄλλην καὶ ἄλλην πειρασόμεθα διώκειν, ὁρᾶτε μὴ πάθωμεν ἅπερ πολλοὺς



οὐκ ἐλθὼν Κυαξάρη λέγεις ταῦτα; καὶ ὃς εἶπε· Συνέπεσθε  
 |well, then |all πάντες, ὥς εἰδῇ ὅτι πᾶσιν ἡμῖν ταῦτα δοκεῖ.  
 ἐκ τούτου εἶποντό τε πάντες καὶ ἔλεγον οἷα |fit, suitable  
 ἐδόκουν εἶναι ὑπὲρ ὧν ἐδέοντο.

Καὶ ὁ Κυαξάρης ἅμα μὲν ὅτι ἐκείνοι ἦρχον τοῦ λόγου,  
 ὥσπερ ὑπεφθόνει· ἅμα δ' |equal καλῶς ἔχειν ἐδόκει αὐτῷ  
 μὴ πάλιν |encounter danger; (+inf) αὐτός τε περὶ εὐθυμίαν  
 |there is a danger that  
 ἐτύγγανεν ὦν καὶ τῶν ἄλλων Μήδων ἑώρα πολλοὺς τὸ  
 αὐτὸ ποιοῦντας· εἶπε δ' οὖν |thus. Ἄλλ', ὦ Κῦρε, ὅτι μὲν  
 κάλλιστα ἀνθρώπων |pursue, attend ὧς οἱ Πέρσαι |and not; not even  
 |to, exercise  
 μίαν |pleasure |insatiable, διακεῖσθαι καὶ ὁρῶν καὶ ἀκούων  
 |greedy  
 οἶδα· ἐμοὶ δὲ δοκεῖ τῆς μεγίστης |pleasure πολὺ μάλιστα

|bring to-firm, εἶναι. μείζω δὲ |pleasure τί |furnish  
 |gether; be|powerful  
 expedient;  
 agree; (mp) εὐτυχίας ἣ νῦν ἡμῖν |be beside, attend , ἣν  
 |happen  
 μὲν |well, then· τεῖ |be lucky, pros-|sensible, |guard, observe  
 |per, succeed |prudent  
 αὐτήν, |equal δυναίμεθ' ἂν |safe |be lucky, happy  
 γηράν· εἰ δ' |insatiable, χρώμενοι ταύτῃ ἄλλην καὶ ἄλλην  
 |greedy  
 πειρασόμεθα |chase , ὁρᾶτε μὴ πάθωμεν ἅπερ πολλοὺς

put them to flight, but we cannot overtake them.”

”Then,” said they, ”why not go and lay the matter before Cyaxares?”

And he answered, ”If so, you must all go with me, that Cyaxares may see it is the wish of all.”

So they all went together and spoke as they thought best. Now Cyaxares felt, no doubt, a certain jealousy that the Persians should be the first to broach the matter, but he may also have felt that it was really wiser to run no further risks for the present; he had, moreover, abandoned himself to feasting and merrymaking, and he saw that most of his Medes were in like case. Whatever the reason, this was the answer he gave:

”My good nephew, I have always heard and always seen that you Persians of all men think it your duty never to be insatiate in the pursuit of any pleasure; and I myself believe that the greater the joy the more important is self-restraint. Now what greater joy could there be than the good fortune which waits on us to-day? When fortune comes to us, if we guard her with discretion, we may live to grow old in peace, but if we are insatiate, if we use and abuse our pleasures, chasing first one and then another, we may well fear lest that fate be ours which, the proverb tells us, falls on those mariners who cannot forgo their voyages in the

*vocabulary*

άγνοέω be ignorant of ~gnostic  
 άμαχος unconquerable; noncombatant  
 άναγκάζω force, compel  
 άποβάλλω throw away, lose  
 άσφαλής safe, easy, steady, careful  
 έννοέω consider  
 έπειδάν when, after  
 έπιθυμέω (ö) wish, covet  
 έρουμα -τος (n, 3) protection ~serve  
 εύτυχέω be lucky, prosper, succeed  
 έφίημι (τι) send at, let fly; mp: rush at,  
 spring upon ~jet

θηράω hunt, chase  
 ιζω to seat ~sit  
 κατακλείω enclose; shut up  
 κατανοέω notice, realize, learn  
 κινδυνεύω encounter danger; (+inf)  
 there is a danger that  
 νίκη (ι) victory ~Nike  
 πειράζω test a person ~pierce  
 πόστος which in a series of numbers?  
 πρόσθεν before (time, space)  
 προστίθιμι add; impose; (mp) agree;  
 side with ~thesis  
 ύς pig ~sow

μὲν λέγουσιν ἐν θαλάττῃ πεπονθέναι, διὰ τὸ εὐτυχεῖν  
 οὐκ ἐθέλοντας παύσασθαι πλέοντας ἀπολέσθαι· πολλοὺς  
 δὲ νίκης τυχόντας ἐτέρας ἐφιεμένους καὶ τὴν πρόσθεν  
 ἀποβαλεῖν. καὶ γὰρ εἰ μὲν οἱ πολέμιοι ἥττους ὄντες  
 ἡμῶν ἔφευγον, ἴσως ἂν καὶ διώκειν τοὺς ἥττους ἀσφαλῶς  
 εἶχε. νῦν δὲ κατανόησον πόσῳ μέρει αὐτῶν πάντες  
 μαχεσάμενοι νενικήκαμεν· οἱ δ' ἄλλοι ἄμαχοί εἰσιν·  
 οὓς εἰ μὲν μὴ ἀναγκάσομεν μάχεσθαι, ἀγνοοῦντες καὶ  
 ἡμᾶς καὶ ἑαυτοὺς δι' ἀμαθίαν καὶ μαλακίαν ἀπίασιν· εἰ  
 δὲ γνώσονται ὅτι ἀπιόντες οὐδὲν ἥττον κινδυνεύουσιν  
 ἢ μένοντες, ὅπως μὴ ἀναγκάσομεν αὐτούς, κἂν μὴ  
 βούλωνται, ἀγαθοὺς γενέσθαι. ἴσθι γὰρ ὅτι οὐ σὺ μᾶλλον  
 τὰς ἐκείνων γυναῖκας καὶ παῖδας λαβεῖν ἐπιθυμεῖς ἢ  
 ἐκεῖνοι σῶσαι. ἐννόει δ' ὅτι καὶ αἱ σύες ἐπειδὰν ὀφθῶσι,  
 φεύγουσι, κἂν πολλὰ ὦσι, σὺν τοῖς τέκνοις· ἐπειδὰν δέ  
 τις αὐτῶν θηρᾷ τι τῶν τέκνων, οὐκέτι φεύγει οὐδ' ἦν μία  
 τύχη οὔσα, ἀλλ' ἔται ἐπὶ τὸν λαμβάνειν πειρώμενον. καὶ  
 νῦν μὲν κατακλείσαντες ἑαυτοὺς εἰς ἔρυμα παρέσχον ἡμῖν

μὲν λέγουσιν ἐν θαλάττῃ πεπονθέναι, διὰ τὸ |be lucky, prosper,  
 οὐκ ἐθέλοντας |stop |sail, float ἀπολέσθαι· πολλοὺς  
 δὲ |victory γυχόντας ἐτέρας |send flying at :αὶ τὴν πρόσθεν  
 |throw away, lose ἢ γὰρ εἰ μὲν οἱ πολέμοι ἥττους ὄντες  
 ἡμῶν ἔφευγον, |equal ἂν καὶ |chase τοὺς ἥττους ἀσφαλῶς  
 εἶχε. νῦν δὲ |notice, realize, |which in a series |νῦν πάντες  
 |learn |of numbers?  
 μαχεσάμενοι |win, defeat οἱ δ' ἄλλοι |unconquerable;  
 |noncombatant  
 οὕς εἰ μὲν μὴ |force, compel μάχεσθαι, |be ignorant of :αὶ  
 ἡμᾶς καὶ ἑαυτοὺς δι' ἀμαθίαν καὶ μαλακίαν |be absent, go  
 |away, return  
 δὲ γνώσονται ὅτι |be absent, go |δὲν ἥττον |encounter danger; (+inf)  
 |away, return |there is a danger that  
 ἢ μένοντες, ὅπως μὴ |force, compel αὐτούς, κἂν μὴ  
 βούλωνται, ἀγαθοὺς γενέσθαι. ἴσθι γὰρ ὅτι οὐ σὺ μᾶλλον  
 τὰς ἐκείνων γυναῖκας καὶ παῖδας λαβεῖν |wish, covet ἢ  
 ἐκεῖνοι σῶσαι. |consider· ὅτι καὶ αἱ |pig |when, ὀφθῶσι,  
 |after  
 φεύγουσι, κἂν πολλὰ ὦσι, σὺν τοῖς |child |when, δέ  
 |after  
 τις αὐτῶν |hunt, τι τῶν |child , |no more, |εύγει οὐδ' ἦν μία  
 |chase  
 τύχῃ οὔσα, ἀλλ' ἔται ἐπὶ τὸν λαμβάνειν πειρώμενον. καὶ  
 νῦν μὲν |enclose; shut up ἑαυτοὺς εἰς |protec- |furnish ἡμῖν  
 |tion

pursuit of wealth, and one day the deep sea swallows them. Thus has many a warrior achieved one victory only to clutch at another and lose the first. If indeed, our enemies who have fled were weaker than we, it might be safe enough to pursue them. But now, bethink you, how small a portion of them we have fought and conquered; the mass have had no part in the battle, and they, if we do not force them to fight, will take themselves off through sheer cowardice and sloth. As yet they know nothing of our powers or their own, but if they learn that to fly is as dangerous as to hold their ground, we run the risk of driving them to be brave in spite of themselves. You may be sure they are just as anxious to save their wives and children as you can be to capture them. Take a lesson from hunting: the wild sow when she is sighted will scamper away with her young, though she be feeding with the herd; but if you attack her little ones she will never fly, even if she is all alone; she will turn on the hunters. Yesterday the enemy shut

*vocabulary***ἀναγκάζω** force, compel**ἀποσχίζω** sever**ἕζομαι** act: set, seat; pass: sit down, sit up ~sit**ἐναντιόομαι** oppose, contradict**ἐννοέω** consider**ἐξανίστημι** raise, bring/send out**ἕπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of**εὐθυμέω** (ῥ) to be of good cheer**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch, overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy**κινδυνεύω** encounter danger; (+inf) there is a danger that**οἴκαδε** homeward ~economics**ὀπισθεν** behind, hereafter**ὅποσος** as many as, how many, how great**πλάγιος** sideways; treacherous**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near; add ~ion**προσέτι** in addition**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**ταμιεύω** manage, dispense, husband**ὑπολαμβάνω** take under one's support, seize; speak up; imagine ~epilepsy**ὑπολείπω** leave as a leftover; leave a person behind ~eclipse**χαρίζομαι** gratify ~charisma**χωρίς** separately; except, other than ~heir

ταμיעέσθαι ὥσθ' ὅπόσοις ἐβουλόμεθα αὐτῶν μάχεσθαι· εἰ δ' ἐν εὐρυχωρίᾳ πρόσιμεν αὐτοῖς καὶ μαθήσονται χωρὶς γενόμενοι οἱ μὲν κατὰ πρόσωπον ἡμῖν ὥσπερ καὶ νῦν ἐναντιοῦσθαι, οἱ δ' ἐκ πλαγίου, οἱ δὲ καὶ ὀπισθεν, ὅρα μὴ πολλῶν ἐκάστω ἡμῶν χειρῶν δεήσει καὶ ὀφθαλμῶν. προσέτι δ' οὐδ' ἂν ἐθέλοιμ', ἔφη, ἐγὼ νῦν, ὁρῶν Μήδους εὐθυμουμένους, ἐξαναστήσας ἀναγκάζειν κινδυνεύοντας ἵεναι.

Καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ὑπολαβὼν εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ σύγε μηδένα ἀναγκάσης, ἀλλὰ τοὺς ἐθέλοντάς μοι ἔπεσθαι δός· καὶ ἴσως ἂν σοὶ καὶ τῶν σῶν φίλων τούτων ἤκοιμεν ἐκάστω ἄγοντες ἐφ' οἷς ἅπαντες εὐθυμήσεσθε. τὸ μὲν γὰρ πλήθος ἡμεῖς γε τῶν πολεμίων οὐδὲ διωζόμεθα· πῶς γὰρ ἂν καὶ καταλάβοιμεν; ἦν δέ τι ἢ ἀπεσχισμένον τοῦ στρατεύματος λάβωμεν ἢ τι ὑπολειπόμενον, ἥξομεν πρὸς σὲ ἄγοντες. ἐννόει δ', ἔφη, ὅτι καὶ ἡμεῖς, ἐπεὶ σὺ ἐδέου, ἤλθομεν σοὶ χαριζόμενοι μακρὰν ὁδόν· καὶ σὺ οὖν ἡμῖν δίκαιος εἰ ἀντιχαρίζεσθαι, ἵνα καὶ ἔχοντές τι οἴκαδ' ἀφικώμεθα



|manage, dis-<sup>σθ</sup> |as/how many/great, *ἔθα αὐτῶν μάχεσθαι*  
 |pense, husband

*εἰ δ' ἐν εὐρυχωρίᾳ* |approach *αὐτοῖς καὶ* |learn |separately; except,  
 |other than

*γενόμενοι οἱ μὲν κατὰ* |face *ἡμῖν ὥσπερ καὶ νῦν*

|oppose, , οἱ δ' ἐκ πλαγίου, οἱ δὲ καὶ |behind, , ὅρα  
 |contradict |hereafter

*μὴ πολλῶν ἐκάστω ἡμῶν χειρῶν δεήσει καὶ* |eye

|in addition<sup>οὐδ' ἂν ἐθέλομι</sup>, ἔφη, ἐγὼ νῦν, ὁρῶν *Μήδους*

|to be of good cheer|raise, bring/send|force, compel |encounter danger; (+inf) there  
 |out |is a danger that  
*ιέναι.*

*Καὶ ὁ Κῦρος* |take under one's support, *λὰ σύγε μηδένα*  
 |seize; speak up; imagine

|force, compel, *ἀλλὰ τοὺς ἐθέλοντάς μοι ἔπεσθαι δός· καὶ*

*ἴσως ἂν σοὶ καὶ τῶν σῶν φίλων τούτων ἥκοιμεν ἐκάστω*

*ἄγοντες ἐφ' οἷς ἅπαντες* |to be of good cheer *ἐν γὰρ* |numerical  
 |superiority

*ἡμεῖς γε τῶν πολεμίων οὐδὲ* |chase |how? why?<sup>ν</sup> καὶ

|seize, understand, <sup>catch, over-</sup>sever *τοῦ* |army  
 |take; (mp) happen

*λάβωμεν ἢ τι* |leave (food, person)|be present, <sup>s</sup> *σὲ ἄγοντες.*  
 |have arrived

|consider<sup>οὐ</sup>, ἔφη, ὅτι καὶ ἡμεῖς, ἐπεὶ σὺ ἐδέου, ἤλθομεν σοὶ

|gratify *μακρὰν ὁδόν· καὶ σὺ οὖν ἡμῖν δίκαιος εἶ*

*ἀντιχαρίζεσθαι, ἵνα καὶ ἔχοντές τι* |home- |arrive  
 |ward

themselves up in a fort, and then handed themselves over to us to choose how many we cared to fight. But if we meet them in open country, and they learn how to divide their forces and take us in front and flank and rear, I wonder how many pairs of eyes and hands each man of us would need! Finally," he added, "I have no great wish myself to disturb my Medes in their enjoyment, and drive them out to further dangers."

Then Cyrus took him up: "Nay, I would not have you put pressure on any man; only let those who are willing follow me, and perhaps we shall come back with something for all of you to enjoy. The mass of the enemy we should not think of pursuing; indeed, how could we overtake them? But if we cut off any stragglers, we could clap hands on them and bring them back to you. Remember," he added, "when you sent for us, we came a long way to do you service; is it not fair that you should do us a kindness in return, and let us have something to take back with

*vocabulary*

**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise  
 ~angel  
**ἀπολείβω** drip off of  
**ἀπολείπω** leave behind, fail ~eclipse  
**ἀπολιμπάνω** leave behind, fail  
**δηλώω** show, disclose  
**ἐκπέμπω** send forth ~pomp  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐξάγω** lead out ~demagogue  
**ἔξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion  
**ἐπιστέλλω** send to, order  
**ἐπόμενυμι** (ὅ) swear by  
**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of

**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism  
**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism  
**θεάομαι** look at, behold, consider  
 ~theater  
**θησαυρός** treasury ~treasure  
**ναός** (ᾱ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia  
**νῆ** yea  
**οὐχουν** certainly not  
**οὐχοῦν** not so?; and so  
**πρόθυμος** (ὁ) willing, eager ~fume  
**προστίθηναι** add; impose; (mp) agree;  
 side with ~thesis  
**συγγενής** inborn, kin to  
**συμπέμπω** send with ~pomp  
**τοίνυν** well, then

καὶ μὴ εἰς τὸν σὸν θησαυρὸν πάντες ὀρώμεν. ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἔλεξεν ὁ Κυμαξάρης· Ἄλλ' εἴ γε μέντοι ἐθέλων τις ἔποιτο, καὶ χάριν ἔγωγέ σοι εἰδείην ἄν. Σύμπεμψον τοίνυν μοί τινα, ἔφη, τῶν ἀξιοπίστων τούτων, ὃς ἐρεῖ ἃ ἂν σὺ ἐπιστείλῃς. Λαβὼν δὴ ἴθι, ἔφη, ὅντινα ἐθέλεις τουτωνί· ἔνθα δὴ ἔτυχε παρὼν ὁ φήσας ποτὲ συγγενὴς αὐτοῦ εἶναι καὶ φιληθείς. εὐθὺς οὖν ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν· Ἀρκεῖ μοι, ἔφη, οὐτοσί. Οὗτος τοίνυν σοι ἐπέσθω. καὶ λέγε σύ, ἔφη, τὸν ἐθέλοντα ἵεναι μετὰ Κύρου. οὕτω δὴ λαβὼν τὸν ἄνδρα ἐξήει. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐξήλθον, ὁ Κῦρος εἶπε· Νῦν δὴ σὺ δηλώσεις εἰ ἀληθῆ ἔλεγες, ὅτε ἔφης ἠδεσθαι θεώμενος ἐμέ. Οὐκ οὖν ἀπολείβομαί γέ σου, ἔφη ὁ Μῆδος, εἰ τοῦτο λέγεις. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν· Οὐκοῦν καὶ ἄλλους, ἔφη, προθύμως ἐξάξεις; ἐπομόσας οὖν ἐκεῖνος Νῆ τὸν Δί', ἔφη, ἔστε γ' ἂν ποιήσω καὶ σὲ ἐμὲ ἠδέως θεᾶσθαι. τότε δὴ καὶ ἐκπεμφθεὶς ὑπὸ τοῦ Κυμαξάρου τά τε ἄλλα προθύμως ἀπήγγελλε τοῖς Μήδοις καὶ προσετίθει ὅτι αὐτός γε οὐκ ἀπολείβοιτο ἀνδρὸς καλλίστου καὶ ἀρίστου, καὶ τὸ μέγιστον, ἀπὸ θεῶν

καὶ μὴ εἰς τὸν σὸν |treasury πάντες ὁρῶμεν. |there, here ὃ  
 ἔλεξεν ὁ Κναζάρης· Ἄλλ' εἴ γε |however ἠέλων τις ἔποιτο,  
 καὶ |grace ἔγωγέ σοι εἰδείην ἄν. |συμπέμπω?: |well, then ἢ  
 |send with; or  
 τινα, ἔφη, τῶν ἀξιοπίστων τούτων |συμπέμπω?:  
 |send with ἐρεῖ ἃ ἂν σὺ  
 |send to, order λαβὼν δὴ ἴθι, ἔφη, ὅντινα ἐθέλεις τουτωνί·  
 ἔνθα δὴ ἔτυχε παρῶν ὁ φήσας ποτὲ |inborn, kin to· τοῦ εἶναι  
 καὶ |love . εὐθὺς οὖν ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν· Ἀρκεῖ μοι, ἔφη,  
 οὕτοσί. Οὗτος |well, then ἢ ἐπέσθω. καὶ λέγε σύ, ἔφη,  
 τὸν ἐθέλοντα ἵεναι μετὰ Κύρου. οὕτω δὴ λαβὼν τὸν  
 ἄνδρα |go forth; εἰ δ' ἐξῆλθον, ὁ Κῦρος εἶπε· Νῦν δὴ σὺ  
 |is possible  
 δηλώσεις εἰ |true; ἔλεγες, ὅτε ἔφης |ἡδομαι?: ἢ -be pleased, enjoy; or  
 |careful |ἡδομαι?: be pleased, enjoy  
 |certainly not λείψομαί γέ σου, ἔφη ὁ Μῆδος, εἰ τοῦτο λέγεις.  
 καὶ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν· |not so?; and so ἄλλους, ἔφη, |willing,  
 |eager  
 |lead out, |swear by οὖν ἐκεῖνος Νῆ τὸν Δί, ἔφη, ἔστε γ' ἂν  
 ποιήσω καὶ σὲ ἐμὲ |sweet θεᾶσθαι. τότε δὴ καὶ |send forth  
 ὑπὸ τοῦ Κναζάρου τά τε ἄλλα |willing, |announce, or-  
 |eager |der, promise  
 τοῖς Μήδοις καὶ |add; impose; (mp) τὸς γε οὐκ ἀπολεύφοιτο  
 |agree; side with  
 ἀνδρὸς καλλίστου καὶ ἀρίστου, καὶ τὸ μέγιστον, ἀπὸ θεῶν

us for ourselves, and not stand here agape at all your treasures?"

At that Cyaxares answered, "Ah, if any will follow you of their own free will, I can but be most grateful."

"Send some one with me then," said Cyrus, "from these trusty men of yours, to carry your commands."

"Take whomever you like," he answered, "and begone."

Now, as it chanced, among the officers present was the Mede who had claimed kinship with Cyrus long ago and won a kiss thereby. Cyrus pointed to him and said, "That man will do for me." "He shall go with you then," Cyaxares replied. And turning to the officer, "Tell your fellows," he said, "that he who lists may follow Cyrus." Thus Cyrus chose his man and went forth. And when they were outside he said, "To-day you can show me if you spoke truth long ago when you told me that the sight of me was your joy."

"If you say that," said the Mede, "I will never leave you."

"And will you not do your best," added Cyrus, "to bring me others too?" "By the gods in heaven," cried the Mede, "that I will, until you say in your turn that to see me is your joy." Thereupon, with the authority of Cyaxares to support him, the officer went to the Medes and delivered with message with all diligence, adding that he for one would never forsake Cyrus, the bravest, noblest, and best of men, and a hero whose lineage

*vocabulary***ἄμαξα** wagon**ἄτε** as if; since**ἄω** aor: to sate ~sate**ἐννοέω** consider**ἡσάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat**οἰκέτης** -ου (m, f) household; house slave**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics**ὄμορος** bordering**ὀπισθεν** behind, hereafter**ὀπισθοφυλακέω** guard the rear**πόνος** toil, suffering ~osteopenia**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war, campaign ~strategy**ὑπήκοος** heeding, subject**φείδομαι** spare, not use/harm ~aphid**χίλιοι** (ι) thousand ~kilo-

γεγονότος.

#### 4.2

Πράττοντος δὲ τοῦ Κύρου ταῦτα θείως πως ἀφικνούνται ἀπὸ Ὑρκανίων ἄγγελοι. οἱ δὲ Ὑρκάνιοι ὅμοροι μὲν τῶν Ἀσσυρίων εἰσίν, ἔθνος δ' οὐ πολὺ, διὸ καὶ ὑπήκοοι ἦσαν τῶν Ἀσσυρίων· εὖιπποι δὲ καὶ τότε ἐδόκουν εἶναι καὶ νῦν ἔτι δοκοῦσιν· διὸ καὶ ἐχρῶντο αὐτοῖς οἱ Ἀσσύριοι ὥσπερ καὶ οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι τοῖς Σκιρίταις, οὐδὲν φειδόμενοι αὐτῶν οὔτ' ἐν πόνοις οὔτ' ἐν κινδύνοις· καὶ δὴ καὶ τότε ὀπισθοφυλακεῖν ἐκέλευον αὐτοὺς ὡς χιλίους ἱππέας ὄντας, ὅπως εἴ τι ὀπισθεν δεινὸν εἴη, ἐκείνοι πρὸ αὐτῶν τοῦτ' ἔχοιεν. οἱ δὲ Ὑρκάνιοι, ἅτε μέλλοντες ὕστατοι πορεύεσθαι, καὶ τὰς ἀμάξας τὰς ἑαυτῶν καὶ τοὺς οἰκέτας ὑστάτους εἶχον. στρατεύονται γὰρ δὴ οἱ κατὰ τὴν Ἀσίαν ἔχοντες οἱ πολλοὶ μεθ' ὧνπερ καὶ οἰκοῦσι· καὶ τότε δὴ ἐστρατεύοντο οὕτως οἱ Ὑρκάνιοι. ἐννοηθέντες δὲ οἷά τε πάσχουσιν ὑπὸ τῶν Ἀσσυρίων καὶ ὅτι νῦν τεθναίῃ μὲν ὁ ἄρχων αὐτῶν, ἡττημένοι δ' εἶεν, φόβος



γεγονότος.

#### 4.2

Πράττοντος δὲ τοῦ Κύρου ταῦτα |divine; |some-|arrive  
 |uncle |how  
 ἀπὸ Ὑρκανίων |messenger οἱ δὲ Ὑρκάνιοι |bordering ἐν τῶν  
 Ἀσσυρίων εἰσίν, |tribe δ' οὐ πολὺ, |because |heeding, ἦσαν  
 |of which |subject  
 τῶν Ἀσσυρίων· εὐῖπποι δὲ καὶ τότε ἐδόκουν εἶναι καὶ νῦν  
 ἔτι δοκοῦσιν· |because of |which |αὐτοῖς οἱ Ἀσσύριοι ὥσπερ  
 καὶ οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι τοῖς Σκιρίταις, οὐδὲν |spare  
 αὐτῶν οὔτ' ἐν |toil, suffering' ἐν |danger καὶ δὴ καὶ  
 τότε |guard the rear ἐκέλευον αὐτοὺς ὡς χιλίους |rider  
 ὄντας, ὅπως εἴ τι |behind, δεινὸν εἴη, ἐκείνοι |before, τῶν  
 |hereafter |forward  
 τοῦτ' ἔχοιεν. οἱ δὲ Ὑρκάνιοι, ἅτε μέλλοντες |later, last  
 πορεύεσθαι, καὶ τὰς |wagon τὰς ἐαυτῶν καὶ τοὺς |household;  
 |house slave  
 |later, last εἶχον. |make an expedition, δὴ οἱ κατὰ τὴν Ἀσίαν  
 |war, campaign  
 ἔχοντες οἱ πολλοὶ μεθ' ὧν περ καὶ |inhabit καὶ τότε δὴ  
 |make an expedition, ὡς οἱ Ὑρκάνιοι. |consider δὲ οἶά τε  
 |war, campaign  
 πάσχουσιν ὑπὸ τῶν Ἀσσυρίων καὶ ὅτι νῦν τεθναίῃ μὲν ὁ  
 ἄρχων αὐτῶν, |(pass) be weaker, be |fear  
 |overcome; (active)  
 |defeat

was divine.

#### 4.2

While Cyrus was busied with these matters, by some strange chance two ambassadors arrived from the Hyrcanians. These people are neighbours of the Assyrians, and being few in number, they were held in subjection. But they seemed then, as they seem now, to live on horseback. Hence the Assyrians used them as the Lacedaemonians employ the Skirites, for every toil and every danger, without sparing them. In fact, at that very moment they had ordered them to furnish a rear-guard of a thousand men and more, so as to bear the brunt of any rear attack. The Hyrcanians, as they were to be the hindmost, had put their waggons and families in the rear, for, like most of the tribes in Asia, they take their entire households with them on the march. But when they thought of the sorry treatment they got from the Assyrians and when they saw the king fallen, the army worsted and a prey to panic,

*vocabulary***ἀγρυπνέω** lie awake**ἄθυμος** (ῥ) having low morale ~fume**ἄμαξα** wagon**ἀποδιδράσκω** escape**ἀπολείπω** leave behind, fail ~eclipse**ἀπολιμπάνω** leave behind, fail**αὐξάνω** strengthen**αὔριον** tomorrow**διηγέομαι** detail, describe**ἐνιμι** be in ~ion**ἐνθυμέομαι** (ῥ) take to heart**ἐνίημι** put in; motivate ~jet**ἐπαίρω** lift, raise ~heresy**ἐπέρομαι** ask as well; ask then**ἔρουμα** -τος (n, 3) protection ~serve**εὐζωνος** well-girded ~zone**ἔωθεν** at first light**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch, overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy**μισέω** (ι) hate, wish to prevent

~misogyny

**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war, campaign ~strategy**συμφορά** collecting; accident, misfortune**σχολή** rest, leisure

δ' ἐνείη τῷ στρατεύματι, οἱ δὲ σύμμαχοι αὐτῶν ὥς  
 ἀθύμως ἔχοιεν καὶ ἀπολείποιεν, ταῦτα ἐνθυμουμένοις  
 ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς νῦν καλὸν εἶναι ἀποστῆναι, εἰ θέλοιεν οἱ  
 ἀμφὶ Κῦρον συνεπιθέσθαι. καὶ πέμπουσιν ἀγγέλους πρὸς  
 Κῦρον· ἀπὸ γὰρ τῆς μάχης τὸ τούτου ὄνομα μέγιστον  
 ἠϋξήτο. οἱ δὲ πεμφθέντες λέγουσι Κύρῳ ὅτι μισοῖέν τε  
 τοὺς Ἀσσυρίους δικαίως, νῦν τ', εἰ βούλοιτο ἵεναι ἐπ'  
 αὐτούς, καὶ σφεῖς σύμμαχοι ὑπάρξοιεν καὶ ἡγήσονται· ἅμα  
 δὲ πρὸς τούτοις διηγοῦντο τὰ τῶν πολεμίων ὥς ἔχοι,  
 ἐπαίρειν βουλόμενοι μάλιστα στρατεύεσθαι αὐτόν. καὶ  
 ὁ Κῦρος ἐπήρετο αὐτούς· Καὶ δοκεῖτε ἄν, ἔφη, ἔτι ἡμᾶς  
 καταλαβεῖν αὐτοὺς πρὶν ἐν τοῖς ἐρύμασιν εἶναι; ἡμεῖς μὲν  
 γάρ, ἔφη, μάλα συμφορὰν τοῦτο ἡγούμεθα ὅτι ἔλαθον  
 ἡμᾶς ἀποδράντες. ταῦτα δ' ἔλεγε βουλόμενος αὐτοὺς ὥς  
 μέγιστον φρονεῖν ἐπὶ σφίσιν. οἱ δὲ ἀπεκρίναντο ὅτι καὶ  
 αὔριον, ἔωθεν εἰ εὐζωνοὶ πορεύοιντο, καταλήψονται· ὑπὸ  
 γὰρ τοῦ ὄχλου καὶ τῶν ἀμαξῶν σχολῇ πορεύεσθαι αὐτούς·  
 καὶ ἅμα, ἔφασαν, τὴν προτέραν νύκτα ἀγρυπνήσαντες

δ' ἐνείη τῷ |army , οἱ δὲ σύμμαχοι αὐτῶν ὥς  
 |having low morale :αὶ ἀπολείπειν, ταῦτα |take to heart  
 ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς νῦν καλὸν εἶναι |stand apart; |θέλοιεν οἱ  
 |exact payment  
 ἀμφὶ Κῦρον συνεπιθέσθαι. καὶ πέμπουσιν |messenger πρὸς  
 Κῦρον· ἀπὸ γὰρ τῆς μάχης τὸ τούτου ὄνομα μέγιστον  
 |strengthen ἵ δὲ πεμφθέντες λέγουσι Κύρῳ ὅτι |hate τε  
 τοὺς Ἀσσυρίους δικαίως, νῦν τ', εἰ βούλοιτο ἰέναι ἐπ'  
 αὐτούς, καὶ σφεῖς σύμμαχοι |there is καὶ ἡγήσονται· ἅμα  
 δὲ πρὸς τούτοις |detail, τὰ τῶν πολεμίων ὥς ἔχοι,  
 |describe  
 |lift, raise βουλόμενοι μάλιστα |make an expedition, ὄν. καὶ  
 |war, campaign  
 ὁ Κῦρος |ask as well; ἵτους· Καὶ δοκεῖτε ἄν, ἔφη, ἔτι ἡμᾶς  
 |ask then  
 |seize, understand, catch, |before, |protection εἶναι; ἡμεῖς μὲν  
 |overtake; (mp) happen |formerly;  
 γάρ, ἔφη, μάλα |collecting; |negated: until  
 |accident, misfortune το ἡγούμεθα ὅτι |escape notice;  
 |(mp+gen) forget  
 ἡμᾶς |escape . ταῦτα δ' ἔλεγε βουλόμενος αὐτοὺς ὥς  
 μέγιστον |think, be wise φίσιν. οἱ δὲ |to separate; reject; (mp) answer, de-  
 |fend oneself  
 |tomor- |at first |well-girded ορεύονται, καταλήψονται· ὑπὸ  
 |row |light  
 γὰρ τοῦ |mob, |crowd; |wagon |rest, πορεύεσθαι αὐτούς·  
 |trouble |leisure  
 καὶ ἅμα, ἔφασαν, τὴν προτέραν νύκτα |lie awake

the allies disheartened and ready to desert, they judged it a fine moment to revolt themselves, if only the Medes and Persians would make common cause with them. So they sent an embassy to Cyrus, for after the late battle there was no name like his. They told him what good cause they had to hate the Assyrians, and how if he was willing to attack them now, they themselves would be his allies and show him the way. At the same time they gave a full account of the enemy's doings, being eager to get Cyrus on the road. "Do you think," said Cyrus, "we should overtake the Assyrians before they reach their fortresses? We look on it as a great misfortune," he added, "that they ever slipped through our fingers and escaped." (This he said, wishing to give his hearers as high an opinion as possible of himself and his friends.) "You should certainly catch them," they answered, "and that tomorrow, ere the day is old, if you gird up your loins: they move heavily because of their numbers and their train of waggons, and to-day, since they did not sleep last night, they have only gone

*vocabulary***ἀγάζω** exalt, adore**ἀληθεύω** speak truth; be true**δειπνέω** eat, dine**δεξιὰ** right-hand ~dextrous**εἰκός** likely**ἐμπεδώνω** confirm, ratify**ἐξάγω** lead out ~demagogue**ἔξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion**θήρα** hunt ~fierce**μείων** less, smaller**ὄμηρος** insurance, hostage**περιμένω** wait for**Πέρσης** Persian**πιστός** faithful; trustworthy**πιστόω** reassure; also (pass) promise**προέρχομαι** proceed, come out**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**στρατοπεδεύω** encamp or take up station ~strategy**συγγίγνομαι** associate with, meet, have sex ~genus**φάος** φῶς (n, 3) light; salvation; (pl)

eyes ~photon

νῦν μικρὸν προελθόντες ἐστρατοπέδευνται. καὶ ὁ Κῦρος ἔφη· Ἔχετε οὖν ὧν λέγετε πιστόν τι ἡμᾶς διδάσκειν ὥς ἀληθεύετε; Ὅμηρους γ', ἔφασαν, ἐθέλομεν αὐτίκα ἐλάσαντες τῆς νυκτὸς ἀγαγεῖν· μόνον καὶ σὺ ἡμῖν πιστὰ θεῶν πεποιήσο καὶ δεξιὰν δός, ἵνα φέρωμεν καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις τὰ αὐτὰ ἅπερ ἂν αὐτοὶ λάβωμεν παρὰ σοῦ. ἐκ τούτου τὰ πιστὰ δίδωσιν αὐτοῖς ἡ μήν, ἐὰν ἐμπεδώσωσιν ἃ λέγουσιν, ὥς φίλοις καὶ πιστοῖς χρήσεσθαι αὐτοῖς, ὥς μήτε Περσῶν μήτε Μήδων μείον ἔχειν παρ' ἑαυτῷ. καὶ νῦν ἔστιν ἔτι ἰδεῖν Ὑρκανίους καὶ πιστευομένους καὶ ἀρχὰς ἔχοντας, ὥσπερ καὶ Περσῶν καὶ Μήδων οἱ ἂν δοκῶσιν ἄξιοι εἶναι.

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐδείπνησαν, ἐξῆγε τὸ στράτευμα ἔτι φάους ὄντος, καὶ τοὺς Ὑρκανίους περιμένειν ἐκέλευσεν, ἵνα ἅμα ἵοιεν. οἱ μὲν δὴ Πέρσαι, ὥσπερ εἰκός, πάντες ἐξῆσαν, καὶ Τιγράνης ἔχων τὸ αὐτοῦ στράτευμα· τῶν δὲ Μήδων ἐξῆσαν οἱ μὲν διὰ τὸ παιδὶ ὄντι Κύρῳ παῖδες ὄντες φίλοι γενέσθαι, οἱ δὲ διὰ τὸ ἐν θήραις συγγενόμενοι ἀγασθῆναι αὐτοῦ τὸν



νῦν |small |proceed, come|encamp or take up καὶ ὁ Κῦρος  
 |out |station  
 ἔφη· Ἔχετε οὖν ὦν λέγετε |faithful; ἡμᾶς |teach  
 |trustworthy  
 ὥς |speak |insurance, γ', ἔφασαν, ἐθέλομεν |at once  
 |truth; be |hostage  
 |true  
 |drive τῆς νυκτὸς ἀγαγεῖν· μόνον καὶ σὺ ἡμῖν |faithful;  
 |trustworthy  
 θεῶν πεποιήσο καὶ δεξιὰν δός, ἵνα φέρωμεν καὶ τοῖς  
 ἄλλοις τὰ αὐτὰ ἅπερ ἂν αὐτοὶ λάβωμεν παρὰ σοῦ. ἐκ  
 τούτου τὰ |faithful; ---σιν αὐτοῖς ἡ μὴν, ἐὰν |confirm, ratify  
 |trustworthy  
 ἂ λέγουσιν, ὥς φίλοις καὶ πιστοῖς χρήσεσθαι αὐτοῖς, ὥς  
 |neither Ἑρσῶν |neither Ἥδων |less, ἔχειν παρ' ἐαυτῷ. καὶ νῦν  
 |smaller  
 ἔστιν ἔτι ἰδεῖν Ὑρκανίους καὶ πιστευομένους καὶ ἀρχὰς  
 ἔχοντας, ὥσπερ καὶ Περσῶν καὶ Μήδων οἳ ἂν δοκῶσιν  
 |worthy ἵναι.

Ἐπεὶ δ' |eat, dine |lead out |army ἔτι |light; ἡ sal-  
 |vation; (pl)  
 καὶ τοὺς Ὑρκανίους |wait for ἐκέλευσεν, ἵνα ἅμα ἴοιεν. οἱ  
 μὲν δὲ Πέρσαι, ὥσπερ |likely, πάντες |go forth; αὐτὴ Τιγράνης  
 |is possible  
 ἔχων τὸ αὐτοῦ |army τῶν δὲ Μήδων |go forth; μὲν  
 |is possible  
 διὰ τὸ παιδὶ ὄντι Κύρῳ παῖδες ὄντες φίλοι γενέσθαι, οἳ δὲ  
 διὰ τὸ ἐν |hunt |associate with|exalt, adore αὐτοῦ τὸν  
 |meet, have sex

a little way ahead, and are now encamped for the evening.”

”Can you give us any guarantee,” said Cyrus, ”that what you say is true?”

”We will give you hostages,” they said; ”we will ride off at once and bring them back this very night. Only do you on your side call the gods to witness and give us the pledge of your own right hand, that we may give our people the assurance we have received from you ourselves.”

Thereupon Cyrus gave them his pledge that if they would make good what they promised he would treat them as his true friends and faithful followers, of no less account than the Persians and the Medes. And to this day one may see Hyrcanians treated with trust and holding office on an equal footing with Persians and Medes of high distinction.

Now Cyrus and his men took their supper and then while it was still daylight he led his army out, having made the two Hyrcanians wait so that they might go with them. The Persians, of course, were with him to a man, and Tigranes was there, with his own contingent, and the Median volunteers, who had joined for various reasons. Some had been friends of Cyrus in boyhood, others had hunted with him and learnt to admire his

*vocabulary*

**ἀπελαύνω** expel, exclude, ward off;  
(intrans) ride away

**ἄτε** as if; since

**ἄω** aor: to sate ~sate

**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish  
~practice

**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse

**ἐθελούσιος** voluntary, optional

**ἔξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion

**ἐξορμάω** veer off course ~hormone

**ἐπαινέω** concur, praise, advise

**ἐπεύχομαι** exult (over); pray ~vow

**εὐτυχής** fortunate

**ἔλεως** propitious, gracious

**ἰσχυρός** (ῥ) strong, forceful, violent  
**καθίημι** (ιι) speed down upon; take  
down ~jet

**καταμένω** stay; not change

**πάππος** grandfather

**προθυμία** (ῥ) zeal, alacrity ~fume

**πρόθυμος** (ῥ) willing, eager ~fume

**σκηνέω** camp

**σκηνόω** camp

**συμπράσσω** cooperate

**σχεδόν** near, approximately at  
~ischemia

**ὑπήκοος** heeding, subject

**φαιδρός** beaming ~photon

**φιλανθρωπία** benevolence

τρόπον, οἱ δὲ διὰ τὸ καὶ χάριν εἰδέναι ὅτι μέγαν αὐτοῖς φόβον ἀπεληλακέναι ἐδόκει, οἱ δὲ καὶ ἐλπίδας ἔχοντες, διὰ τὸ ἄνδρα φαίνεσθαι ἀγαθὸν καὶ εὐτυχῇ, καὶ μέγαν ἔτι ἰσχυρῶς ἔσεσθαι αὐτόν, οἱ δέ, ὅτε ἐτρέφετο ἐν Μήδοις, εἴ τι ἀγαθὸν τῷ συνέπραξεν, ἀντιχαρίζεσθαι ἐβούλοντο· πολλοῖς δὲ πολλὰ διὰ φιланθρωπίαν παρὰ τοῦ πάππου ἀγαθὰ διεπέπρακτο· πολλοὶ δ', ἐπεὶ καὶ τοὺς Ὑρκανίους εἶδον καὶ λόγος διήλθεν ὥς ἡγήσονται ἐπὶ πολλὰ ἀγαθὰ, ἐξῆσαν καὶ τοῦ λαβεῖν τι ἔνεκα. οὕτω δὲ ἐξῆλθον σχεδὸν ἅπαντες καὶ οἱ Μῆδοι πλὴν ὅσοι σὺν Κναξάρῃ ἔτυχον σκηνοῦντες· οὗτοι δὲ κατέμενον καὶ οἱ τούτων ὑπήκοοι. οἱ δ' ἄλλοι πάντες φαιδρῶς καὶ προθύμως ἐξωρμῶντο, ἅτε οὐκ ἀνάγκη ἀλλ' ἐθελούσιοι καὶ χάριτος ἔνεκα ἐξιόντες. ἐπεὶ δ' ἐξω ἦσαν, πρῶτον μὲν πρὸς τοὺς Μήδους ἐλθὼν ἐπήγεσέ τε αὐτοὺς καὶ ἐπηύξατο μάλιστα μὲν θεοὺς αὐτοῖς ἴλεως ἡγεῖσθαι καὶ σφίσιν, ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς δυνασθῆναι χάριν αὐτοῖς ταύτης τῆς προθυμίας ἀποδοῦναι. τέλος δ' εἶπεν ὅτι ἡγήσονται μὲν αὐτοῖς οἱ

τρόπον, οἱ δὲ διὰ τὸ καὶ |grace εἰδέναι ὅτι μέγαν αὐτοῖς

|fear |expel, exclude, ward off; , οἱ δὲ καὶ |hope ἔχοντες,  
|(intrans) ride away

διὰ τὸ ἄνδρα φαίνεσθαι ἀγαθὸν καὶ |fortunate :αὶ μέγαν ἔτι

|strong, force- σθαι αὐτόν, οἱ δέ, ὅτε |nurture ἐν Μήδοις,  
ful, violent

εἴ τι ἀγαθὸν τῷ |cooperate , ἀντιχαρίζεσθαι ἐβούλοντο·

πολλοῖς δὲ πολλὰ διὰ |benevolence παρὰ τοῦ |grandfather

ἀγαθὰ |travel over, ac- πολλοὶ δ', ἐπεὶ καὶ τοὺς Ὑρκανίους  
|comply

εἶδον καὶ λόγος |pierce, ὥς ἡγήσονται ἐπὶ πολλὰ ἀγαθὰ,  
|traverse

|go forth; ἢ τοῦ λαβεῖν τι ἔνεκα. οὕτω δὲ ἐξῆλθον |about  
|is possible

ἅπαντες καὶ οἱ Μῆδοι |except ὅσοι σὺν Κναξάρῃ ἔτυχον

σκηνοῦντες· οὗτοι δὲ κατέμενον καὶ οἱ τούτων |heeding, . οἱ  
|subject

δ' ἄλλοι πάντες |beaming καὶ |willing, |veer off course ἵτε  
|eager

οὐκ |necessity ἀλλ' |voluntary, καὶ |grace ἔνεκα |go forth;  
|optional |is possible

ἐπεὶ δ' ἔξω ἦσαν, πρῶτον μὲν πρὸς τοὺς Μήδους ἐλθὼν

|concur τε αὐτοὺς καὶ |exult (over); pray ἡ μὲν θεοὺς αὐτοῖς

|propitiōus, ἵσθαι καὶ σφίσιν, ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς δυνασθῆναι  
|gracious

|grace αὐτοῖς ταύτης τῆς προθυμίας |repay . |end δ'

εἶπεν ὅτι ἡγήσονται μὲν αὐτοῖς οἱ

character, others were grateful, feeling he had lifted a load of fear from them, others were flushed with hope, nothing doubting that great things were reserved for the man who had proved so brave and so fortunate already. Others remembered the time when he was brought up in Media, and were glad to return the kindnesses that he had shown them; many could recall the favours the boy had won for them from his grandfather through his sheer goodness of heart; and many, now that they had seen the Hyrcanians and heard say they were leading them to untold treasures, went out from simple love of gain. So they sallied forth, the entire body of the Persians and all the Medes, except those who were quartered with Cyaxares: these stayed behind, and their men with them. But all the rest went out with radiant faces and eager hearts, not following him from constraint, but offering willing service in their gratitude. So, as soon as they were well afield, Cyrus went to the Medes and thanked them, praying that the gods in their mercy might guide them all, and that he himself might have power given him to reward their zeal. He ended by saying that the infantry would

*vocabulary***ἀληθεύω** speak truth; be true**ἀναμένω** wait for ~remain**ἀναπαύω** cause to cease ~pause**ἐντέλλω** (mp) command**ἐξαπατάω** trick, cheat ~apatosaurus**ἐπειδάν** when, after**ἐπέχω** hold, cover; offer; assail**ἐπίσχω** aim; restrain**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of**ἑρωτάω** ask about something**ἡώς ἡῶθι** (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene**καίριος** deadly**ὄμηρος** insurance, hostage**ὅπου** where**παρελαύνω** pass, outstrip ~elastic**πιστός** faithful; trustworthy**πορεία** gait, march**ρῶμη** strength, might**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark  
~semaphore**ὕμέτερος** (ῶ) yours**φείδομαι** spare, not use/harm ~aphid

πεζοί, ἐκείνους δ' ἔπεσθαι σὺν τοῖς ἵπποις ἐκέλευσε· καὶ  
 ὅπου ἂν ἀναπαύωνται ἢ ἐπίσχωσι τῆς πορείας, ἐντείλατο  
 αὐτοῖς πρὸς αὐτὸν παρελαύνειν τινάς, ἵνα εἰδῶσι τὸ αἰὲ  
 καίριον. ἐκ τούτου ἠγείσθαι ἐκέλευε τοὺς Ὑρκανίους. καὶ  
 οἱ ἡρώτων Τί δέ; οὐκ ἀναμενεῖς, ἔφασαν, τοὺς ὁμήρους  
 ἕως ἂν ἀγάγωμεν, ἵνα ἔχων καὶ σὺ τὰ πιστὰ παρ'  
 ἡμῶν πορεύῃ; καὶ τὸν ἀποκρίνασθαι λέγεται· Ἐννοῶ γάρ,  
 φάναι, ὅτι ἔχομεν τὰ πιστὰ ἐν ταῖς ἡμετέραις ψυχαῖς καὶ  
 ταῖς ἡμετέραις χερσίν. οὕτω γὰρ δοκοῦμεν περὶ σκευάσθαι  
 ὥς ἦν μὲν ἀληθεύητε, ἱκανοὶ εἶναι ἡμᾶς εὖ ποιεῖν· ἦν δὲ  
 ἐξαπατᾶτε, οὕτω νομίζομεν ἔχειν ὥς οὐχ ἡμᾶς ἐφ' ὑμῖν  
 ἔσεσθαι, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον, ἦν οἱ θεοὶ θέλωσιν, ὑμᾶς ἐφ' ἡμῖν  
 γενήσεσθαι. καὶ μέντοι, ἔφη, ὦ Ὑρκάνιοι, ἐπείπερ φατὲ  
 ὑστάτους ἔπεσθαι τοὺς ὑμετέρους, ἐπειδὰν ἴδητε αὐτούς,  
 σημήνατε ἡμῖν ὅτι οἱ ὑμέτεροί εἰσιν, ἵνα φειδώμεθα αὐτῶν.  
 ἀκούσαντες δὲ ταῦτα οἱ Ὑρκάνιοι τὴν μὲν ὁδὸν ἠγοῦντο  
 ὥσπερ ἐκέλευε, τὴν δὲ ῥώμην τῆς ψυχῆς ἐθαύμαζον· καὶ  
 οὔτε Ἀσσυρίους οὔτε Λυδοὺς οὔτε τοὺς συμμάχους αὐτῶν



|on foot; footsoldier ἔπεσθαι σὺν τοῖς ἵπποις ἐκέλευσε· καὶ  
 |where ἢν |cause to cease ἢ ἐπίσχωσι τῆς |gait, |march, ἐνετείλατο  
 αὐτοῖς πρὸς αὐτὸν |pass, outstrip τινάς, ἵνα εἰδῶσι τὸ ἀεὶ  
 |deadly ἐκ τούτου ἡγείσθαι ἐκέλευε τοὺς Ὑρκανίους. καὶ  
 οἱ |ask Τί δέ; οὐκ ἀναμενεῖς, ἔφασαν, τοὺς |insurance, |hostage  
 ἕως ἂν ἀγάγωμεν, ἵνα ἔχων καὶ σὺ τὰ |faithful; |trustworthy  
 ἡμῶν πορεύῃ; καὶ τὸν |to separate; reject; (mp) |answer, defend oneself Ἐννοῶ γάρ,  
 φάναι, ὅτι ἔχομεν τὰ |faithful; |trust-our, my |soul; life :αὶ  
 ταῖς |our, my χερσίν. οὕτω γὰρ δοκοῦμεν περὶσκενᾶσθαι  
 ὥς ἦν μὲν |speak truth; |sufficient; |fit. ἡμᾶς εὖ ποιεῖν· ἦν δὲ  
 |be true |empowered  
 |trick, cheat , οὕτω |consider |cūs-ν ὥς οὐχ ἡμᾶς ἐφ' ὑμῖν  
 |tomary; believe  
 ἔσεσθαι, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον, ἦν οἱ θεοὶ θέλωσιν, ὑμᾶς ἐφ' ἡμῖν  
 γενήσεσθαι. καὶ |however ἔφη, ὦ Ὑρκάνιοι, ἐπεὶ περ φατέ  
 |later, last ἔπεσθαι τοὺς |yours , |when, |after ἴδητε αὐτούς,  
 |give orders τῶν ὅτι οἱ |yours εἰσιν, ἵνα |spare αὐτῶν.  
 |show; mark  
 ἀκούσαντες δὲ ταῦτα οἱ Ὑρκάνιοι τὴν μὲν ὁδὸν ἡγοῦντο  
 ὥσπερ ἐκέλευε, τὴν δὲ |strength, |ῆς |soul; |marvel καὶ  
 |might |life  
 οὔτε Ἀσσυρίους οὔτε Λυδοὺς οὔτε τοὺς συμμάχους αὐτῶν

lead the van, while they would follow with the cavalry, and whenever the column halted on the march they were to send him gallopers to receive his orders. Then he bade the Hyrcanians lead the way, but they exclaimed, "What? Are you not going to wait until we bring the hostages? Then you could begin the march with pledges from us in return for yours."

But he answered, as the story says, "If I am not mistaken, we hold the pledges now, in our own hearts and our own right hands. We believe that if you are true to us we can do you service, and if you play us false, you will not have us at your mercy; God willing, we shall hold you at ours. Nevertheless," he added, "since you tell us your own folk follow in the Assyrian rear, point them out to us as soon as you set eyes upon them, that we may spare their lives."

When the Hyrcanians heard this they led the way as he ordered, marvelling at his strength of soul. Their own fear of the Assyrians, the Lydians, and their allies, had altogether gone; their dread

*vocabulary***ἀνατείνω** lift, reach out, threaten**διανύω** accomplish, arrive**ἐγγίγνομαι** live in ~genus**ἐκγίγνομαι** be born; be by birth

~genus

**ἐοικότως** like; fairly**ἐπιγίγνομαι** succeed, come after

~genus

**εὐζωνος** well-girded ~zone**θάρσος** boldness, over-boldness**θεῖον** θεείου brimstone ~fume**θέω** run, run for**κνέφας** -ος (n, 3) dark, dusk**παντάπασιν** altogether; yes, certainly**πλήθω** be filled ~plenum**πλησίος** near, neighboring**πρόσειμι** approach, draw near; add

~ion

**προσελαύνω** go to, approach ~elastic**προστάσσω** post at, attach to, command**προσφέρω** present; resemble; add**πρόσω** forward, in the future; far**πυρά** pyre ~pyre**πυρός** (ῥ) wheat**πυρόω** burn something**ῥοπή** balancing, crisis**σκοπέω** behold, consider**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**συμπέμπω** send with ~pomp**σφέτερος** their**ὑπαντάω** meet**φάος** φῶς (n, 3) light; salvation; (pl)

eyes ~photon

**φρίκη** (ι) shivering

ἐφοβοῦντο, ἀλλὰ μὴ παντάπασιν ὁ Κῦρος μικράν τινα αὐτῶν οἶοιτο ῥοπήν εἶναι καὶ προσόντων καὶ ἀπόντων.

Πορευομένων δὲ ἐπεὶ νύξ ἐπεγένετο, λέγεται φῶς τῷ Κύρῳ καὶ τῷ στρατεύματι ἐκ τοῦ οὐρανοῦ προφανὲς γενέσθαι, ὥστε πᾶσι μὲν φρίκην ἐγγίγνεσθαι πρὸς τὸ θεῖον, θάρρος δὲ πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους. ὥς δ' εὕζωνοί τε καὶ ταχὺ ἐπορεύοντο, εἰκότως πολλήν τε ὁδὸν διήνυσαν καὶ ἅμα κνέφα πλησίον γίνονται τοῦ τῶν Ὑρκανίων στρατεύματος. ὥς δ' ἔγνωσαν οἱ ἄγγελοι, καὶ τῷ Κύρῳ λέγουσιν ὅτι οὗτοί εἰσιν οἱ σφέτεροι· τῷ τε γὰρ ὑστάτους εἶναι γινώσκειν ἔφασαν καὶ τῷ πλήθει τῶν πυρῶν· ἐκ τούτου πέμπει τὸν ἕτερον αὐτῶν πρὸς αὐτούς, προστάξας λέγειν, εἰ φίλοι εἰσίν, ὥς τάχιστα ὑπαντᾶν τὰς δεξιὰς ἀνατείναντας· συμπέμπει δὲ τινα καὶ τῶν σὺν ἑαυτῷ καὶ λέγειν ἐκέλευσε τοῖς Ὑρκανίοις ὅτι ὥς ἂν ὀρώσιν αὐτοὺς προσφερομένους, οὕτω καὶ αὐτοὶ ποιήσουσιν. οὕτω δὴ ὁ μὲν μένει τῶν ἀγγέλων παρὰ τῷ Κύρῳ, ὁ δὲ προσελαύνει πρὸς τοὺς Ὑρκανίους. ἐν ᾧ δ' ἐσκόπει

|        |        |         |                |         |       |      |
|--------|--------|---------|----------------|---------|-------|------|
| scare, | scare, | ἀλλὰ μὴ | altogether;    | ὁ Κῦρος | small | τινα |
| away   |        |         | yes, certainly |         |       |      |

αὐτῶν οἶοιτο |balancing, crisis, αι καὶ προσόντων καὶ |be absent, go away, return

Πορευομένων δὲ ἐπεὶ νῦν |succeed , λέγεται φῶς τῷ

Κύρω καὶ τῷ |army ἐκ τοῦ οὐρανοῦ προφανές

γενέσθαι, ὥστε πᾶσι μὲν |shivering ἔγγίγνεσθαι πρὸς τὸ

θεῖον, |boldness δὲ πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους. ὥς δ' |well-girded

καὶ ταχὺ ἐπορεύοντο, |like; |πολλήν τε ὁδὸν |accomplish,  
|fairly |arrive

καὶ ἅμα |dark, |near γίγνονται τοῦ τῶν Ὑγκανίων  
|dusk

|army                      ὥς δ' ἔγνωσαν οἱ |messenger καὶ τῷ Κύρῳ

λέγουσιν ὅτι οὗτοί εἰσιν οἱ |their      τῷ τε γὰρ |later, last

εἶναι γινώσκειν ἔφασαν καὶ τῷ πλήθει τῶν πυρῶν· ἐκ

|   |                                |
|---|--------------------------------|
| τούτου πέμπει τὸν ἕτερον αὐτῶν πρὸς αὐτούς, | post at, attach<br>to, command |
|---|--------------------------------|

λέγειν, εἰ φίλοι εἰσίν, ὥς τάχιστα |meet τὰς |right-hand

|lift, reach out,|send with  
|threaten

δέ τινα καὶ τῶν σὺν ἑαυτῷ καὶ

λέγειν ἐκέλευσε τοῖς Ὑρκανίοις ὅτι ὥς ἂν ὁρῶσιν αὐτοὺς

|present; resemble; οὕτω καὶ αὐτοὶ ποιήσουσιν. οὕτω δὲ ὁ  
|add

μὲν μένει τῶν | messenger παρὰ τῇ Κύρῳ, ὁ δὲ | go to, approach

πρὸς τοὺς Ὑρκανίους. ἐν ᾧ δ' | behold,  
consider

now was lest Cyrus should regard themselves as mere dust in the balance, and count it of no importance whether they stayed with him or not.

As night closed in on their march, the legend runs that a strange light shone out, far off in the sky, upon Cyrus and his host, filling them with awe of the heavenly powers and courage to meet the foe. Marching as they did, their loins girt and their pace swift, they covered a long stretch of road in little time, and with the half light of the morning they were close to the Hyrcanian rear-guard. As soon as the guides saw it, they told Cyrus that these were their own men: they knew this, they added, from the number of their fires, and the fact that they were in the rear. Therefore Cyrus sent one of the guides to them, bidding them come out at once, if they were friendly, with their right hands raised. And he sent one of his own men also to say, "According as you make your approach, so shall we Persians comport ourselves."

Thus one of the two messengers stayed with Cyrus while the other rode up to his fellows. Cyrus halted his

*vocabulary*

**ἀναπηδάω** leap up, start up  
**ἀνατείνω** lift, reach out, threaten  
**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at  
 some distance  
**δεξιόομαι** salute, greet  
**ἐνθένδε** hence  
**ἐπερωτάω** consult, ask  
**ἐπιχειρέω** do, try, attack ~chiral  
**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near,  
 direct, stop ~station  
**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism  
**θαρσύνω** (ῥ) encourage  
**οἶχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone

**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
 recommend, encourage  
**παρελαύνω** pass, outstrip ~elastic  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**πλησίος** near, neighboring  
**πόσος** how many, much, far?  
**προίστημι** put forward; (+gen) be  
 head of, guard ~station  
**προτείνω** hold out, offer  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**ὑπαντιάζω** take a stand against

τοὺς Ὑρκανίους ὁ Κῦρος ὅ τι ποιήσουσιν, ἐπέστησε τὸ  
 στράτευμα· παρελαύνουσι δὲ πρὸς αὐτὸν οἱ τῶν Μήδων  
 προεστηκότες καὶ ὁ Τιγράνης καὶ ἐπερωτῶσι τί δεῖ ποιεῖν.  
 ὁ δὲ λέγει αὐτοῖς ὅτι τοῦτ' ἔστι τὸ πλησίον Ὑρκανίων  
 στράτευμα καὶ οἴχεται ὁ ἕτερος τῶν ἀγγέλων πρὸς αὐτοὺς  
 καὶ τῶν ἡμετέρων τις σὺν αὐτῷ, ἐροῦντες, εἰ φίλοι εἰσίν,  
 ὑπαντιάζειν τὰς δεξιὰς ἀνατείναντας πάντας. ἦν μὲν οὖν  
 οὕτω ποιῶσι, δεξιουσθὲ τε αὐτοὺς καθ' ὃν ἂν ἦ ἕκαστος  
 καὶ ἅμα θαρρύνετε· ἦν δὲ ὅπλα αἴρωνται ἢ φεύγειν  
 ἐπιχειρῶσι, τούτων, ἔφη, εὐθὺς δεῖ πρῶτον πειρᾶσθαι  
 μηδένα λιπεῖν. ὁ μὲν τοιαῦτα παρήγγειλεν. οἱ δὲ Ὑρκανίοι  
 ἀκούσαντες τῶν ἀγγέλων ἥσθησάν τε καὶ ἀναπηδήσαντες  
 ἐπὶ τοὺς ἵππους παρήσαν τὰς δεξιὰς, ὥσπερ εἴρητο,  
 προτείνοντες· οἱ δὲ Μῆδοι καὶ Πέρσαι ἀντεδεξιούντο τε  
 αὐτοὺς καὶ ἐθάρρυνον. ἐκ τούτου δὴ ὁ Κῦρος λέγει· Ἡμεῖς  
 μὲν δὴ, ὦ Ὑρκανίοι, ἡδὴ ὑμῖν πιστεύομεν· καὶ ὑμᾶς δὲ χρὴ  
 πρὸς ἡμᾶς οὕτως ἔχειν. τοῦτο δ', ἔφη, πρῶτον ἡμῖν εἴπατε  
 πόσον ἀπέχει ἐνθένδε ἔνθα αἱ ἀρχαί εἰσι τῶν πολεμίων καὶ



τοὺς Ὑρκανίους ὁ Κῦρος ὅ τι ποιήσουσιν, |set; (mp) come/be near, di-  
 |rect, stop  
 |army |pass, outstrip δὲ πρὸς αὐτὸν οἱ τῶν Μήδων  
 προεστηκότες καὶ ὁ Τιγράνης καὶ |consult, ask τί δεῖ ποιεῖν.  
 ὁ δὲ λέγει αὐτοῖς ὅτι τοῦτ' ἔστι τὸ |near Ὑρκανίων  
 |army καὶ |come, go ὁ ἕτερος τῶν |messenger πρὸς αὐτοὺς  
 καὶ τῶν |our, my τις σὺν αὐτῷ, ἐροῦντες, εἰ φίλοι εἰσίν,  
 |take a stand against |right-hand |lift, reach out, πάντας. ἦν μὲν οὖν  
 |threaten  
 οὕτω ποιῶσι, |salute, τε αὐτοὺς καθ' ὃν ἂν ἦ ἕκαστος  
 |greet  
 καὶ ἅμα |encourage ἦν δὲ |tool |raise, win ἣ φεύγειν  
 |do, try, attack τούτων, ἔφη, εὐθὺς δεῖ πρώτων |try, test  
 μηδένα λιπεῖν. ὁ μὲν τοιαῦτα |transmit; order, συμμαχίᾳ, ἄνιοι  
 |recommend, encourage  
 ἀκούσαντες τῶν |messenger |be pleased, enjoy ἢ |leap up, start up  
 ἐπὶ τοὺς ἵππους παρήσαν τὰς |right-hand ὥστε εἴρητο,  
 |hold out, offer οἱ δὲ Μῆδοι καὶ Πέρσαι ἀντεδεξιούντο τε  
 αὐτοὺς καὶ |encourage ἐκ τούτου δὲ ὁ Κῦρος λέγει· Ἡμεῖς  
 μὲν δὴ, ὦ Ὑρκανιοι, ἤδη ὑμῖν πιστεύομεν· καὶ ὑμᾶς δὲ |must,  
 |should  
 πρὸς ἡμᾶς οὕτως ἔχειν. τοῦτο δ', ἔφη, πρῶτον ἡμῖν εἴπατε  
 |how ὅπως ἂν μάταιον, |hence ἔνθα αἱ ἀρχαὶ εἰσι τῶν πολεμίων καὶ  
 |much, far?

army to watch what the tribe would do, and Tigranes and the Median officers rode along the ranks to ask for orders. Cyrus explained that the troops nearest to them were the Hyrcanians, and that one of the ambassadors had gone, and a Persian with him, to bid them come out at once, if they were friendly, with their right hands raised. "If they do so," he added, "you must welcome them as they come, each of you at your post, and take them by the hand and encourage them, but if they draw sword or try to escape, you must make an example of them: not a man of them must be left."

Such were his orders. However, as soon as the Hyrcanians heard the message, they were overjoyed: springing to their steeds they galloped up to Cyrus, holding out their right hands as he had bidden. Then the Medes and Persians gave them the right hand of fellowship in return, and bade them be of courage. And Cyrus spoke:

"Sons of the Hyrcanians, we have shown our trust in you already, and you must trust us in return. And now tell me, how far from here do the Assyrian headquarters lie, and

*vocabulary***ἄθροός** grouped**ἀποδιδράσκω** escape**βιοτεύω** live, live on**δειπνέω** eat, dine**διαλέγω** go through, debate ~legion**ἐμβάλλω** throw in; inspire a mental state ~ballistic**ἐνταῦθα** there, here**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism**ἡσάομαι** (pass) be weaker, be overcome; (active) defeat**ἰκετεύω** approach to beg**ἴσχω** imitate, liken to, guess ~victor**καρτερός** strong, staunch**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch, overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy**κοινωνός** partner**μαλακίζομαι** weaken, feminize**νυκτερεύω** pass the night**παρασάγγης** -ου (m, 1) Persian unit, ca. 5 km**Πέρσης** Persian**ῥώμη** strength, might**συντάσσω** gather, assemble ~syntax**σχολή** rest, leisure

τὸ ἀθρόον αὐτῶν. οἱ δ' ἀπεκρίναντο ὅτι ὀλίγω πλεόν ἢ παρασάγγην.

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ λέγει ὁ Κύρος· Ἄγετε δὴ, ἔφη, ὦ ἄνδρες Πέρσαι καὶ Μῆδοι καὶ ὑμεῖς ὦ Ὑρκάνιοι, ἤδη γὰρ καὶ πρὸς ὑμᾶς ὡς πρὸς συμμάχους καὶ κοινωνοὺς διαλέγομαι, εἰ χρή εἰδέναι νῦν ὅτι ἐν τοιούτῳ ἐσμέν ἔνθα δὴ μαλακισάμενοι μὲν πάντων ἂν τῶν χαλεπωτάτων τύχοιμεν· ἴσασι γὰρ οἱ πολέμοιοι ἐφ' ᾧ ἤκοιμεν· ἦν δὲ τὸ καρτερόν ἐμβαλόμενοι ἴωμεν ῥώμῃ καὶ θυμῷ ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, αὐτίκα μάλ' ὄψεσθε ὥσπερ δούλων ἀποδιδρασκόντων ἡύρημένων τοὺς μὲν ἱκετεύοντας αὐτῶν, τοὺς δὲ φεύγοντας, τοὺς δ' οὐδὲ ταῦτα φρονεῖν δυναμένους. ἡττημένοι τε γὰρ ὄψονται ἡμᾶς καὶ οὔτε οἰόμενοι ἥξειν οὔτε συντεταγμένοι οὔτε μάχεσθαι παρεσκευασμένοι κατειλημμένοι ἔσονται. εἰ οὖν ἡδέως βουλόμεθα καὶ δειπνήσαι καὶ νυκτερεῦσαι καὶ βιοτεύειν τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦδε, μὴ δώμεν τούτοις σχολὴν μήτε βουλευσασθαι μήτε παρασκευάσασθαι ἀγαθὸν αὐτοῖς

τὸ |grouped αὐτῶν. οἱ δ' ἀπεκρίναντο ὅτι ὀλίγω πλέον ἢ

|ca. 5 km

|there, here δὴ λέγει ὁ Κῦρος· Ἄγετε δὴ, ἔφη, ὦ ἄνδρες

Πέρσαι καὶ Μῆδοι καὶ ὑμεῖς ὦ Ὑρκάνιοι, ἤδη γὰρ

καὶ πρὸς ὑμᾶς ὥς πρὸς συμμάχους καὶ |partner

|go through, de-|must, ὀθέναι νῦν ὅτι ἐν τοιούτῳ ἐσμέν ἔνθα  
|bate |should

δὴ |weaken, feminize μὲν πάντων ἂν τῶν |hard to bear

τύχοιμεν· ἴσασι γὰρ οἱ πολέμοι ἐφ' ᾧ |be present, δὲ  
|have arrived

τὸ |strong, |throw in; inspire|imitate, |strength, αἰ θυμῷ ἐπὶ  
|staunch |likened to, |might

τοὺς πολεμίους, |at once μάλ' ὅψεσθε ὥσπερ |born enslaved,  
|servile

|escape ἡύρημένων τοὺς μὲν |approach to beg

αὐτῶν, τοὺς δὲ φεύγοντας, τοὺς δ' οὐδὲ ταῦτα |think, be wise

δυναμένους. |(pass) be weaker, be over- ὥψονται ἡμᾶς καὶ  
|come; (active) defeat

οὔτε οἰόμενοι |be present, |gather, assemble οὔτε μάχεσθαι  
|have arrived

|prepare, render |seize, understand, ὥcatch, μ. εἰ οὖν |sweet  
|overtake; (mp) happen

βουλόμεθα καὶ |eat, dine καὶ |pass the night :αἰ |live, live on ὃ

ἀπὸ τοῦδε, μὴ δῶμεν τούτοις |rest, μῆτε |(mp) to deliberate  
|leisure

μῆτε |prepare, render ἀγαθὸν αὐτοῖς

their main body?" "About four miles hence," they answered.

"Forward then, my men," said Cyrus, "Persians, Medes, and Hyrcanians. I have learnt already, you see, to call you friends and comrades. All of you must remember that the moment has come when, if hand falters or heart fails, we meet with utter disaster: our enemies know why we are here. But if we summon our strength and charge home, you shall see them caught like a pack of runaway slaves, some on their knees, others in full flight, and the rest unable to do even so much for themselves. They are beaten already, and they will see their conquerors fall on them before they dream of an approach, before their ranks are formed or their preparations made, and the sight will paralyse them. If we wish to sleep and eat and live in peace and happiness from this time forth, let us not give them leisure to take counsel or

*vocabulary***ἄθρόος** grouped**ἀνατρέπω** defeat, thwart ~trophy**ἀνδράποδον** -ς slave ~androgynous**ἄρπαγή** seizure; rape**ἄρπάζω** carry off, seize ~harpoon**ἀσφαλής** safe, easy, steady, careful**γέρρον** wicker object**ἕζομαι** act: set, seat; pass: sit down, sit up ~sit**ἐλάχιστος** smallest, shortest, fewest**ἔμπροσθεν** before (time, space)**ἔξειμι** go forth; is possible ~ion**ἐπειδάν** when, after**κατακαίνω** kill**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon**κερδαλέος** clever, wily**μήποτε** absolutely never**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

**πάμπαν** completely**πληγή** a hit ~plectrum**σκευοφόρος** pack animal, porter**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**σωφρονέω** be sane, moderate**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military unit**τύχη** fortune, act of a god**ὕμέτερος** (ὅ) yours

μηδέν, μηδὲ γινῶναι πάμπαν ὅτι ἄνθρωποί ἐσμεν, ἀλλὰ γέρρα καὶ κοπίδας καὶ σαγάρεις ἅπαντα καὶ πληγὰς ἤκειν νομιζόντων. καὶ ὑμεῖς μὲν, ἔφη, ὦ Ὑρκάνιοι, ὑμᾶς αὐτοὺς προπετάσαντες ἡμῶν πορεύεσθε ἔμπροσθεν, ὅπως τῶν ὑμετέρων ὅπλων ὀρωμένων λανθάνωμεν ὅτι πλείστον χρόνον. ἐπειδὰν δ' ἐγὼ πρὸς τῷ στρατεύματι γένωμαι τῶν πολεμίων, παρ' ἐμοὶ μὲν καταλίπετε ἕκαστοι τάξιν ἱππέων, ὥς, ἂν τι δέῃ, χρῶμαι μένων παρὰ τὸ στρατόπεδον. ὑμῶν δὲ οἱ μὲν ἄρχοντες καὶ οἱ πρεσβύτεροι ἐν τάξει ἀθρόοι ἐλαύνετε, εἰ σωφρονεῖτε, ἵνα μήποτε ἀθρόω τινὲ ἐντυχόντες ἀποβιασθῇτε, τοὺς δὲ νεωτέρους ἀφίετε διώκειν· οὗτοι δὲ κατακαινόντων· τοῦτο γὰρ ἀσφαλέστατον νῦν ὥς ἐλαχίστους τῶν πολεμίων λιπεῖν. ἦν δὲ νικῶμεν, ἔφη, ὃ πολλοῖς δὴ κρατοῦσι τὴν τύχην ἀνέτρεψε, φυλάξασθαι δεῖ τὸ ἐφ' ἀρπαγὴν τραπέσθαι· ὥς ὁ τοῦτο ποιῶν οὐκέτ' ἀνὴρ ἐστίν, ἀλλὰ σκευοφόρος· καὶ ἔξεστι τῷ βουλομένῳ χρῆσθαι ἤδη τούτῳ ὥς ἀνδραπόδω. ἐκείνο δὲ χρὴ γινῶναι ὅτι οὐδέν ἐστι κερδαλέωτερον τοῦ



μηδέν, |and not; even not|completely ὅτι ἄνθρωποί ἐσμεν, ἀλλὰ  
 |wicker object καὶ κοπίδας καὶ σαγάρεις ἅπαντα καὶ πληγὰς  
 ἦκειν |consider cus- tomary; believe καὶ ὑμεῖς μὲν, ἔφη, ὦ Ὑρκάνιοι,  
 ὑμᾶς αὐτοὺς προπετάσαντες ἡμῶν πορεύεσθε |before (time, space)  
 ὅπως τῶν |yours |tool ὁρωμένων λανθάνωμεν ὅτι  
 πλείστον χρόνον. |when, after δ' ἐγὼ πρὸς τῷ |army  
 γένωμαι τῶν πολέμιων, παρ' ἐμοὶ μὲν |leave behind, ἕκαστοι  
 |abandon τάξιν |rider , ὥς, ἂν τι δέῃ, χρῶμαι μένων παρὰ τὸ  
 |army camp ὑμῶν δὲ οἱ μὲν ἄρχοντες καὶ οἱ πρεσβύτεροι  
 ἐν τάξει |grouped |drive , εἰ |be sane, moderate |absolutely  
 |never |grouped ἡνὶ ἐντυχόντες ἀποβιασθήτε, τοὺς δὲ νεωτέρους  
 ἀφίετε |chase οὗτοι δὲ |kill τοῦτο γὰρ  
 |safe, easy, steady, careful νῦν ὥς |smallest, short- est, fewest ὧν πολέμιων λιπεῖν.  
 ἦν δὲ νικῶμεν, ἔφη, ὃ πολλοῖς δὴ κρατοῦσι τὴν |fortune, act  
 |of a god |defeat, |guard; watch δεῖ τὸ ἐφ' ἀρπαγὴν |divert ὥς  
 |thwart ὁ τοῦτο ποιῶν |no more νήρ ἐστιν, ἀλλὰ |pack animal, porter  
 ἐξεστι τῷ βουλομένῳ χρῆσθαι ἥδη τούτῳ ὥς |slave  
 ἐκεῖνο δὲ |must, |should ὦναι ὅτι οὐδέν ἐστι |clever, wily τοῦ

arrange defence, or so much as see that we are men, and not a storm of shields and battle-axes and flashing swords, sweeping on them in one rain of blows. You Hyrcanians must go in front of us as a screen, that we may lie behind you as long as may be. And as soon as I close with them, you must give me, each of you, a squadron of horse, to use in case of need while I am waiting at the camp. I would advise the older men among you and the officers, to ride in close order, so that your ranks should not be broken, if you come across a compact body of the foe; let the younger men give chase, and do the killing; our safest plan to-day is to leave as few of the enemy alive as possible. And if we conquer," he added, "we must beware of what has upset the fortune of many a conqueror ere now, I mean the lust for plunder. The man who plunders is no longer a man, he is a machine for portorage, and all who list may treat him as a slave. One

*vocabulary***ἀγγέλλω** carry a message, announce

~angel

**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp**ἀρπάζω** carry off, seize ~harpoon**βοάω** shout**δεκάς** -δος (f, 3) decade, group of ten

~decimal

**διασώζω** preserve through**ἕζομαι** act: set, seat; pass: sit down, sit up ~sit**εἰκός** likely**ἐκατέρωθεν** on both sides**κᾶρα** (αᾶ) head (n) ~cranium**κεράννυμι** (ῶ) mix ~crater**κράς** -τός (f, 3) head**κράτος** strength, power; victory

~democracy

**μέτωπον** forehead, front**νίκη** (ι) victory ~Nike**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon, recommend, encourage**παρατάσσω** place beside**Πέρσης** Persian**προηγέομαι** go first**προσδέχομαι** await**ῥιπτέω** hurl**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark

~semaphore

**σκότος** darkness, shadow ~shadow**συναρπάζω** snatch with**συσκευάζω** pack up**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military unit**φάος** φῶς (n, 3) light; salvation; (pl)

eyes ~photon

νικᾶν· ὁ γὰρ κρατῶν ἅμα πάντα συνήρπακε, καὶ τοὺς ἄνδρας καὶ τὰς γυναῖκας καὶ τὰ χρήματα καὶ πᾶσαν τὴν χώραν. πρὸς ταῦτα τοῦτο μόνον ὀράτε ὅπως τὴν νίκην διασωζόμεθα· ἐὰν γὰρ κρατηθῇ, καὶ αὐτὸς ὁ ἀρπάζων ἔχεται. καὶ τοῦτο ἅμα διώκοντες μέμνησθε, ἦκειν πάλιν ὡς ἐμὲ ἔτι φάους ὄντος· ὡς σκότους γενομένου οὐδένα ἔτι προσδεξόμεθα.

Ταῦτ' εἰπὼν ἀπέπεμπεν εἰς τὰς τάξεις ἐκάστους καὶ ἐκέλευεν ἅμα πορευομένους τοῖς αὐτοῦ ἕκαστον δεκαδάρχοις τὰ αὐτὰ σημαίνειν· ἐν μετώπῳ γὰρ ἦσαν οἱ δεκάδαρχοι, ὥστε ἀκούειν· τοὺς δὲ δεκαδάρχους τῇ δεκάδι ἕκαστον κελεύειν παραγγέλλειν. ἐκ τούτου προηγούντο μὲν οἱ Ὑρκάνιοι, αὐτὸς δὲ τὸ μέσον ἔχων σὺν τοῖς Πέρσαις ἐπορεύετο· τοὺς δὲ ἱππέας ἐκατέρωθεν, ὥσπερ εἰκός, παρέταξε. τῶν δὲ πολεμίων, ἐπεὶ φῶς ἐγένετο, οἱ μὲν ἐθαύμαζον τὰ ὀρώμενα, οἱ δ' ἐγίνωσκον ἤδη, οἱ δ' ἠγγελλον, οἱ δ' ἐβόων, οἱ δ' ἔλυνον ἵππους, οἱ δὲ συνεσκευάζοντο, οἱ δ' ἐρρίπτουν τὰ ὄπλα ἀπὸ τῶν

|win, defeat , ἄρ κρατῶν ἅμα πάντα |snatch with , καὶ τοὺς  
 ἄνδρας καὶ τὰς γυναῖκας καὶ τὰ χρήματα καὶ πᾶσαν τὴν  
 |place . πρὸς ταῦτα τοῦτο μόνον ὁρᾶτε ὅπως τὴν |victory  
 |preserve ἔαν γὰρ |rule , καὶ αὐτὸς ὁ |carry off, seize  
 |through  
 ἔχεται. καὶ τοῦτο ἅμα |chase |remind; (mid) remember,  
 |turn one's thoughts to  
 ὥς ἐμὲ ἔτι |light; salvation; (pl)|darkness γενομένου οὐδένα ἔτι  
 |eyes  
 |await

Ταῦτ' εἰπὼν |send away εἰς τὰς τάξεις ἐκάστους  
 καὶ ἐκέλευεν ἅμα πορευομένους τοῖς αὐτοῦ ἕκαστον  
 δεκαδάρχοις τὰ αὐτὰ |give orders to; forehead, γὰρ ἦσαν οἱ  
 |show; mark |front  
 δεκάδαρχοι, ὥστε ἀκούειν· τοὺς δὲ δεκαδάρχους τῇ |decade  
 ἕκαστον κελεύειν |transmit; order, summon, recom-|go first  
 |mend, encourage  
 μὲν οἱ Ὑρκάνιοι, αὐτὸς δὲ τὸ μέσον ἔχων σὺν τοῖς  
 Πέρσαις ἐπορεύετο· τοὺς δὲ |rider |on both sides . ὥσπερ  
 |likely , |place . τῶν δὲ πολέμιων, ἐπεὶ φῶς ἐγένετο,  
 |beside  
 οἱ μὲν |marvel τὰ ὀρώμενα, οἱ δ' ἐγίγνωσκον ἤδη,  
 οἱ δ' |carry a message, an-|shout , οἱ δ' ἔλυνον ἵππους, οἱ δὲ  
 |nounce  
 |pack up , οἱ δ' |hurl τὰ |tool ἀπὸ τῶν

thing we must bear in mind: nothing can bring such gain as victory; at one clutch the victor seizes all, men and women, and wealth, and territory. Therefore make it your one object to secure the victory; if he is conquered, the greatest plunderer is caught. One more word—remember, even in the heat of pursuit to rejoin me while it is still daylight, for when darkness has fallen we will not admit a soul within the lines.”

With these words he sent them off to their appointed stations, bidding them repeat his instructions on the way to their own lieutenants, who were posted in front to receive the orders, and make each of them pass down the word to his own file of ten. Thereupon the advance began, the Hyrcanians leading off, Cyrus holding the centre himself, marching with his Persians, and the cavalry in the usual way, drawn up on either flank.

As the day broke the enemy saw them for the first time: some simply stared at what was happening, others began to realise the truth, calling and shouting to each other, unfastening their horses, getting their goods together, tearing what they needed off the

*vocabulary*

**ἄλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix  
**ἄμαχητί** without a fight  
**ἀναβιβάζω** make to mount, promote  
**ἀναπηδάω** leap up, start up  
**ἀρμάμαξα** Persian carriage  
**διασώζω** preserve through  
**ἐγγύς** near  
**ἐπακολουθέω** chase; accrue  
**θέρως** -εος (n, 3) summer ~thermos  
**κατακαίνω** kill  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
**κατορύσσω** bury

**κράτος** strength, power; victory  
 ~democracy  
**ὀπλίζω** prepare, arm ~hoplite  
**ὄχημα** vehicle  
**παντοδαπής** of every kind, manifold  
**παντοδαπός** of every kind, manifold  
**πύθω** (ū) rot ~putrid  
**ῥαίω** smite  
**ὑποζύγιον** beast of burden ~zygote  
**ὕφιστημι** promise, undertake ~station  
**φυγή** flight, means of escape ~fugitive  
**χαλινόω** (i) bridle, bit  
**ψύχος** -εος (n, 3) coolness  
 ~psychology

ὑποζυγίων, οἱ δ' ὠπλίζοντο, οἱ δ' ἀνεπήδων ἐπὶ τοὺς  
 ἵππους, οἱ δ' ἐχαλίνουν, οἱ δὲ τὰς γυναῖκας ἀνεβίβαζον  
 ἐπὶ τὰ ὀχήματα, οἱ δὲ τὰ πλείστου ἄξια ἐλάμβανον ὡς  
 διασωσόμενοι, οἱ δὲ κατορύττοντες τὰ τοιαῦτα ἡλίσκοντο,  
 οἱ δὲ πλείστοι ἐς φυγὴν ὥρμων· οἶεσθαι δὲ δεῖ καὶ  
 ἄλλα πολλά τε καὶ παντοδαπὰ ποιεῖν αὐτούς, πλὴν  
 ἐμάχετο οὐδεὶς, ἀλλ' ἀμαχητὶ ἀπώλλυντο. Κροῖσος  
 δὲ ὁ Λυδῶν βασιλεὺς, ὡς θέρος ἦν, τὰς τε γυναῖκας  
 ἐν ταῖς ἄρμαμάξαις προαπεπέμφετο τῆς νυκτός, ὡς  
 ἂν ῥᾶον πορεύοντο κατὰ ψῦχος, καὶ αὐτὸς ἔχων τοὺς  
 ἱππέας ἐπηκολούθει. καὶ τὸν Φρύγα τὰ αὐτὰ ποιῆσαι  
 φασὶ τὸν τῆς παρ' Ἑλλάσποντον ἄρχοντα Φρυγίας. ὡς  
 δὲ παρήσθηοντο τῶν φευγόντων καὶ καταλαμβανόντων  
 αὐτούς, πυθόμενοι τὸ γιγνόμενον ἔφευγον δὴ καὶ αὐτοὶ ἀνὰ  
 κράτος. τὸν δὲ τῶν Καππαδοκῶν βασιλέα καὶ τὸν τῶν  
 Ἀραβίων ἔτι ἐγγὺς ὄντας καὶ ὑποστάντας ἀθωρακίστους  
 κατακαίνουσιν οἱ Ὑρκάνιοι. τὸ δὲ πλείστον ἦν τῶν  
 ἀποθανόντων Ἀσσυρίων καὶ Ἀραβίων· ἐν γὰρ τῇ αὐτῶν



|beast of burden ἔ δ' |prepare, arm, οἱ δ' |leap up, start up τούς  
 ἵππους, οἱ δ' |bridle, bit , οἱ δὲ τὰς γυναῖκας |make to mount,  
 |promote  
 ἐπὶ τὰ |vehicle , οἱ δὲ τὰ πλείστον |worthy ἄμβανον ὥς  
 |preserve , οἱ δὲ |bury τὰ τοιαῦτα |be captured ,  
 |through  
 οἱ δὲ πλείστοι ἐς |flight, |spur, rush at σθαι δὲ δεῖ καὶ  
 |means of  
 ἄλλα πολλά τε καὶ παντοδαπὰ ποιεῖν αὐτούς, |except  
 |escape  
 ἐμάχετο οὐδεὶς, ἀλλ' |without a fight ἔλλυντο. Κροῖσος  
 δὲ ὁ Λυδῶν βασιλεὺς, ὥς |summer ἦν, τὰς τε γυναῖκας  
 ἐν ταῖς |Persian προαπεπέμψατο τῆς νυκτός, ὥς  
 |carriage  
 ἂν ῥᾶον πορεύοιντο κατὰ |coolness καὶ αὐτὸς ἔχων τοὺς  
 |rider |chase; accrue . καὶ τὸν Φρύγα τὰ αὐτὰ ποιῆσαί  
 φασι τὸν τῆς παρ' Ἑλλήσποντον ἄρχοντα Φρυγίας. ὥς  
 δὲ παρήσθοντο τῶν φευγόντων καὶ |seize, understand, catch, overtake;  
 |(mp) happen  
 αὐτούς, πυθόμενοι τὸ γιγνόμενον ἔφευγον δὴ καὶ αὐτοὶ ἀνὰ  
 |strength, ἔ δὲ τῶν Καππαδοκῶν βασιλέα καὶ τὸν τῶν  
 |power; vic-  
 |tory Ἀραβίων ἔτι |near ὄντας καὶ |promise, ἀθωρακίστους  
 |undertake  
 |kill οἱ Ὑρκάνιοι. τὸ δὲ πλείστον ἦν τῶν  
 ἀποθανόντων Ἀσσυρίων καὶ Ἀραβίων· ἐν γὰρ τῇ αὐτῶν

beasts of burden, and others arming themselves, harnessing their steeds, leaping to horse, others helping the women into their carriages, or seizing their valuables, some caught in the act of burying them, others, and by far the greatest number, in sheer headlong flight. Many and divers were their shifts, as one may well conceive, save only that not one man stood at bay: they perished without a blow. Now Croesus, king of Lydia, seeing that it was summer-time, had sent his women on during the night, so that they might travel more pleasantly in the cool, and he himself had followed with his cavalry to escort them. The Lord of Hellespontine Phrygia, it is said, had done the same. And these two, when they heard what was happening from the fugitives who overtook them, fled for their lives with the rest. But it was otherwise with the kings of Cappadocia and Arabia; they had not gone far, and they stood their ground, but they had not even time to put on their corslets, and were cut down by the Hyrcanians. Indeed, the mass of those who fell were Assyrians

*vocabulary*

**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not  
needing ~Sp. sin

**ἀποφέρω** carry off, carry back ~bear

**εἰκός** likely

**ἐνθυμέομαι** (ῥ) take to heart

**ἐννοέω** consider

**ἔξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion

**ἐπιτάσσω** enjoin; place near

**καίω** burn ~caustic

**κατακαίνω** kill

**καταλείπω** leave behind, abandon  
~eclipse

**κηρύσσω** be a henchman, summon  
people

**μέλω** concern, interest, be one's  
responsibility

**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
~hoplite

**ὅποι** to which place

**ὅπόσος** as many as, how many, how  
great

**πελταστής** -οῦ (m, 1) light troops  
~pelt

**περιελαύνω** drive around

**περίστημι** be around; turn out  
~station

**πορεία** gait, march

**ποτή** flight? ~petal

**ποτός** potable

**ῥιπτέω** hurl

**σίτος** grain, bread, food ~parasite

**σκηνή** tent; stage

**σκοπάω** watch, observe

**σκοπέω** behold, consider

**σκοπός** (f) lookout, overseer, spy,  
target ~telescope

**στερέω** steal, take

**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war,  
campaign ~strategy

**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
mercenary ~strategy

**συνδέω** bind together

**τάξις** -εως (f) arrangement, military  
unit

**τοξότης** -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic

**ὑπομένω** stay behind, await ~remain

**χωρίον** area; downwards

ὄντες χώρα ἀσυντονώτατα πρὸς τὴν πορείαν εἶχον. οἱ μὲν δὴ Μῆδοι καὶ Ὑρκάνιοι, οἷα δὴ εἰκὸς κρατοῦντας, τοιαῦτα ἐποίουν διώκοντες. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος τοὺς παρ' ἐαυτῷ ἰππέας καταλειφθέντας περιελάνειν ἐκέλευε τὸ στρατόπεδον, καὶ εἴ τινας σὺν ὅπλοις ἴδοιεν ἐξιόντας, κατακαίνειν· τοῖς δ' ὑπομένουσιν ἐκήρυξεν, ὅποσοι τῶν πολεμίων στρατιωτῶν ἦσαν ἰππεῖς ἢ πελτασταὶ ἢ τοξόται, ἀποφέρειν τὰ ὅπλα συνδεδεμένα, τοὺς δὲ ἵππους ἐπὶ ταῖς σκηναῖς καταλείπειν· ὅστις δὲ ταῦτα μὴ ποιήσῃ, αὐτίκα τῆς κεφαλῆς στερήσεσθαι· τὰς δὲ κοπίδας προχείρους ἔχοντες ἐν τάξει περιέστασαν. οἱ μὲν δὴ τὰ ὅπλα ἔχοντες ἐρρίπτουν, ἀποφέροντες εἰς ἓν χωρίον ὅποι ἐκέλευε· καὶ ταῦτα μὲν οἷς ἐπέταξεν ἔκαιον.

Ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ἐνενόησεν ὅτι ἦλθον μὲν οὔτε σῖτα οὔτε ποτὰ ἔχοντες, ἄνευ δὲ τούτων οὔτε στρατεῦσθαι δυνατὸν οὔτ' ἄλλο ποιεῖν οὐδέν. σκοπῶν δ' ὅπως ἂν κάλλιστα καὶ τάχιστα ταῦτα γένοιτο, ἐνθυμεῖται ὅτι ἀνάγκη πᾶσι τοῖς στρατευομένοις εἶναί τινα ὄτῳ καὶ σκηνῇς μελήσει

ὄντες χώρα ἄσυντονώτατα πρὸς τὴν |gait, |march εἶχον. οἱ  
 μὲν δὴ Μῆδοι καὶ Ὑρκάνιοι, οἷα δὴ |likely κρατοῦντας,  
 τοιαῦτα ἐποιοῦν διώκοντες. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος τοὺς παρ'  
 ἑαυτῷ ἱππέας καταλειφθέντας |drive around ἐκέλευε τὸ  
 στρατόπεδον, καὶ εἴ τινας σὺν |tool ἴδοιεν |go forth;  
 |kill τοῖς δ' |stay behind, |be a hench- |as/how many/great  
 |await |man, sum-  
 πολεμίων στρατιωτῶν ἦσαν ἱππεὺς ἡ |mon people |light troops ἦ  
 |archer , |carry off τὰ |tool |bind together , τοὺς δὲ  
 ἵππους ἐπὶ ταῖς |tent; καταλείπειν· ὅστις δὲ ταῦτα μὴ  
 |stage  
 ποιήσοι, αὐτίκα τῆς κεφαλῆς |steal, take τὰς δὲ κοπίδας  
 προχείρους ἔχοντες ἐν τάξει |be around; turn out , ἐν δὴ τὰ  
 |tool ἔχοντες |hurl , |carry off εἰς ἐν χωρίον |to which place  
 ἐκέλευε· καὶ ταῦτα μὲν οἷς |enjoin; |burn  
 |place near  
 Ὁ δὲ Κῦρος |consider ὅτι ἦλθον μὲν οὔτε σῖτα οὔτε ποτὰ  
 ἔχοντες, |away from; 'not having; |make an expedition, |τὸν οὔτ'  
 |not needing |war, campaign  
 ἄλλο ποιεῖν οὐδέν. σκοπῶν δ' ὅπως ἂν κάλλιστα καὶ  
 τάχιστα ταῦτα γένοιτο, |take to heart "τι ἀνάγκη πᾶσι τοῖς  
 |make an expedition, |ναί τινα ὅτω καὶ |tent; |be in/on the mind  
 |war, campaign |stage

and Arabians, for, being in their own country, they had taken no precautions on the march. The victorious Medes and the Hyrcanians had their hands full with the chase, and meanwhile Cyrus made the cavalry who were left with him ride all round the camp and cut down any man who left it with weapons in his hands. Then he sent a herald to those who remained, bidding the horsemen and targeteers and archers come out on foot, with their weapons tied in bundles, and deliver them up to him, leaving their horses in their stalls: he who disobeyed should lose his head, and a cordon of Persian troops stood round with their swords drawn. At that the weapons were brought at once, and flung down, and Cyrus had the whole pile burnt.

Meanwhile he did not forget that his own troops had come without food or drink, that nothing could be done without provisions, and that to obtain these in the quickest way, it was necessary on every campaign to have some one to see that quarters were prepared and supplies ready

*vocabulary*

**ἀπειθέω** disobey  
**δεσπότης** -ου (m, 1) master, despot  
**διπλάσιος** twofold, double  
**εἰκός** likely  
**εἵσειμι** go in; come in range; come to mind ~ion  
**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἐπίτροπος** agent  
**καθίζω** set, sit, alight, set up ~sit  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch, overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
**κηρύσσω** be a henchman, summon people  
**μαλακός** soft  
**μισέω** (i) hate, wish to prevent ~misogyny

**οἰκέτης** -ου (m, 1) household; house slave  
**ὅπόσος** as many as, how many, how great  
**παραγίγνομαι** be beside, attend ~genus  
**ποτή** flight? ~petal  
**ποτός** potable  
**πρόθυμος** (ō) willing, eager ~fume  
**σίτος** grain, bread, food ~parasite  
**σκηνέω** camp  
**σκηνή** tent; stage  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy  
**σχεδόν** near, approximately at ~ischemia  
**τοίνυν** well, then

καὶ ὅπως τὰ ἐπιτήδεια παρεσκευασμένα τοῖς στρατιώταις  
εἰσιοῦσιν ἔσται. καὶ τοίνυν ἔγνω ὅτι τούτους εἰκὸς  
μάλιστα πάντων ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ νῦν κατειληφθαι  
ἦν διὰ τὸ ἀμφὶ συσκευασίαν ἔχειν· ἐκήρυξε δὴ παρεῖναι  
τοὺς ἐπιτρόπους πάντας· εἰ δέ που μὴ εἴη ἐπίτροπος,  
τὸν πρεσβύτατον ἀπὸ σκηνῆς· τῷ δὲ ἀπειθοῦντι πάντα  
τὰ χαλεπὰ ἀνείπεν. οἱ δὲ ὀρώντες καὶ τοὺς δεσπότας  
πειθομένους ταχὺ ἐπείθοντο. ἐπεὶ δὲ παρεγένοντο,  
πρῶτον μὲν ἐκέλευε καθίζεσθαι αὐτῶν ὅσοις ἐστὶ πλεόν  
ἢ δυοῖν μηνοῖν ἐν τῇ σκηνῇ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. ἐπεὶ δὲ τούτους  
εἶδεν, αὐθις ἐκέλευσεν ὅσοις μηνὸς ἦν· ἐν τούτῳ σχεδὸν  
πάντες ἐκαθίζοντο. ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα ἔμαθεν, εἶπεν ὦδε  
αὐτοῖς· Ἄγετέ νυν, ἔφη, ὦ ἄνδρες, οἱ τινες ὑμῶν τὰ μὲν  
κακὰ μισεῖτε, μαλακοῦ δέ τινος παρ' ἡμῶν βούλοισθ' ἂν  
τυγχάνειν, ἐπιμελήθητε προθύμως ὅπως διπλάσια ἐν τῇ  
σκηνῇ ἐκάστη σῖτα καὶ ποτὰ παρεσκευασμένα ἦ ἢ τοῖς  
δεσπόταις καὶ τοῖς οἰκέταις καθ' ἡμέραν ἐποιεῖτε· καὶ  
τᾶλλα δὲ πάντα ὅποσα καλὴν



καὶ ὅπως τὰ |fit, suitable |prepare, render τοῖς |soldier,  
 |mercenary  
 |go in ἔσται. καὶ |well, then, /νω ὅτι τούτους |likely  
 μάλιστα πάντων ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ νῦν |seize, understand, catch,  
 |overtake; (mp) happen  
 ἦν διὰ τὸ ἀμφὶ συσκευασίαν ἔχειν· |be a henchman, ρεῖναι  
 |summon people  
 τοὺς |agent πάντας· εἰ δέ που μὴ εἴη |agent  
 τὸν πρεσβύτατον ἀπὸ |tent;  
 |stage τῷ δέ |disobey πάντα  
 τὰ χαλεπὰ ἀνείπεν. οἱ δέ ὁρῶντες καὶ τοὺς |master,  
 |despot  
 πειθομένους ταχὺ ἐπείθοντο. ἐπεὶ δέ |be beside, attend  
 πρῶτον μὲν ἐκέλευε |set, sit, alight, λυτῶν ὅσοις ἐστὶ πλέον  
 |set up  
 ἢ δυοῖν μηνοῖν ἐν τῇ σκηνῇ τὰ |fit, suitable. ἐπεὶ δέ τούτους  
 εἶδεν, αὐθις ἐκέλευσεν ὅσοις μηνὸς ἦν· ἐν τούτῳ |about  
 πάντες |set, sit, alight, ἐπεὶ δέ ταῦτα ἔμαθεν, εἶπεν ὦδε  
 |set up  
 αὐτοῖς· Ἄγαστέ νυν, ἔφη, ὦ ἄνδρες, οἳ τινες ὑμῶν τὰ μὲν  
 κακὰ |hate , |soft δέ τινος παρ' ἡμῶν βούλοισθ' ἂν  
 τυγχάνειν, |take care of, |willing, ὅπως |twofold, ἐν τῇ  
 |oversee |eager |double  
 σκηνῇ ἐκάστη |grain, καὶ ποτὰ |prepare, render ἦ ἢ τοῖς  
 |bread,  
 |food  
 |master, καὶ τοῖς |household; αἰθ' ἡμέραν ἐποιεῖτε· καὶ  
 |despot |house slave  
 τᾶλλα δὲ πάντα |as/how many/great

for the men on their return. It occurred to him it was more than likely that such officers, of all others, would be left behind in the Assyrian camp, because they would have been delayed by the packing.

Accordingly, he sent out a proclamation that all the stewards should present themselves before him, and if there was no such officer left, the oldest man in every tent must take his place; any one failing to obey would suffer the severest penalties. The stewards, following the example of their masters, obeyed at once. And when they came before him he ordered those who had more than two months' rations in their quarters to sit down on the ground, and then those who had provisions for one month. Thereupon very few were left standing. Having thus got the information he needed, he spoke to them as follows:

"Gentlemen, if any of you dislike hard blows and desire gentle treatment at our hands, make it your business to provide twice as much meat and drink in every tent as you have been wont to do, with all things that are needed for a fine repast. The victors, whoever they are, will be here anon, and will expect an overflowing board. You may rest assured it will not be against your

*vocabulary*

**αἰσχρός** shameful  
**ἀμελέω** disregard; (impers.) of course  
**ἀπορέω** be confused, distressed  
**ἀριστάω** eat lunch ~aristocrat  
**ἀσθενέω** be weak, sick  
**ἀσθενής** weak  
**δαίς** -τός (f) feast, banquet ~demon  
**δαίτη** feast, banquet  
**ἐκπλεως** full of, abundant  
**ἐναντιόομαι** oppose, contradict  
**ἔξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion  
**ἐπιμελής** careful, cared for  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**ἐτοῖμος** ready; fulfilled  
**εὐωχία** partying  
**ἰσχυρός** (ὁ) strong, forceful, violent

**κατακαίνω** kill  
**ὁπότερος** which of two, either of two  
**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon, recommend, encourage  
**ποτός** potable  
**πρόθυμος** (ὁ) willing, eager ~fume  
**σίτος** grain, bread, food ~parasite  
**σπουδάζω** be busy, earnest ~repudiate  
**σπουδή** zeal; (dat) with difficulty, hastily ~repudiate  
**συγκαλέω** call together ~gallo  
**συμφέρω** bring together; be expedient; agree; (mp) happen ~bear  
**ταξίαρχος** military rank  
**τοιόσδε** such  
**ώφελέω** help, be useful

δαῖτα παρέξει ἔτοιμα ποιεῖτε, ὡς αὐτίκα μάλα παρέσονται  
 ὁπότεροι ἂν κρατῶσι, καὶ ἀξιώσουσιν ἔκπλεω ἔχειν  
 πάντα τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. εὖ οὖν ἴστε ὅτι συμφέροι ἂν  
 ὑμῖν ἀμέμπτως δέχεσθαι τοὺς ἄνδρας. οἱ μὲν δὴ ταῦτ'  
 ἀκούσαντες πολλῇ σπουδῇ τὰ παρηγγελμένα ἔπραττον·  
 ὁ δὲ συγκαλέσας τοὺς ταξιάρχους ἔλεξε τοιάδε· Ἄνδρες  
 φίλοι, γινώσκωμεν ὅτι νῦν ἔξεστιν ἡμῖν προτέροις τῶν  
 ἀπόντων συμμάχων ἀρίστου τυχεῖν καὶ τοῖς μάλιστα  
 ἐσπουδασμένοις σίτοις καὶ ποτοῖς χρῆσθαι· ἀλλ' οὐ μοι  
 δοκεῖ τοῦτ' ἂν τὸ ἄριστον πλέον ὠφελῆσαι ἡμᾶς ἢ  
 τὸ τῶν συμμάχων ἐπιμελεῖς φανῆναι, οὐδ' ἂν αὕτη ἡ  
 εὐωχία ἰσχυροτέρους τοσοῦτον ποιῆσαι ὅσον εἰ δυναίμεθα  
 τοὺς συμμάχους προθύμους ποιεῖσθαι. εἰ δὲ τῶν νυνὶ  
 διωκόντων καὶ κατακαινόντων τοὺς ἡμετέρους πολεμίους  
 καὶ μαχομένων, εἴ τις ἐναντιοῦται, τούτων δόξομεν  
 οὕτως ἀμελεῖν ὥστε καὶ πρὶν εἰδέναι πῶς πράττουσιν  
 ἡριστηκότες φαίνεσθαι, ὅπως μὴ αἰσχροὶ μὲν φανούμεθα,  
 ἀσθενεῖς δ' ἐσόμεθα συμμάχων ἀπορροῦντες. τὸ δὲ

δαῖτα παρέξει ἔτοιμα ποιεῖτε, ὥς |at once μάλα παρέσονται

|which of two, ei-|rule , καὶ |consider wor-|full of, abundant  
|ther of two |thy, fitting

πάντα τὰ |fit, suitable . εὖ οὖν ἵστε ὅτι συμφέροι ἂν

ὑμῖν ἀμέμπτως δέχεσθαι τοὺς ἄνδρας. οἱ μὲν δὲ ταύτ’

ἀκούσαντες πολλῇ |zeal; (dat)|transmit; order, summon, ὠν·  
|with diffi-|recommend, encourage

ὁ δὲ |call together τοὺς |cult, hastily |military rank ἔλεξε |such Ἄνδρες

φίλοι, γινώσκωμεν ὅτι νῦν ἔξεστιν ἡμῖν προτέροις τῶν

|be absent, go ὑμμάχων ἀρίστου τυχεῖν καὶ τοῖς μάλιστα  
away, return

|be busy, earnest |grain, καὶ |potable χρῆσθαι· ἀλλ’ οὐ μοι  
|bread,

δοκεῖ τοῦτ’ ἂν τὸ ἄριστον πλεόν |help, be useful, -ās ἢ

τὸ τῶν συμμάχων |careful, φανῆναι, οὐδ’ ἂν αὕτη ἡ  
|cared for

|partying |strong, forceful, |so much ποιῆσαι ὅσον εἰ δυναίμεθα  
|violent

τοὺς συμμάχους |willing, ποιεῖσθαι. εἰ δὲ τῶν νυνὶ  
|eager

|chase καὶ |kill τοὺς |our, my πολεμίους

καὶ μαχομένων, εἴ τις |oppose, , τούτων δόξομεν  
|contradict

οὕτως |disregard ὥστε καὶ πρὶν εἰδέναι |how? why? ρουσιν

|eat lunch φαίνεσθαι, ὅπως μὴ |shameful μὲν φανούμεθα,

ἀσθενεῖς δ’ ἐσόμεθα συμμάχων |be confused, τὸ δὲ  
|distressed

interests to give them a welcome they can approve.”

At that the stewards went off at once and set to work with all zeal to carry out their instructions. Then Cyrus summoned his own officers and said to them:

”My friends, it is clear that we have it in our power, now that our allies’ backs are turned, to help ourselves to breakfast, and take our choice of the most delicate dishes and the rarest wines. But I scarcely think this would do us so much good as to show that we study the interest of our friends: the best of cheer will not give us half the strength we could draw from the zeal of loyal allies whose gratitude we had won. If we forget those who are toiling for us now, pursuing our foes, slaying them, and fighting wherever they resist, if they see that we sit down to enjoy ourselves and devour our meal before we know how it goes with them, I fear we shall cut a sorry figure in their eyes, and our strength will turn to weakness through lack of friends. The true banquet for us is to study the

*vocabulary*

**ἀγνοέω** be ignorant of ~gnostic  
**αἰσχύνω** (ῶ) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar  
**ἀχμιάζω** be in top form, flourish  
**ἀφροσύνη** folly ~frenzy  
**γαστήρ** -έρος (f) belly ~gastric  
**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish ~practice  
**εἴσεμι** go in; come in range; come to mind ~ion  
**ἐμπίμπλημι** fill with  
**ἐννοέω** consider  
**ἐπιμέλεια** attention; assigned task  
**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**εὐφραίνω** gladden ~frenzy  
**θοίνα** meal, feast; food  
**κινδυνεύω** encounter danger; (+inf)

there is a danger that  
**κοινός** communal, ordinary  
**κοινόω** make common; cooperate  
**μέθη** strong drink, drunkenness  
**ὅποῖος** whatever kind  
**παραμένω** stay with ~remain  
**παραχρῆμα** on the spot  
**πολλαπλάσιος** many times more  
**πονέω** work; be busy ~osteopenia  
**ποτός** potable  
**ποῦ** where?  
**προσέχω** belong to, it beseems  
**προσφέρω** present; resemble; add  
**σίτος** grain, bread, food ~parasite  
**σύμφορος** accompanying; suitable  
**ὑπνον** a sleep  
**ὑπνος** a sleep  
**φροντίς** -τος (f) thought, care  
**χαρίζομαι** gratify ~charisma

τῶν κινδυνευόντων καὶ πονούντων ἐπιμεληθῆναι ὅπως  
 εἰσιόντες τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἔξουσιν, αὕτη ἂν ἡμᾶς ἢ θοίνῃ  
 πλείῳ εὐφράνειεν, ὥς ἐγὼ φημι, ἢ τὸ παραχρήμα τῇ  
 γαστρὶ χαρίσασθαι. ἐννοήσατε δ', ἔφη, ὥς εἰ μηδ'  
 ἐκείνους αἰσχυντέον ἦν, οὐδ' ὥς ἡμῖν νῦν προσήκεν οὔτε  
 πλησμονῆς πω οὔτε μέθης· οὐ γάρ πω διαπέπρακται ἡμῖν  
 ἅ βουλόμεθα, ἀλλ' αὐτὰ πάντα νῦν ἀκμάζει ἐπιμελείας  
 δεόμενα. ἔχομεν γὰρ ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ πολεμίους  
 πολλαπλασίους ἡμῶν αὐτῶν, καὶ τούτους λελυμένους· οὓς  
 καὶ φυλάττεσθαι ἔτι προσήκει καὶ φυλάττειν, ὅπως ὧσι  
 καὶ οἱ ποιήσοντες ἡμῖν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια· ἔτι δ' οἱ ἵππεῖς ἡμῖν  
 ἄπεισι, φροντίδα παρέχοντες ποῦ εἰσι· κἂν ἔλθωσιν, εἰ  
 παραμενοῦσιν. ὥστ', ὦ ἄνδρες, νῦν μοι δοκεῖ τοιοῦτον  
 σῖτον ἡμᾶς προσφέρεσθαι δεῖν καὶ τοιοῦτον ποτὸν ὅποιον  
 ἂν τις οἴεται μάλιστα σύμφορον εἶναι πρὸς τὸ μήτε ὕπνου  
 μήτε ἀφροσύνης ἐμπίμπλασθαι. ἔτι δὲ καὶ χρήματα  
 πολλά ἐστίν ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ, ὧν οὐκ ἀγνοῶ ὅτι  
 δυνατὸν ἡμῖν κοινῶν ὄντων τοῖς



τῶν |encounter danger;|work |take care of, ὅπως  
 (+inf) there is a danger |oversee  
 |go in that τὰ |fit, suitable ἔξουσιν, αὕτη ἂν ἡμᾶς ἡ θοΐνη

πλείω |gladden , ὡς ἐγὼ φημι, ἡ τὸ |on the spot τῇ

|belly |gratify |consider δ', ἔφη, ὡς εἰ μηδ'

ἐκείνους |spoil, ἡν, οὐδ' ὡς ἡμῖν νῦν |belong to, it οὔτε  
 |disgrace |beseems

πλησμονῆς πω οὔτε |strong drink, ῥ πω |travel over, ac- ἡμῖν  
 |drunkenness |comply

ἂ βουλόμεθα, ἀλλ' αὐτὰ πάντα νῦν |be in|attention; as-  
 |top form,|signed task  
 |flourish

δεόμενα. ἔχομεν γὰρ ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ πολεμίους

πολλαπλασίους ἡμῶν αὐτῶν, καὶ τούτους λελυμένους· οὗς

καὶ φυλάττεσθαι ἔτι |belong to, καὶ φυλάττειν, ὅπως ὧσι  
 |it beseems

καὶ οἱ ποιήσοντες ἡμῖν τὰ |fit, suitable ἔτι δ' οἱ ἱππεῖς ἡμῖν

|be absent,|thought, care ἰρέχοντες |where? κ' κὰν ἔλθωσιν, εἰ  
 |go away,  
 |return  
 παρὰμενοῦσιν. ὥστ', ὦ ἄνδρες, νῦν μοι δοκεῖ τοιοῦτον

|grain, ἡμᾶς |present; resem- δεῖν καὶ τοιοῦτον |potable |whatever kind  
 |bread, |ble; add  
 |food  
 ἂν τις οἴεται μάλιστα |accompanying; ι πρὸς τὸ μήτε ὕπνου  
 |suitable

μήτε |folly |fill with ἔτι δὲ καὶ χρήματα

πολλά ἐστίν ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ, ὧν οὐκ |be ignorant of

|powerful, ἡμῖν κοινῶν ὄντων τοῖς  
 |possible

wants of those who have run the risk and done the work, to see that they have all they need when they come home, a banquet that will give us richer delight than any gorging of the belly. And remember, that even if the thought of them were not enough to shame us from it, in no case is this a moment for gluttony and drunkenness: the thing we set our minds to do is not yet done: everything is full of danger still, and calls for carefulness. We have enemies in this camp ten times more numerous than ourselves, and they are all at large: we need both to guard against them and to guard them, so that we may have servants to furnish us with supplies. Our cavalry are not yet back, and we must ask ourselves where they are and whether they mean to stay with us when they return. Therefore, gentlemen, I would say, for the present let us above all be careful to avoid the food and drink that leads to slumber and stupefaction. And there is another matter: this camp contains vast treasures, and I am well aware we have it in our power to pick and choose as much as we like for ourselves out of what belongs by right to all who helped in its capture. But it does not seem to me that grasping will be so lucrative as

*vocabulary***ἀέναιος** ever-flowing**ἄκαιρος** unseasonable, troublesome**ἀσκέω** work on**ἀσπάζομαι** greet, salute**γαστήρ** -έρος (f) belly ~gastric**δατέομαι** divide into portions ~demon**ἐπειδάν** when, after**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ῶ) display, exhibit**ἐπιτρέπω** entrust, decide, allow

~trophy

**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism**θήρα** hunt ~fierce**κερδαλέος** clever, wily**κέρδος** -ους (n, 3) advantage, cunning**κρείσσω** more powerful; better**κτάομαι** acquire, possess**μείων** less, smaller**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis**νοσφίζομαι** turn, turn in disgust**ὅθεν** whence**οἶκοι** at home ~economics**ὄλβος** happiness, wealth**ὀλιγοχρόνιος** short-lived; within a short time**ὀμότιμος** (ῖ) equally honored**ὀπόσος** as many as, how many, how great**παιδεία** child-rearing, education**παραμένω** stay with ~remain**Πέρσης** Persian**πλεονεκτέω** be greedy, take advantage**πλούτος** wealth ~plutocrat**πότε** when?**ποῦ** where?**πρίμαι** buy**προΐημι** send forth, abandon**σύμφορος** accompanying; suitable**συναγορεύω** support**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics**ὠνέομαι** buy

συγκατειληφόσι νοσφίσασθαι ὅποσα ἂν βουλώμεθα· ἀλλ'  
 οὐ μοι δοκεῖ τὸ λαβεῖν κερδαλέωτερον εἶναι τοῦ δικαίους  
 φαινομένους ἐκείνοις τούτῳ πρίασθαι ἔτι μᾶλλον αὐτοὺς  
 ἢ νῦν ἀσπάζεσθαι ἡμᾶς. δοκεῖ δέ μοι, ἔφη, καὶ τὸ νεῖμαι  
 τὰ χρήματα, ἐπειδὴν ἔλθωσι, Μήδοις καὶ Ὑρκανίοις καὶ  
 Τιγράνη ἐπιτρέψαι· καὶ ἣν τι μείον ἡμῖν δάσωνται, κέρδος  
 ἡγείσθαι· διὰ γὰρ τὰ κέρδη ἥδιον ἡμῖν παραμενουῦσι. τὸ  
 μὲν γὰρ νῦν πλεονεκτῆσαι ὀλιγοχρόνιον ἂν τὸν πλοῦτον  
 ἡμῖν παράσχοι· τὸ δὲ ταῦτα προεμένους ἐκεῖνα κτήσασθαι  
 ὅθεν ὁ πλοῦτος φύεται, τοῦτο, ὡς ἐγὼ δοκῶ, ἀεναώτερον  
 ἡμῖν δύναιτ' ἂν τὸν ὄλβον καὶ πᾶσι τοῖς ἡμετέροις  
 παρέχειν. οἶμαι δ', ἔφη, καὶ οἴκοι ἡμᾶς τούτου ἔνεκα  
 ἀσκεῖν καὶ γαστρὸς κρείττους εἶναι καὶ κερδέων ἀκαίρων,  
 ἵν', εἴ ποτε δέοι, δυναίμεθα αὐτοῖς συμφόρως χρῆσθαι· ποῦ  
 δ' ἂν ἐν μείζοσι τῶν νῦν παρόντων ἐπιδειξαίμεθ' ἂν τὴν  
 παιδείαν ἐγὼ μὲν οὐχ ὀρώ. ὁ μὲν οὕτως εἶπε. συνέειπε δ'  
 αὐτῷ Ὑστάσπας ἀνὴρ Πέρσης τῶν ὁμοτίμων ὧδε· Δεινὸν  
 γάρ τ' ἂν εἴη, ὦ Κῦρε, εἰ ἐν θήρᾳ μὲν

συγκατελιηφόσι νοσφίσασθαι |as/how m̃any/great', ιεθα· ἀλλ'  
 οὐ μοι δοκεῖ τὸ λαβεῖν |clever, wily εἶναι τοῦ δικαίους  
 φαινομένους ἐκείνοις τούτῳ πρίασθαι ἔτι μᾶλλον αὐτοὺς  
 ἢ νῦν |greet, salute ἡμᾶς. δοκεῖ δέ μοι, ἔφη, καὶ τὸ |distribute  
 τὰ χρήματα, |when, ἔλθωσι, Μήδοις καὶ Ὑρκανίοις καὶ  
 |after  
 Τιγράνη |entrust, de- καὶ ἦν τι |less, 'μῦν |divide into|advantage,  
 |cide, allow |smaller |portions |cunning  
 ἡγείσθαι· διὰ γὰρ τὰ |advantage|sweet ἡμῖν παραμενοῦσι. τὸ  
 |cunning  
 μὲν γὰρ νῦν |be greedy, take|short-lived; within a short|wealth  
 |advantage |time  
 ἡμῖν παράσχοι· τὸ δὲ ταῦτα προεμένους ἐκεῖνα κτήσασθαι  
 |whence |wealth |produce, . . . ἵτο, ὡς ἐγὼ δοκῶ, |ever-flowing  
 |beget; clasp  
 ἡμῖν δύναιτ' ἂν τὸν |happiness, . . |πᾶσι τοῖς ἡμετέροις  
 |wealth  
 παρέχειν. οἶμαι δ', ἔφη, καὶ |at home, ἡμῶς τούτου ἕνεκα  
 |work on αὐτὴν |belly κρείττους εἶναι καὶ |advantage,|unseasonable,  
 |cunning |troublesome  
 ἵν', εἴ ποτε δέοι, δυναίμεθα αὐτοῖς |accompanying; ἵσθαι· |where?  
 |suitable  
 δ' ἂν ἐν μείζουσι τῶν νῦν παρόντων |display, exhibit ἂν τὴν  
 |child-rearing, . . |μὲν οὐχ ὀρώ. ὁ μὲν οὕτως εἶπε. συνείπε δ'  
 |education  
 αὐτῷ Ὑστάσπας ἀνὴρ Πέρσης τῶν |equally ᾧδε· Δεινὸν  
 |honored  
 γὰρ τὰν εἴη, ᾧ Κῦρε, εἰ ἐν |hunt μὲν

proving ourselves just toward our allies, and so binding them closer. I go further: I say that we should leave the distribution of the spoil to the Medes, the Hyrcanians, and Tigranes, and count it gain if they allot us the smaller share, for then they will be all the more willing to stay with us. Selfishness now could only secure us riches for the moment, while to let these vanities go in order to obtain the very fount of wealth, that, I take it, will ensure for us and all whom we call ours a far more enduring gain. Was it not," he continued, "for this very reason that we trained ourselves at home to master the belly and its appetites, so that, if ever the need arose, we might turn our education to account? And where, I ask, shall we find a nobler opportunity than this, to show what we have learnt?"

Such were his words and Hystaspas the Persian rose to support him, saying:

"Truly, Cyrus, it would be a monstrous thing if we could go fasting when we hunt, and keep from food so often and so long

*vocabulary*

**ἄγος** ἄγους (n, 3) religious uncleanness  
**ἄμαξα** wagon  
**ἀμελέω** disregard; (impers.) of course  
**ἀποστρέφω** turn back, turn off course  
 ~atrophy  
**ἀρμάμαξα** Persian carriage  
**ἄσιτος** (i) not eating ~parasite  
**ἀφειδής** unsparing, cruel ~aphid  
**βέλτιστος** best, noblest  
**γνήσιος** born legitimate ~genus  
**δεσπότης** -ου (m, 1) master, despot  
**ἐμποδών** getting in the way  
**ἐπαινέω** concur, praise, advise  
**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable  
**θηράω** hunt, chase  
**κάλλος** -εος (n, 3) beauty  
 ~kaleidoscope

**καρτερέω** be patient  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch, overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
**κολάζω** punish  
**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie  
**μεστός** full  
**ὄλβος** happiness, wealth  
**παλλακίς** -δος (f) sex slave  
**πειράζω** test a person ~pierce  
**περίειμι** be superior to; be left over; still exist  
**πορσύνω** (i) prepare (the marital bed)  
**πρέπω** be conspicuous, preeminent  
 ~refurbish  
**προσελαύνω** go to, approach ~elastic  
**σπουδαῖος** quick, active; excellent  
**στρατιά** army ~strategy  
**ὑποχείριος** under one's hand ~chiral

πολλάκις ἄσιτοι καρτεροῦμεν, ὅπως θηρίον τι ὑποχείριον ποιησώμεθα καὶ μάλα μικροῦ ἴσως ἄξιον· ὄλβον δὲ ὅλον πειρώμενοι θηρᾶν εἰ ἐμποδὼν τι ποιησαίμεθα γενέσθαι ἡμῖν ἃ τῶν μὲν κακῶν ἀνθρώπων ἄρχει, τοῖς δ' ἀγαθοῖς πείθεται, οὐκ ἂν πρόποντα ἡμῖν δοκοῦμεν ποιεῖν. ὁ μὲν οὖν Ὑστάσπας οὕτως εἶπεν· οἱ δ' ἄλλοι πάντες ταῦτα συνήγουν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος εἶπεν· Ἄγε δῆ, ἔφη, ἐπειδὴ ὁμοноοῦμεν ταῦτα, πέμψατε ἀπὸ λόχου ἕκαστος πέντε ἄνδρας τῶν σπουδαιοτάτων· οὗτοι δὲ περιμόντες, οὓς μὲν ἂν ὁρώσι πορσύνοντας τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἐπαινούντων· οὓς δ' ἂν ἀμελοῦντας, κολαζόντων ἀφειδέστερον ἢ ὥς δεσπότηται. οὗτοι μὲν δὴ ταῦτα ἐποιοῦν.

#### 4.3

Τῶν δὲ Μήδων τινὲς ἤδη, οἱ μὲν ἀμάξας προωρμημένας καταλαβόντες καὶ ἀποστρέψαντες προσήλανον μεστὰς ὦν δέεται στρατιά, οἱ δὲ καὶ ἄρμαμάξας γυναικῶν τῶν βελτίστων τῶν μὲν γνησίων, τῶν δὲ καὶ παλλακίδων διὰ τὸ κάλλος συμπεριαγομένων, ταύτας εἰληφότες



|often |not eat-|be patient , ὅπως θηρίον τι |under one's hand  
|ing

ποιησώμεθα καὶ μάλα μικροῦ ἴσως |worthy |happiness, ἕλιν  
|wealth

πειρώμενοι |hunt, εἰ |getting in the way . . .|σαίμεθα γενέσθαι  
|chase

ἡμῖν ἂ τῶν μὲν κακῶν ἀνθρώπων ἄρχει, τοῖς δ' ἀγαθοῖς

πέιθεται, οὐκ ἂν |be conspicuous, , δοκοῦμεν ποιεῖν. ὁ μὲν  
|preeminent

οὖν Ὑστάσπας οὕτως εἶπεν· οἱ δ' ἄλλοι πάντες ταῦτα

συνήγουν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος εἶπεν· |religious, un-φῆ, ἐπειδὴ  
|cleanness

ὁμοιοῦμεν ταῦτα, πέμψατε ἀπὸ |ambush, "band, , πέντε  
|childbirth

ἄνδρας τῶν |quick, active; ex- οὔτοι δὲ |be superior to; be ἐν  
|cellent |left over; still exist

ἂν ὁρώσι |prepare τὰ |fit, suitable , |concur οὓς δ'

ἂν |disregard , |punish |unsparing, ἢ ὥς |master,  
|cruel |despot

οὔτοι μὲν δὴ ταῦτα ἐποιοῦν.

#### 4.3

Τῶν δὲ Μήδων τινὲς ἤδη, οἱ μὲν |wagon προωρμημένας

|seize, understand, |turn back |go to, approach |full  
|catch, overtake; (mp)  
|happen

ὧν δεῖται στρατιά, οἱ δὲ καὶ |Persian γυναικῶν τῶν  
|carriage

|best, noblest τῶν μὲν |born legitimate δὲ καὶ |sex slave διὰ

τὸ |beauty συμπεριαγομένων, ταύτας εἰληφότες

merely to lay some poor beast low, worth next to nothing, maybe, and yet, when a world of wealth is our quarry, let ourselves be baulked by one of those temptations which flee before the noble and rule the bad. Such conduct, methinks, would be little worthy of our race.”

So Hystaspas spoke, and the rest approved him, one and all. Then Cyrus said:

”Come now, since we are all of one mind, each of you give me five of the trustiest fellows in his company, and let them go the rounds, and see how the supplies are furnished; let them praise the active servants, and where they see neglect, chastise them more severely than their own masters could.”

Thus they dealt with these matters.

### 4.3

But it was not long before some of the Medes returned: one set had overtaken the waggons that had gone ahead, seized them and turned them back, and were now driving them to the camp, laden with all that an army could require, and others had captured the covered carriages in which the women rode, the wives of the Assyrian grandees or their concubines, whom they had

*vocabulary*

**ἀεργός** lazy ~ergonomics  
**ἀκμάζω** be in top form, flourish  
**ἄλέξω** ward off; aid  
**ἀπάγω** lead away, back ~demagogue  
**ἄπελαύνω** expel, exclude, ward off;  
 (intrans) ride away  
**ἀποδείκνυμι** (ὁ) show, point out;  
 appoint; (mid) declare  
**ἀργός** glistening, swift  
**δάκνω** bite  
**ἡδονή** pleasure  
**θεωρέω** be sent to consult an oracle;  
 observe, contemplate  
**καταμέμφομαι** criticize, blame  
**καταχωρίζω** emplace; record

**μεταδιώκω** pursue  
**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless  
**ὅπου** where  
**πρόθυμος** (ὁ) willing, eager ~fume  
**προσάγω** bring to a place  
 ~demagogue  
**προσκτάομαι** get, win as well  
**προστάσσω** post at, attach to,  
 command  
**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war,  
 campaign ~strategy  
**συγκαλέω** call together ~gallo  
**ταξίαρχος** military rank  
**ὑπομένω** stay behind, await ~remain  
**χαρίζομαι** gratify ~charisma

προσῆγον. πάντες γὰρ ἔτι καὶ νῦν οἱ κατὰ τὴν Ἀσίαν στρατευόμενοι ἔχοντες τὰ πλείστου ἄξια στρατεύονται, λέγοντες ὅτι μᾶλλον μάχωντ' ἢ εἰ τὰ φίλτατα παρείη· τούτοις γὰρ φασιν ἀνάγκην εἶναι προθύμως ἀλέξειν. ἴσως μὲν οὖν οὕτως ἔχει, ἴσως δὲ καὶ ποιούσιν αὐτὰ τῇ ἡδονῇ χαριζόμενοι.

Ὁ Δὲ Κῦρος θεωρῶν τὰ τῶν Μήδων ἔργα καὶ Ὑρκανίων ὥσπερ κατεμέμφετο καὶ αὐτὸν καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ, εἰ οἱ ἄλλοι τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον ἀκμάζειν τε μᾶλλον ἑαυτῶν ἐδόκουν καὶ προσκτᾶσθαι τι, αὐτοὶ δὲ ἐν ἀργότερᾳ χώρᾳ ὑπομένειν. καὶ γὰρ δὴ οἱ ἀπάγοντες καὶ ἀποδεικνύντες Κύρῳ ἃ ἦγον πάλιν ἀπήλυνον, μεταδιώκοντες τοὺς ἄλλους· ταῦτα γὰρ σφίσιν ἔφασαν προστετάχθαι ποιεῖν ὑπὸ τῶν ἀρχόντων. δακνόμενος δὴ ὁ Κῦρος ἐπὶ τούτοις ταῦτα μὲν ὅμως κατεχώριζε· συνεκάλει δὲ πάλιν τοὺς ταξιάρχους, καὶ στὰς ὅπου ἔμελλον πάντες ἀκούσεσθαι τὰ βουλευόμενα λέγει τάδε.

Ὅτι μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες φίλοι, εἰ κατάσχοιμεν τὰ νῦν

|bring to a place ἴντες γὰρ ἔτι καὶ νῦν οἱ κατὰ τὴν Ἀσίαν

|make an expedition, |war, campaign ἄγοντες τὰ πλείστον |wor- |make an expedition,  
|thy |war, campaign

λέγοντες ὅτι μᾶλλον μάχονται ἂν εἰ τὰ φίλτατα παρείη·

τούτοις γὰρ φασιν |necessity εἶναι |willing, |ward off; equal  
|eager |aid

μὲν οὖν οὕτως ἔχει, |equal δὲ καὶ ποιοῦσιν αὐτὰ τῇ |pleasure

|gratify

Ὁ Δὲ Κύρος |be sent to consult ἀν' ὧρα- |cle; observe, contemplate

ὥσπερ |criticize, blame καὶ αὐτὸν καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ, εἰ

οἱ ἄλλοι τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον |be in top form, μᾶλλον ἐαυτῶν  
|flourish

ἐδόκουν καὶ |get, win as well -ι, αὐτοὶ δὲ ἐν ἀργοτέρᾳ |place

|stay behind, await γὰρ δὴ οἱ |lead away, back... |show, point out; appoint;  
|(mid) declare

Κύρῳ ἂ ἦγον πάλιν |expel, exclude, |ward off; |pursue τοὺς  
(intrans) ride

ἄλλους· ταῦτα γὰρ σφισὶν ἐφασάν |post at, attach to, ποιεῖν  
|away |command

ὑπὸ τῶν ἀρχόντων. |bite δὴ ὁ Κύρος ἐπὶ τούτοις

ταῦτα μὲν |any- |emplace; |call together ὃ δὲ πάλιν τοὺς  
|way, |record

|military rank |never- |where ἔμελλον πάντες ἀκούσεσθαι  
|theless

τὰ |(mp) to deliberate', εἰ τάδε.

Ὅτι μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες φίλοι, εἰ |restrain; stop; continue;  
|keep; take possession

taken with them because of their beauty. Indeed, to this day the tribes of Asia never go on a campaign without their most precious property: they say they can fight better in the presence of their beloved, feeling they must defend their treasures, heart and soul. It may be so, but it may also be that the desire for pleasure is the cause.

And when Cyrus saw the feats of arms that the Medes and the Hyrcanians had performed, he came near reproaching himself and those that were with him; the others, he felt, had risen with the time, had shown their strength and won their prizes, while he and his had stayed behind like sluggards. Indeed it was a sight to watch the victors riding home, driving their spoil before them, pointing it out with some display to Cyrus, and then dashing off again at once in search of more, according to the instructions they had received.

But though he ate out his heart with envy Cyrus was careful to set all their booty apart; and then he summoned his own officers again, and standing where they could all hear what he had to propose, he spoke as follows:

"My friends, you would all agree, I take it, that if the spoils

*vocabulary*

**ἀκοντιστής** -οῦ (m, 1) spearman  
 ~acute  
**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not  
 needing ~Sp. sin  
**αὐτάρκης** self-sufficient  
**δένδρον** tree  
**ἐννοέω** consider  
**ἐοικότως** like; fairly  
**εὐδηλος** very clear  
**ἵππικός** of horses ~hippo  
**κακώω** harm, disfigure ~cacophony  
**κατακαίνω** kill  
**καταφανής** clearly seen  
**κτάομαι** acquire, possess  
**ναός** (ἄ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia  
**νή** yea  
**οἰκεῖος** household, familiar, proper

**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics  
**ὁμόσε** to the same spot ~homoerotic  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
**πελταστής** -οῦ (m, 1) light troops  
 ~pelt  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**ποῖος** what kind  
**πρόσεμι** approach, draw near; add  
 ~ion  
**προσίημι** be allowed near  
**προφαίνω** show; pass: appear  
 ~photon  
**τοξότης** -ου (m, 1) archer ~toxic  
**ὑποχείριος** under one's hand ~chiral  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics  
**χειρών** worse, more base, inferior,  
 weaker

προφαινόμενα, μεγάλα μὲν ἂν ἅπασι Πέρσαις ἀγαθὰ  
 γένοιτο, μέγιστα δ' ἂν εἰκότως ἡμῖν δι' ὧν πράττεται,  
 πάντες οἶμαι γιγνώσκομεν· ὅπως δ' ἂν αὐτῶν ἡμεῖς κύριοι  
 γιγνοίμεθα, μὴ αὐτάρκεις ὄντες κτήσασθαι αὐτά, εἰ μὴ  
 ἔσται οἰκεῖον ἵππικόν Πέρσαις τοῦτο ἐγὼ οὐκέτι ὀρώ.  
 ἐννοεῖτε γὰρ δὴ, ἔφη· ἔχομεν ἡμεῖς οἱ Πέρσαι ὅπλα οἷς  
 δοκοῦμεν ἂν τρέπεσθαι τοὺς πολεμίους ὁμοσεῖς ἰόντες· καὶ  
 δὴ τρεπόμενοι ποίους ἢ ἱππέας ἢ τοξότας ἢ πελταστὰς  
 ἄνευ ἵππων ὄντες δυναίμεθ' ἂν φεύγοντας ἢ λαβεῖν ἢ  
 κατακαεῖν; τίνες δ' ἂν φοβοῖντο ἡμᾶς προσιόντες κακοῦν  
 ἢ τοξόται ἢ ἀκοντισταὶ ἢ ἱππεῖς, εὖ εἰδότες ὅτι οὐδεὶς  
 αὐτοῖς κίνδυνος ὑφ' ἡμῶν κακόν τι παθεῖν μᾶλλον ἢ  
 ὑπὸ τῶν πεφυκότων δένδρων; εἰ δ' οὕτω ταῦτ' ἔχει,  
 οὐκ εὐδηλον ὅτι οἱ νῦν παρόντες ἡμῖν ἱππεῖς νομίζουσι  
 πάντα τὰ ὑποχείρια γιγνόμενα ἑαυτῶν εἶναι οὐχ ἥττον  
 ἢ ἡμέτερα, ἴσως δὲ νῆ Δία καὶ μᾶλλον; νῦν μὲν οὖν οὕτω  
 ταῦτ' ἔχει κατ' ἀνάγκην. εἰ δ' ἡμεῖς ἵππικόν κτησαίμεθα  
 μὴ χεῖρον τούτων, οὐ πᾶσιν ἡμῖν καταφανὲς



|show; pass: appear, *εγάλα μὲν ἂν ἅπασι Πέρσαις ἀγαθὰ*  
*γένοιτο, μέγιστα δ' ἂν* |like; |fairly *ἡμῖν δι' ὧν πράττεται,*  
*πάντες οἶμαι γιγνώσκομεν· ὅπως δ' ἂν αὐτῶν ἡμεῖς κύριοι*  
*γιγνοίμεθα, μὴ* |self-sufficient *ῥντες κτήσασθαι αὐτά, εἰ μὴ*  
*ἔσται οἰκεῖον* |of horses *Πέρσαις τοῦτο ἐγὼ οὐκέτι ὁρῶ.*  
 |consider *γὰρ δὴ, ἔφη· ἔχομεν ἡμεῖς οἱ Πέρσαι* |tool *οἷς*  
*δοκοῦμεν ἂν* |divert *τοὺς πολεμίους* |to the same spot *· αἰ*  
*δὴ* |divert |what kind |rider *ἢ* |archer *ἢ* |light troops  
 |away from; not hav- |ing; not needing *δυναίμεθ' ἂν φεύγοντας ἢ λαβεῖν ἢ*  
 |kill *· τίνες δ' ἂν φοβοῖντο ἡμᾶς προσιόντες* |harm, disfigure  
*ἢ* |archer *ἢ* |spearman *ἢ* |rider *· εὖ εἰδότες ὅτι οὐδεὶς*  
*αὐτοῖς* |danger *ὑφ' ἡμῶν κακόν τι παθεῖν μᾶλλον ἢ*  
*ὑπὸ τῶν πεφυκότων* |tree *· εἰ δ' οὕτω ταῦτ' ἔχει,*  
*οὐκ* |very clear *ᾗτι οἱ νῦν παρόντες ἡμῖν* |rider *νομίζουσι*  
*πάντα τὰ* |under one's hand *ῥμενα ἑαυτῶν εἶναι οὐχ ἡττον*  
*ἢ* |our, my *· ἴσως δὲ νῆ Δία καὶ μᾶλλον; νῦν μὲν οὖν οὕτω*  
*ταῦτ' ἔχει κατ'* |necessity *· εἰ δ' ἡμεῖς* |of horses *κτησαίμεθα*  
*μὴ* |worse, more base *· νῦν πᾶσιν ἡμῖν* |clearly seen

displayed to us now were our own to keep, wealth would be showered on every Persian in the land, and we ourselves, no doubt, through whom it was won, would receive the most. But what I do not see is how we are to get possession of such prizes unless we have cavalry of our own. Consider the facts," he continued, "we Persians have weapons with which, we hope, we can rout the enemy at close quarters: but when we do rout them, what sort of horsemen or archers or light-armed troops could ever be caught and killed, if we can only pursue them on foot? Why should they ever be afraid to dash up and harry us, when they know full well that they run no greater risk at our hands than if we were stumps in their orchards? And if this be so, it is plain that the cavalry now with us consider every gain to be as much theirs as ours, and possibly even more, God wot! At present things must be so: there is no help for it. But suppose we were to provide ourselves with as good a force as our friends, it must be pretty evident to all of us, I think, that we could then deal with the enemy by ourselves precisely as we do now with their help, and

*vocabulary*

**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not  
needing ~Sp. sin

**ἄρα** interrogative pcl

**ἄρή** bane, harm; prayer

**ἄρῃν ἄρονός** (m, 3) lamb, sheep; wool

**ἄρης** war, warlike spirit

**ἀρκέω** satisfy; ward off, defend; suffice

**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous

**ἐνδέω** tie to, entangle; lack

**ἐννοέω** consider

**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand

~station

**ἔρυμα** -τος (n, 3) protection ~serve

**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near,  
direct, stop ~station

**θώραξ** -ηχος (m) breastplate ~thorax

**ἵππικός** of horses ~hippo

**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,  
overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy

**μεθίημι** let go, cease; (mid) speed off  
~jet

**μέλεος** vain, idle, useless

**μέλω** concern, interest, be one's  
responsibility

**μέτριος** medium, moderate

**οἰκεῖος** household, familiar, proper

**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics

**οὐχοῦν** not so?; and so

**παλτός** brandished, hurled

**Πέρσης** Persian

**σκέπτομαι** look, look at, watch  
~skeptic

**χαλινός** (ἶ) bit for a horse

ὅτι τούς τ' ἂν πολεμίους δυναίμεθα καὶ ἄνευ τούτων  
ποιεῖν ὅσαπερ νῦν σὺν τούτοις, τούτους τε ἔχοιμεν ἂν  
τότε μετριώτερον πρὸς ἡμᾶς φρονούντας; ὁπότε γὰρ  
παρεῖναι ἢ ἀπείναι βούλονται, ἦττον ἂν ἡμῖν μέλοι, εἰ  
αὐτοὶ ἄνευ τούτων ἀρκοῦμεν ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς. εἰεν· ταῦτα  
μὲν δὴ οἶμαι οὐδεὶς ἂν ἀντιγνωμονήσειε, μὴ οὐχὶ τὸ  
πάν διαφέρειν Περσῶν γενέσθαι οἰκείον ἵππικόν· ἀλλ'  
ἐκείνο ἴσως ἐννοεῖτε, πῶς ἂν τοῦτο γένοιτο. ἄρ' οὖν  
σκεπώμεθα, εἰ βουλοίμεθα καθιστάναι ἵππικόν, τί ἡμῖν  
ὑπάρχει καὶ τίνος ἐνδεῖ; οὐκοῦν ἵπποι μὲν οὗτοι πολλοὶ ἐν  
τῷ στρατοπέδῳ κατειλημμένοι καὶ χαλινοὶ οἷς πείθονται  
καὶ τᾶλλα ὅσα δεῖ ἵπποις ἔχουσι χρῆσθαι. ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ  
οἷς γε δεῖ ἄνδρα ἵππέα χρῆσθαι ἔχομεν, θώρακας μὲν  
ἐρύματα τῶν σωμάτων, παλτὰ δὲ οἷς καὶ μεθιέντες καὶ  
ἔχοντες χρώμεθ' ἄν. τί δὴ τὸ λοιπόν; δῆλον ὅτι ἀνδρῶν  
δεῖ. οὐκοῦν τοῦτο μάλιστα ἔχομεν· οὐδὲν γὰρ οὕτως  
ἡμέτερόν ἐστιν ὥς ἡμεῖς ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς. ἀλλ' ἐρεῖ τις ἴσως  
ὅτι οὐκ ἐπιστάμεθα. μὰ Δί' οὐδὲ γὰρ τούτων τῶν

ὅτι τούς τ' ἂν πολεμίους δυναίμεθα καὶ |away from; not having; not  
 |needing  
 ποιεῖν ὅσαπερ νῦν σὺν τούτοις, τούτους τε ἔχομεν ἂν  
 τότε |medium, |moderate πρὸς ἡμᾶς |think, be wise, |when γὰρ  
 παρῆναι ἢ |be absent, |go 'λουντο, ἦττον ἂν ἡμῖν μέλοι, εἰ  
 |away, return  
 αὐτοῖς |away from; not |satisfy; ward, off, αὐτοῖς. εἰεν· ταῦτα  
 |having; not |defend; suffice  
 |needing  
 μὲν δὴ οἶμαι οὐδεὶς ἂν ἀντιγγνωμονήσειε, μὴ οὐχὶ τὸ  
 πᾶν |carry on; |Περσῶν γενέσθαι οἰκείον |of horses ἀλλ'  
 |differ; excel  
 ἐκεῖνο ἴσως |consider , |how? why? νῦτο γένοιτο. ἀρ' οὖν  
 |look, look at, watch ἡ νλοίμεθα |set down, |of horses, τί ἡμῖν  
 |land; become,  
 |there is καὶ τίνος |tie to , |not so?; and so μὲν οὗτοι πολλοὶ ἐν  
 |be  
 τῷ |army camp |seize, understand, |bit οἷς πείθονται  
 |catch, overtake; (mp)  
 καὶ τὰλλα ὅσα δὲ ἐπὶ τοῖς ἔχουσι χρῆσθαι. ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ  
 |happen  
 οἷς γε δὲ ἄνδρα |rider χρῆσθαι ἔχομεν, |breastplate μὲν  
 |protection τῶν |body, , |brandished, οἷς καὶ |let go, cease;  
 |person, |hurled | (mid) speed off  
 ἔχοντες χρώμεν ἂν. τί δὲ τὸ |left over, |visible, ὡς ἄνδρῶν  
 |conspicuous  
 δεῖ. |not so?; and so μάλιστα ἔχομεν· οὐδὲν γὰρ οὕτως  
 |our, my ἐστὶν ὡς ἡμεῖς ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς. ἀλλ' ἐρεῖ τις ἴσως  
 ὅτι οὐκ ἐπιστάμεθα. μὰ Δί' οὐδὲ γὰρ τούτων τῶν

then perhaps we should find that they would carry their heads less high. It would be of less importance to us whether they chose to stay or go, we should be sufficient for ourselves without them. So far then I expect that no one will disagree: if we could get a body of Persian cavalry it would make all the difference to us; but no doubt you feel the question is, how are we to get it? Well, let us consider first, suppose we decide to raise the force, exactly what we have to start with and what we need. We certainly have hundreds of horses now captured in this camp, with their bridles and all their gear. Besides these, we have all the accoutrements for a mounted force, breast-plates to protect the trunk, and light spears to be flung or wielded at close quarters. What else do we need? It is plain we need men. But that is just what we have already at our own command. For nothing is so much ours as our own selves. Only, some will say, we have not the necessary skill. No, of course not, and none of

*vocabulary*

**ἀκοντίζω** throw, (+gen) at ~acute  
**ἀσχολία** business, being busy  
**δείκνυμι** (ō) show, point out  
**εἴτε** if, whenever; either/or  
**ἐπίσταμαι** know how, understand  
 ~station  
**εὐπετής** coming out well; (adv)  
 fortunately  
**ἐφίστημι** set; (mp) come/be near,  
 direct, stop ~station  
**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism  
**ἵππικός** of horses ~hippo  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
**οἰκεῖος** household, familiar, proper  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite

**οὔκουν** certainly not  
**παραγίγνομαι** be beside, attend  
 ~genus  
**πολεμικός** warlike, hostile ~polemic  
**πότερος** which, whichever of two  
**σπουδή** zeal; (dat) with difficulty,  
 hastily ~repudiate  
**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war,  
 campaign ~strategy  
**συμφέρω** bring together; be expedient;  
 agree; (mp) happen ~bear  
**σχολή** rest, leisure  
**τέχνη** craft, art, plan, contrivance  
 ~technology  
**τοξεύω** shoot an arrow at ~toxic  
**φρόνιμος** sensible, prudent  
**χρήσιμος** useful

ἐπισταμένων νῦν πρὶν μαθεῖν οὐδεὶς ἠπίστατο. ἀλλ' εἴποι  
 ἂν τις ὅτι παῖδες ὄντες ἐμάνθανον. καὶ πότερα παῖδές εἰσι  
 φρονιμώτεροι ὥστε μαθεῖν τὰ φραζόμενα καὶ δεικνύμενα  
 ἢ ἄνδρες; πότεροι δὲ ἂν μάθωσιν ἱκανώτεροι τῷ σώματι  
 ἐκπονεῖν, οἱ παῖδες ἢ οἱ ἄνδρες; ἀλλὰ μὴν σχολή γε ἡμῖν  
 μανθάνειν ὅση οὔτε παισὶν οὔτε ἄλλοις ἀνδράσιν· οὔτε γὰρ  
 τοξεύειν ἡμῖν μαθητέον ὥσπερ τοῖς παισὶ· προεπιστάμεθα  
 γὰρ τοῦτο· οὔτε μὴν ἀκοντίζειν· ἐπιστάμεθα γὰρ καὶ  
 τοῦτο· ἀλλ' οὐδὲ μὴν ὥσπερ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἀνδράσι τοῖς  
 μὲν γεωργίαι ἀσχολίαν παρέχουσι, τοῖς δὲ τέχναι, τοῖς  
 δὲ ἄλλα οἰκεία· ἡμῖν δὲ στρατεύεσθαι οὐ μόνον σχολή  
 ἀλλὰ καὶ ἀνάγκη. ἀλλὰ μὴν οὐχ ὥσπερ ἄλλα πολλὰ τῶν  
 πολεμικῶν χαλεπὰ μὲν, χρήσιμα δέ· ἵππικὴ δὲ οὐκ ἐν ὁδῷ  
 μὲν ἡδίων ἢ αὐτοῖν τοῖν ποδοῖν πορεύεσθαι; ἐν δὲ σπουδῇ  
 οὐχ ἡδὺν ταχὺ μὲν φίλῳ παραγενέσθαι, εἰ δέοι, ταχὺ δέ,  
 εἴτε ἄνδρα εἴτε θῆρα δέοι διώκεσθαι, καταλαβεῖν; ἐκεῖνο  
 δὲ οὐχὶ εὐπετές, τὸ ὅτι ἂν δέῃ ὄπλον φέρειν τὸν ἵππον  
 τοῦτο συμφέρειν; οὐκ οὐκ ταῦτό γ' ἐστὶν ἔχειν τε



ἐπισταμένων νῦν πρὶν μαθεῖν οὐδεὶς |know . . . ἀλλ' εἴποι  
 ἄν τις ὅτι παῖδες ὄντες ἐμάνθανον. καὶ |which, |whichever ἰδὲς εἰσι  
 |sensible, |prudent ὥστε μαθεῖν τὰ |consider καὶ |show  
 ἢ ἄνδρες; |which, |whichever ἢ ἂν μάθωσιν ἱκανώτεροι τῷ σώματι  
 ἐκπονεῖν, οἱ παῖδες ἢ οἱ ἄνδρες; ἀλλὰ μὴν |rest, |leisure γε ἡμῖν  
 μανθάνειν ὅση οὔτε παισὶν οὔτε ἄλλοις ἀνδράσιν· οὔτε γὰρ  
 |shoot an arrow at . . . |throw, (+gen) at ἤττεον ὥσπερ τοῖς παισὶ· προεπιστάμεθα  
 γὰρ τοῦτο· οὔτε μὴν |throw, (+gen) at . . . |στάμεθα γὰρ καὶ  
 τοῦτο· ἀλλ' οὐδὲ μὴν ὥσπερ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἀνδράσι τοῖς  
 μὲν γεωργίαι |business, |being busy παρέχουσι, τοῖς δὲ |craft , τοῖς  
 δὲ ἄλλα |household, |proper, |familiar, |make an expedition, |rest, |leisure  
 |war, campaign  
 ἀλλὰ καὶ ἀνάγκη. ἀλλὰ μὴν οὐχ ὥσπερ ἄλλα πολλὰ τῶν  
 |warlike, |hostile χαλεπὰ μὲν, |useful δέ· |of horses ἢ οὐκ ἐν ὁδῷ  
 μὲν |sweet ἢ αὐτοῖν τοῖν ποδοῖν πορεύεσθαι; ἐν δὲ |zeal; (dat) with diffi-  
 |culty, hastily  
 οὐχ |sweet. ἀχὺ μὲν φίλῳ |be beside, attend εἰ δέοι, ταχὺ δέ,  
 |if, whenever; |if, whenever; |οἱ διώκεσθαι, |seize, understand, catch, overtake;  
 |either/or |either/or (mp) happen  
 δὲ οὐχὶ |coming out well; |ι ἂν δέῃ |tool φέρειν τὸν ἵππον  
 (adv) fortunately  
 τοῦτο |bring to- |certainly not |ό γ' ἐστὶν ἔχειν τε  
 |gether; |be  
 |expedient;  
 |agree; (mp)  
 |happen

those who have it now had it either before they learnt to get it. Ah, you object, but they learnt when they were boys. Maybe; but are boys more capable of learning what they are taught than grown men? Which are the better at heavy physical tasks, boys or men? Besides, we, of all pupils, have advantages that neither boys nor other men possess: we have not to be taught the use of the bow as boys have, we are skilled in that already; nor yet the use of the javelin, we are versed in that; our time has not been taken up like other men's with toiling on the land or labouring at some craft or managing household matters; we have not only had leisure for war, it has been our life. Moreover, one cannot say of riding as of so many warlike exercises that it is useful but disagreeable. To ride a-horseback is surely pleasanter than to trudge a-foot? And as for speed—how pleasant to join a friend betimes whenever you wish, or come up with your quarry be it man or beast! And then, the ease and satisfaction of it! Whatever weapon the rider carries his horse must help to bear the load: 'wear arms' and 'bear arms,'—they are the same thing on horseback. But now,

*vocabulary*

**ἀκοντίζω** throw, (+gen) at ~acute  
**ἀμήχανος** helpless, impossible  
 ~mechanism  
**διατείνω** extend; (mp) try hard  
**ἔξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion  
**ἐξίστημι** displace, transform; (+gen)  
 give up ~station  
**ἐπιθυμέω** (ō) wish, covet  
**θέω** run, run for  
**ἵππεύω** ride  
**ἰσόω** (ī) liken to  
**καθαιρέω** take down, close ~heresy  
**καταλαμβάνω** seize, understand, catch,  
 overtake; (mp) happen ~epilepsy  
**κινδυνεύω** encounter danger; (+inf)

there is a danger that  
**κῦρος** -εος (n, 3) authority; validity  
**μῆκος** -ους (n, 3) length, stature  
**μῆκων** poppy  
**ὅμως** anyway, nevertheless  
**ὅπου** where  
**ὀρμέω** be anchored  
**ὄψις** ὄψεως (f) sight, view  
 ~thanatopsis  
**παίω** hit  
**παραθέω** run beside  
**πρόσω** forward, in the future; far  
**συναγορεύω** support  
**τοξεύω** shoot an arrow at ~toxic  
**φθάζω** do first, outstrip  
**φθάνω** (ā) do first, outstrip

καὶ φέρειν. ὅ γε μὴν μάλιστ' ἂν τις φοβηθείη, μὴ εἰ  
 δεήσει ἐφ' ἵππου κινδυνεύειν ἡμᾶς πρότερον πρὶν ἀκριβοῦν  
 τὸ ἔργον τοῦτο, κᾷπειτα μήτε πεζοὶ ἔτι ὦμεν μήτε πω  
 ἵππεῖς ἱκανοί, ἀλλ' οὐδὲ τοῦτο ἀμήχανον· ὅπου γὰρ ἂν  
 βουλώμεθα, ἐξέσται ἡμῖν πεζοῖς εὐθὺς μάχεσθαι· οὐδὲν  
 γὰρ τῶν πεζικῶν ἀπομαθησόμεθα ἵππεύειν μαθάνοντες.  
 Κῦρος μὲν οὕτως εἶπε· Χρυσάντας δὲ συναγορεύων αὐτῷ  
 ὦδε ἔλεξεν.

Ἄλλ' ἐγὼ μὲν, ἔφη, οὕτως ἐπιθυμῶ ἵππεύειν μαθεῖν ὥς  
 νομίζω, ἣν ἵππεὺς γένωμαι, ἄνθρωπος πτηνὸς ἔσεσθαι.  
 νῦν μὲν γὰρ ἔγωγε ἀγαπῶ ἣν γ' ἐξ ἴσου τῷ θεῖν  
 ὀρμηθεὶς ἀνθρώπων μόνον τῇ κεφαλῇ πρόσχω, κἂν  
 θηρίον παραθέον ἰδὼν δυνασθῶ διατεινόμενος φθάσαι  
 ὥστε ἀκοντίσαι ἢ τοξεῦσαι πρὶν πάνυ πρόσω αὐτὸ  
 γενέσθαι. ἣν δ' ἵππεὺς γένωμαι, δυνήσομαι μὲν ἄνδρα  
 ἐξ ὀψεως μήκους καθαιρεῖν· δυνήσομαι δὲ θηρία διώκων  
 τὰ μὲν ἐκ χειρὸς παίειν καταλαμβάνων, τὰ δὲ ἀκοντίζειν  
 ὥσπερ ἐσθηκότα· καὶ γὰρ ἐὰν ἀμφοτέρω ταχέα ᾗ, ὅμως

καὶ φέρειν. ὅ γε μὴν μάλιστ' ἂν τις φοβηθείη, μὴ εἰ  
 δεήσει ἐφ' ἵππου |encounter danger; (+inf) |ρον πρὶν ἀκριβοῦν  
 |there is a danger that  
 τὸ ἔργον τοῦτο, κάπειτα μήτε |on foot; |footsoldier |ήτε πω  
 |rider |ικανοί, ἀλλ' οὐδὲ τοῦτο |helpless, |where γὰρ ἂν  
 |impossible  
 βουλόμεθα, ἐξέσται ἡμῖν |on foot; |footsoldier |εσθαί· οὐδὲν  
 γὰρ τῶν πεζικῶν ἀπομαθησόμεθα |ride |learn  
 |authority; |ν οὕτως εἶπε· Χρυσάντας δὲ |support |αὐτῷ  
 |validity  
 ὧδε ἔλεξεν.

Ἄλλ' ἐγὼ μὲν, ἔφη, οὕτως |wish, |ride |learn ὥς  
 |covet  
 νομίζω, ἦν |rider |γένωμαι, ἄνθρωπος πτηνὸς ἔσεσθαι.  
 νῦν μὲν γὰρ ἔγωγε |welcome, bē host |ἐξ ἴσου τῷ |run  
 ὀρμηθεὶς ἀνθρώπων μόνον τῇ κεφαλῇ πρόσχω, καὶ  
 θηρίον |run beside |ιδὼν δυνασθῶ |extend; (mp) try |φθάσαι  
 |hard  
 ὥστε |throw, (+gen) |ἂ |shoot an arrow |at |alto- |forward, in the  
 |gether, |future; far  
 γενέσθαι. ἦν δ' |rider |γένωμαι, δυνήσομαι μὲν ἄνδρα  
 |very  
 ἐξ |sight |μήκους |take down, close |ίσομαι δὲ θηρία |chase  
 τὰ μὲν ἐκ χειρὸς |hit |seize, understand, |catch |throw, (+gen) at  
 |overtake; (mp) happen  
 ὥσπερ ἐσθηκότα· καὶ γὰρ ἐὰν ἀμφοτέρα ταχέα ᾖ, |anyway, neverthe-  
 |less

to meet the worst we can apprehend: suppose, before we are adepts, we are called upon to run some risk, and then find that we are neither infantry nor thoroughgoing cavalry? This may be a danger, but we can guard against it. We have it always in our power to turn into infantry again at a moment's notice. I do not propose that by learning to ride we should unlearn the arts of men on foot."

Thus spoke Cyrus, and Chrysantas rose to support him, saying:

"For my part I cannot say I so much desire to be a horseman as flatter myself that once I can ride I shall be a sort of flying man. At present when I race I am quiet content if, with a fair start, I can beat one of my rivals by the head, or when I sight my game I am happy if, by laying legs to the ground, I can get close enough to let fly javelin or arrow before he is clean out of range. But when once I am a horseman I shall be able to overhaul my man as far as I can see him, or come up with the beasts I chase and knock them over myself or else spear them as though they stood stock still, for when hunter and hunted are both of them racing, if they

*vocabulary*

**ἀμφιάζω** put clothes on someone  
 ~ambient  
**ἀνατρέπω** defeat, thwart ~trophy  
**ἀνθρώπινος** human  
**ἀπολαύω** have use, have a benefit  
**ἀπορέω** be confused, distressed  
**δειπνέω** eat, dine  
**δήπου** perhaps; is it not so?  
**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish  
 ~practice  
**ἔδος ἔδεος** (n, 3) seat, sitting  
 ~polyhedron  
**ἐναντίον** opposite, facing  
**ζηλώ** emulate, praise  
**ζῶον** being, animal; picture

**ἡδός ἡδεός** (n, 3) pleasure ~hedonism  
**ἵππεύω** ride  
**ἰσχύς -ος** (f) strength; body of troops  
**κρείσσων** more powerful; better  
**οὐκουν** certainly not  
**οὐκοῦν** not so?; and so  
**πλησίος** near, neighboring  
**προβουλεύω** take counsel before  
**προνοέω** foresee, think of ~paranoia  
**ρύμη** (ῥ) rush, swing; street  
**συγχομίζω** gather  
**συμφύω** pull together, mend  
**τάχος -ους** (n, 3) speed ~tachometer  
**ὑπομένω** stay behind, await ~remain  
**φύω** produce, beget; clasp ~physics

δὲ πλησίον γίγνηται ἀλλήλων, ὥσπερ τὰ ἐστηκότα  
 ἐστίν. ὦν δὲ δὴ μάλιστα δοκῶ ζῶων, ἔφη, ἐξηλωκέναι  
 ἵπποκενταύρους, εἰ ἐγένοντο ὥστε προβουλεύεσθαι μὲν  
 ἀνθρώπου φρονήσει, ταῖς δὲ χερσὶ τὸ δέον παλαμᾶσθαι,  
 ἵππου δὲ τάχος ἔχειν καὶ ἰσχύν, ὥστε τὸ μὲν φεύγον  
 αἰρεῖν, τὸ δ' ὑπομένον ἀνατρέπειν, οὐκουν πάντα καγὼ  
 ταῦτα ἵππεὺς γενόμενος συγκομίζομαι πρὸς ἑμαυτόν;  
 προνοεῖν μὲν γε ἔξω πάντα τῇ ἀνθρωπίνῃ γνώμῃ,  
 ταῖς δὲ χερσὶν ὀπλοφορήσω, διώξομαι δὲ τῷ ἵππῳ,  
 τὸν δ' ἐναντίον ἀνατρέψω τῇ τοῦ ἵππου ῥύμῃ, ἀλλ'  
 οὐ συμπεφυκὼς δεδήσομαι ὥσπερ οἱ ἵπποκένταυροι·  
 οὐκοῦν τοῦτό γε κρεῖττον ἢ συμπεφυκέναι. τοὺς μὲν  
 γὰρ ἵπποκενταύρους οἶμαι ἔγωγε πολλοῖς μὲν ἀπορεῖν  
 τῶν ἀνθρώποις ἡύρημένων ἀγαθῶν ὅπως δεῖ χρῆσθαι,  
 πολλῶν δὲ τῶν ἵπποις πεφυκότων ἡδέων πῶς αὐτῶν  
 χρὴ ἀπολαύειν. ἐγὼ δὲ ἦν ἵππεύειν μάθω, ὅταν μὲν  
 ἐπὶ τοῦ ἵππου γένωμαι, τὰ τοῦ ἵπποκενταύρου δήπου  
 διαπράξομαι· ὅταν δὲ καταβῶ, δειπνήσω καὶ ἀμφιέσομαι



δὲ |near γίγνηται ἀλλήλων, ὥσπερ τὰ ἐστηκότα  
 ἐστίν. ὦν δὲ δὴ μάλιστα δοκῶ ζῶων, ἔφη, |emulate,  
 |praise  
 ἵπποκενταύρους, εἰ ἐγένοντο ὥστε |take counsel before , μὲν  
 ἀνθρώπου φρονήσει, ταῖς δὲ χερσὶ τὸ δέον παλαμᾶσθαι,  
 ἵππου δὲ |speed ἔχειν καὶ |strength; ἄνδρ' τὸ μὲν φεύγον  
 |of troops  
 αἰρεῖν, τὸ δ' |stay behind, |defeat, , |certainly not. τα κάγὰ  
 |await |thwart  
 ταῦτα |rider γενόμενος |gather πρὸς ἐμαυτόν;  
 |foresee, μέν γε ἔξω πάντα τῇ |human |sign, mind, will, de-  
 |think of |cision  
 ταῖς δὲ χερσὶν ὅπλοφορήσω, |chase δὲ τῷ ἵππῳ,  
 τὸν δ' ἐναντίον |defeat, τῇ τοῦ ἵππου |rush, , ἀλλ'  
 |thwart |swing;  
 οὐ |pull together, mend ἵσομαι ὥσπερ οἱ ἵπποκενταυροί.  
 |street  
 |not so?; and so ' γε κρεῖττον ἢ |pull together, mend οὓς μὲν  
 γὰρ ἵπποκενταύρους οἶμαι ἔγωγε πολλοῖς μὲν |be confused,  
 |distressed  
 τῶν ἀνθρώποις ἡγήμενων ἀγαθῶν ὅπως δεῖ χρῆσθαι,  
 πολλῶν δὲ τῶν ἵπποις πεφυκότων ἡδέων |how? why? 'ν  
 |must, |have use, have ἐγὼ δὲ ἦν |ride μάθω, ὅταν μὲν  
 |should benefit  
 ἐπὶ τοῦ ἵππου γένωμαι, τὰ τοῦ ἵπποκενταύρου |perhaps; is  
 |it not so?  
 |travel over, ac- ὅταν δὲ |go down , |eat, dine καὶ |put clothes on  
 |comply |someone

are only side by side, it is as good as though neither of them moved. And the creature I have always envied," he continued, "the centaur—if only he had the intelligence and forethought of a man, the adroit skill and the cunning hand, with the swiftness and strength of a horse, so as to overtake all that fled before him, and overthrow all that resisted—why, all these powers I shall collect and gather in my own person when once I am a rider. Forethought I intend to keep with my human wits, my hands can wield my weapons, and my horse's legs will follow up the foe, and my horse's rush overthrow him. Only I shall not be tied and fettered to my steed, flesh of his flesh, and blood of his blood, like the old centaur. And that I count a great improvement on the breed, far better than being united to the animal, body and soul. The old centaur, I imagine, must have been for ever in difficulties; as a horse, he could not use the wonderful inventions of man, and as a man, he could not enjoy the proper pleasures of a horse. But I, if I learn to ride, once set me astride my horse, and I will do all that the centaur can, and yet, when I dismount, I can dress myself as a human being, and dine, and sleep in my

*vocabulary***αἰσχρός** shameful**δηλώω** show, disclose**διέρχομαι** pierce, traverse**έκών** willingly, on purpose; giving in too easily**έπέρομαι** ask as well; ask then**ίππεύω** ride**καθεύδω** lie down**ναός** (ἄ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia**νή** yea**οὐδαμῇ** nowhere**οὖς** οὖατος (n) ear**παντάπασιν** altogether; yes, certainly**Πέρσης** Persian**πλεονεκτέω** be greedy, take advantage**πορίζω** bring about, provide**προακούω** hear beforehand**προοράω** see before oneself**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark  
~semaphore**σύνθετος** compound**σφόδρα** very much**τεχμαίρομαι** conclude, declare from evidence**τέσσαρες** four ~trapezoid

καὶ καθευδήσω ὥσπερ οἱ ἄλλοι ἄνθρωποι· ὥστε τί ἄλλο  
 ἢ διαιρετὸς ἵπποκένταυρος καὶ πάλιν σύνθετος γίγνομαι;  
 ἔτι δ', ἔφη, καὶ τοῖσδε πλεονεκτήσω τοῦ ἵπποκενταύρου·  
 ὁ μὲν γὰρ δυοῖν ὀφθαλμοῖν ἑώρα τε καὶ δυοῖν ὤτοι  
 ἤκουεν· ἐγὼ δὲ τέτταρσι μὲν ὀφθαλμοῖς τεκμαροῦμαι,  
 τέτταρσι δὲ ὥσιν αἰσθήσομαι· πολλὰ γάρ φασι καὶ ἵππον  
 ἀνθρώπῳ τοῖς ὀφθαλμοῖς προορῶντα δηλοῦν, πολλὰ δὲ  
 τοῖς ὥσιν προακούοντα σημαίνειν. ἐμὲ μὲν οὖν, ἔφη,  
 γράφε τῶν ἵππεύειν ὑπερεπιθυμούντων. Νῆ τὸν Δί',  
 ἔφασαν οἱ ἄλλοι πάντες, καὶ ἡμᾶς γε. ἐκ τούτου δὴ ὁ  
 Κῦρος λέγει· Τί οὖν, ἔφη, ἐπεὶ σφόδρα ἡμῖν δοκεῖ ταῦτα,  
 εἰ καὶ νόμον ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς ποιησαίμεθα αἰσχυρὸν εἶναι, οἷς ἂν  
 ἵππους ἐγὼ πορίσω, ἢν τις φανῇ πεζῇ ἡμῶν πορευόμενος,  
 ἢν τε πολλὴν ἢν τε ὀλίγην ὁδὸν δέῃ διελθεῖν; ἵνα καὶ  
 παντάπασιν ἵπποκενταύρους ἡμᾶς οἴωνται οἱ ἄνθρωποι  
 εἶναι. ὁ μὲν οὕτως ἐπήρετο, οἱ δὲ πάντες συνήνεσαν· ὥστ'  
 ἔτι καὶ νῦν ἐξ ἐκείνου χρώνται Πέρσαι οὕτω, καὶ οὐδεὶς ἂν  
 τῶν καλῶν καγαθῶν ἐκῶν ὀφθείη Περσῶν οὐδαμῇ πεζὸς

καὶ |lie down ὥσπερ οἱ ἄλλοι ἄνθρωποι· ὥστε τί ἄλλο  
 ἢ διαιρετὸς ἵπποκένταυρος καὶ πάλιν |com- γίγνομαι;  
 |pound  
 ἔτι δ', ἔφη, καὶ τοῖσδε |be greedy, take τοῦ ἵπποκενταύρου·  
 |advantage  
 ὁ μὲν γὰρ δυοῖν |eye ἑώρα τε καὶ δυοῖν ὥτοι  
 ἦκουεν· ἐγὼ δὲ |four μὲν |eye |conclude, declare  
 |from evidence  
 |four δὲ |ear |perceive πολλὰ γάρ φασι καὶ ἵππον  
 ἀνθρώπῳ τοῖς |eye |see before one-|show, , πολλὰ δὲ  
 |self |disclose  
 τοῖς |ear |hear beforehand |give orders to; ἔμ' ἐμὲ μὲν οὖν, ἔφη,  
 |show; mark  
 γράφε τῶν |ride ὑπερεπιθυμούντων. Νῆ τὸν Δί,  
 ἔφασαν οἱ ἄλλοι πάντες, καὶ ἡμᾶς γε. ἐκ τούτου δὴ ὁ  
 Κῦρος λέγει· Τί οὖν, ἔφη, ἐπεὶ |very much, ἡμῖν δοκεῖ ταῦτα,  
 εἰ καὶ νόμον ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς ποιησαίμεθα |shameful εἶναι, οἷς ἂν  
 ἵππους ἐγὼ |bring , ἦν τις φανῇ πεζῇ ἡμῶν πορευόμενος,  
 |about,  
 ἦν τε πολλὴν ἦν τε ὀλίγην ὁδὸν δέη |pierce, , ἵνα καὶ  
 |traverse  
 |altogether; ἵπποκενταύρους ἡμᾶς οἶωνται οἱ ἄνθρωποι  
 |yes, certainly  
 εἶναι. ὁ μὲν οὕτως |ask as well; ἰ δὲ πάντες συνήνεσαν· ὥστ'  
 |ask then  
 ἔτι καὶ νῦν ἐξ ἐκείνου χρώνται Πέρσαι οὕτω, καὶ οὐδεὶς ἂν  
 τῶν καλῶν κάγαθῶν |willingly, θείῃ Περσῶν |nowhere |on foot; footsoldier

bed, like the rest of my kind: in short, I shall be a jointed centaur that can be taken to pieces and put together again. And I shall gain another point or so over the original beast: he, we know, had only two eyes to see with and two ears to hear with, but I shall watch with four eyes and with four ears I shall listen. You know, they tell us a horse can often see quicker than any man, and hear a sound before his master, and give him warning in some way. Have the goodness, therefore," he added, "to write my name down among those who want to ride."

"And ours too," they all cried, "ours too, in heaven's name!"

Then Cyrus spoke: "Gentlemen, since we are all so well agreed, suppose we make it a rule that every one who receives a horse from me shall be considered to disgrace himself if he is seen trudging afoot, be his journey long or short?"

Thus Cyrus put the question, and one and all assented; and hence it is that even to this day the custom is retained, and no Persian of the gentle class

*vocabulary***αἴγες** of goats**αἶξ** αἰγός (m) goat**αἰχμάλωτος** captive ~acute**ἀνδρεῖος** of a man, manly**βοά** din, a shout**βοάω** shout**βοεῖη** shield; leather, bovine**βόειος** shield; leather, bovine ~bovine**βοεύς** βοῦος (m) leather rope ~bovine**γοργός** fierce; vigorous**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous**διελαύνω** drive through, over ~elastic**διηγέομαι** detail, describe**ἐπαινέω** concur, praise, advise**ἐπιμελέομαι** take care of, oversee**ἐρωτάω** ask about something**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism**ἡνίκα** when**κατακαίνω** kill**κρείσσων** more powerful; better**μεγαληγορέω** boast, extol**μεστός** full**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics**οἶομαι** leave alone**οἶος** only, single**οἷς** sheep ~ewe**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

**ὀπόσος** as many as, how many, how great**προσελαύνω** go to, approach ~elastic**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)**προστίθηναι** add; impose; (mp) agree; side with ~thesis**σίτος** grain, bread, food ~parasite**σῶς** safe, alive

ἰών. οἱ μὲν δὴ ἐν τούτοις τοῖς λόγοις ἦσαν.

#### 4.4

Ἦνίκα δ' ἦν ἔξω μέσου ἡμέρας, προσήλαννον μὲν οἱ Μῆδοι ἱππεῖς καὶ Ὑρκάνιοι, ἵππους τε ἄγοντες αἰχμαλώτους καὶ ἄνδρας· ὅσοι γὰρ τὰ ὄπλα παρεδίδοσαν, οὐ κατέκαινον· ἐπεὶ δὲ προσήλασαν, πρῶτον μὲν αὐτῶν ἐπυνθάνετο ὁ Κῦρος εἰ σώοι οἱ πάντες εἶεν αὐτῷ· ἐπεὶ δὲ τοῦτ' ἔφασαν, ἐκ τούτου ἡρώτα τί ἔπραξαν. οἱ δὲ διηγοῦντο ἅ τ' ἐποίησαν καὶ ὡς ἀνδρείως ἕκαστα[...] ἐμεγαληγόρουν. ὁ δὲ διήκουέ τε ἡδέως πάντων ἃ ἐβούλοντο λέγειν· ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ ἐπήνεσεν αὐτοὺς οὕτως· Ἀλλὰ καὶ δηλοί τοι, ἔφη, ἐστὲ ὅτι ἄνδρες ἀγαθοὶ ἐγένεσθε· καὶ γὰρ μείζους φαίνεσθε καὶ καλλίους καὶ γοργότεροι ἢ πρόσθεν ἰδεῖν. ἐκ δὲ τούτου ἐπυνθάνετο ἤδη αὐτῶν καὶ ὁπόσῃν ὁδὸν διήλασαν καὶ εἰ οἰκοῖτο ἡ χώρα. οἱ δ' ἔλεγον ὅτι καὶ πολλὴν διελάσειαν καὶ πᾶσα οἰκοῖτο καὶ μεστὴ εἴη καὶ οἰῶν καὶ αἰγῶν καὶ βοῶν καὶ ἵππων καὶ σίτου καὶ πάντων ἀγαθῶν. Δυοῖν ἄν, ἔφη, ἐπιμελητέον ἡμῖν εἶη, ὅπως τε κρείττους ἐσόμεθα



ιών. οἱ μὲν δὲ ἐν τούτοις τοῖς λόγοις ἦσαν.

#### 4.4

|when δ' ἦν ἔξω μέσου ἡμέρας, |go to, approach , ἐν οἱ Μῆδοι  
 |rider καὶ Ὑρκάνιοι, ἵππους τε ἄγοντες |captive καὶ  
 ἄνδρας· ὅσοι γὰρ τὰ |tool |hand over , οὐ |kill  
 ἐπεὶ δὲ |go to, approach πρῶτον μὲν αὐτῶν |learn, inquire, |  
 (+gen) hear of  
 Κῦρος εἰ |safe οἱ πάντες εἰεν αὐτῷ· ἐπεὶ δὲ τοῦτ' ἔφασαν,  
 ἐκ τούτου |ask τί ἔπραξαν. οἱ δὲ |detail, ἃ τ'  
 |describe  
 ἐποίησαν καὶ ὥς |of a man, mānly :a[...] |boast, extol . ὁ  
 δὲ διήκουέ τε |sweet πάντων ἃ ἐβούλοντο λέγειν· ἔπειτα  
 δὲ καὶ |concur αὐτοὺς οὕτως· Ἀλλὰ καὶ |visible, . . ., ᾗ φη,  
 |conspicuous  
 ἐστὲ ὅτι ἄνδρες ἀγαθοὶ ἐγένεσθε· καὶ γὰρ μείζους φαίνεσθε  
 καὶ καλλίους καὶ |fierce; ἢ πρόσθεν ἰδεῖν. ἐκ δὲ τούτου  
 |vigorous  
 |learn, inquire, ᾗ δὲ αὐτῶν καὶ |as/how ὅσοι |drive καὶ εἰ  
 (+gen) hear of |many/great |through,  
 |inhabit ἢ |place . οἱ δ' ἔλεγον ὅτι καὶ πολλὰ |over  
 καὶ πᾶσα |inhabit καὶ |full εἴη καὶ οἰῶν καὶ αἰγῶν καὶ  
 βοῶν καὶ ἵππων καὶ |grain, καὶ πάντων ἀγαθῶν. Δυοῖν ἄν,  
 |bread,  
 ἔφη, |take care of, ἡμῖν εἴη, ὅπως τε κρείττους ἐσόμεθα  
 |oversee

would willingly be seen anywhere on foot.

#### 4.4

In this debate their time was spent, and when it was past midday the Median cavalry and the Hyrcanians came galloping home, bringing in men and horses from the enemy, for they had spared all who surrendered their arms. As they rode up the first inquiry of Cyrus was whether all of them were safe, and when they answered yes, he asked what they had achieved. And they told their exploits in detail, and how bravely they had borne themselves, magnifying it all. Cyrus heard their story through with a pleasant smile, and praised them for their work. "I can see for myself," he said, "that you have done gallant deeds. You seem to have grown taller and fairer and more terrible to look on than when we saw you last."

Then he made them tell him how far they had gone, and whether they had found the country inhabited. They said they had ridden a long way, and that the whole country was inhabited, and full of sheep and goats and cattle and horses, and rich in corn and every good thing.

"Then there are two matters," he said, "to which we must attend; first we must become masters of those

*vocabulary***αἰχμάλωτος** captive ~acute**ἀμείνων** comparative of ἀγαθός, noble**δήπου** perhaps; is it not so?**ἐρῆμος** empty**κατακαίνω** kill**κτῆμα** -τος (n, 3) possession**λιμός** (l, f) famine**νίκη** (i) victory ~Nike**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics**οἰκουμένη** inhabited**ὀρθός** upright, straight; correct, just

~orthogonal

**ὀρθόω** stand up**περιποιέω** preserve; obtain**σύμφορος** accompanying; suitable**τοιόσδε** such

τῶν ταῦτα ἐχόντων καὶ ὅπως αὐτοὶ μενοῦσιν· οἰκουμένη  
 μὲν γὰρ χώρα πολλοῦ ἄξιον κτῆμα· ἐρήμη δ' ἀνθρώπων  
 οὔσα ἐρήμη καὶ τῶν ἀγαθῶν γίνεσθαι. τοὺς μὲν οὖν  
 ἀμυνομένους, ἔφη, οἶδα ὅτι κατεκάνετε, ὀρθῶς ποιοῦντες·  
 τοῦτο γὰρ μάλιστα σώζει τὴν νίκην· τοὺς δὲ παραδιδόντας  
 αἰχμαλώτους ἡγάγετε· οὓς εἰ ἀφείμεν, τοῦτ' αὖ σύμφορον  
 ἂν, ὥς ἐγὼ φημι, ποιήσαιμεν· πρῶτον μὲν γὰρ νῦν οὐκ ἂν  
 φυλάττεσθαι οὐδὲ φυλάττειν ἡμᾶς τούτους δέοι, οὐδ' αὖ  
 σιτοποιεῖν τούτοις· οὐ γὰρ λιμῶ γε δήπου κατακανοῦμεν  
 αὐτούς· ἔπειτα δὲ τούτους ἀφέντες πλείοσιν αἰχμαλώτοις  
 χρησόμεθα. ἦν γὰρ κρατῶμεν τῆς χώρας, πάντες ἡμῖν  
 οἱ ἐν αὐτῇ οἰκοῦντες αἰχμάλωτοι ἔσονται· μᾶλλον δὲ  
 τούτους ζῶντας ἰδόντες καὶ ἀφεθέντας μενοῦσιν οἱ ἄλλοι  
 καὶ πείθεσθαι αἰρήσονται μᾶλλον ἢ μάχεσθαι. ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν  
 οὕτω γινώσκω· εἰ δ' ἄλλο τις ὁρᾷ ἄμεινον, λεγέτω. οἱ  
 δὲ ἀκούσαντες συνήνουν ταῦτα ποιεῖν. οὕτω δὲ ὁ Κῦρος  
 καλέσας τοὺς αἰχμαλώτους λέγει τοιάδε· Ἄνδρες, ἔφη, νῦν  
 τε ὅτι ἐπείθεσθε τὰς ψυχὰς περιεποιήσασθε, τοῦ τε



who own all this, and next we must ensure that they do not run away. A well-populated country is a rich possession, but a deserted land will soon become a desert. You have put the defenders to the sword, I know, and rightly—for that is the only safe road to victory; but you have brought in as prisoners those who laid down their arms. Now if we let these men go, I maintain we should do the very best thing for ourselves. We gain two points; first, we need neither be on our guard against them nor mount guard over them nor find them victuals (and we do not propose to starve them, I presume), and in the next place, their release means more prisoners to-morrow. For if we dominate the country all the inhabitants are ours, and if they see that these men are still alive and at large they will be more disposed to stay where they are, and prefer obedience to battle. That is my own view, but if any one sees a better course, let him point it out.”

However, all his hearers approved the plan proposed. Thus it came to pass that Cyrus summoned the prisoners and said to them:

”Gentlemen, you owe it to

*vocabulary***ἄδολος** honest, genuine**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise  
~angel**ἀποφέρω** carry off, carry back ~bear**διαγγέλλω** send news, proclaim**ἔργω** bound, fend off; do ~ergonomics**ἔρδω** do, perform ~ergonomics**εὐεργέτης** -ου (m, 1) benefactor**εὐνοϊκός** friendly, not hostile**ἡνίκα** when**καινός** new, fresh, strange**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
~hoplite**ὀπόσος** as many as, how many, how  
great**περιέπω** treat, handle**πολεμικός** warlike, hostile ~polemic**προσκυνέω** kow tow to; kiss**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war,  
campaign ~strategy**συνοικέω** live together**ὕμέτερος** (ὅ) yours**ὕπισχνέομαι** promise, agree to do  
~ischemia

λοιποῦ, ἣν οὕτω ποιῆτε, οὐδ' ὅτιοῦν καινὸν ἔσται ὑμῖν ἀλλ' ἢ οὐχ ὁ αὐτὸς ἄρξει ὑμῶν ὅσπερ καὶ πρότερον· οἰκήσετε δὲ τὰς αὐτὰς οἰκίας καὶ χώραν τὴν αὐτὴν ἐργάσεσθε καὶ γυναιξὶ ταῖς αὐταῖς συνοικήσετε καὶ παίδων τῶν ὑμετέρων ἄρξετε ὥσπερ νῦν· ἡμῖν μέντοι οὐ μαχεῖσθε οὐδὲ ἄλλω οὐδενί· ἡνίκα δ' ἂν τις ὑμᾶς ἀδικῇ, ἡμεῖς ὑπὲρ ὑμῶν μαχούμεθα. ὅπως δὲ μηδ' ἐπαγγέλλῃ μηδεὶς ὑμῖν στρατεύειν, τὰ ὅπλα πρὸς ἡμᾶς κομίσατε· καὶ τοῖς μὲν κομίζουσιν ἔσται εἰρήνη καὶ ἃ λέγομεν ἀδόλως· ὅποσοι δ' ἂν τὰ πολεμικὰ μὴ ἀποφέρωσιν ὅπλα, ἐπὶ τούτους ἡμεῖς καὶ δὴ στρατευσόμεθα. ἐὰν δέ τις ὑμῶν καὶ ἰὼν ὡς ἡμᾶς εὐνοϊκῶς καὶ πράττων τι καὶ διδάσκων φαίνεται, τοῦτον ἡμεῖς ὡς εὐεργέτην καὶ φίλον, οὐχ ὡς δοῦλον περιέψομεν. ταῦτ' οὖν, ἔφη, αὐτοί τε ἴστε καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις διαγγέλλετε. ἦν δ' ἄρα, ἔφη, ὑμῶν βουλομένων ταῦτα μὴ πείθωνταί τινες, ἐπὶ τούτους ἡμᾶς ἄγετε, ὅπως ἡμεῖς ἐκείνων, μὴ ἐκείνοι ὑμῶν ἄρχωσιν. ὁ μὲν δὴ ταῦτ' εἶπεν· οἱ δὲ προσεκύνουν τε καὶ ὑπισχνοῦντο ταῦτα ποιήσειν.



|left over, ἤν οὕτω ποιῆτε, οὐδ' ὅτιοῦν |new, fresh, strange· ἀλλ'  
 ἡ οὐχ ὁ αὐτὸς ἄρξει ὑμῶν ὅσπερ καὶ πρότερον· |inhabit  
 δὲ τὰς αὐτὰς |building, .aὶ |place τὴν αὐτὴν ἐργάσεσθε  
 |house  
 καὶ γυναιξὶ ταῖς αὐταῖς |live together καὶ παίδων τῶν  
 |yours ἄρξετε ὥσπερ νῦν· ἡμῖν |however ὑ μαχεῖσθε  
 οὐδὲ ἄλλω οὐδενί· |when δ' ἂν τις ὑμᾶς |be, do 'wrong; τὲρ  
 |wrong someone  
 ὑμῶν μαχοῦμεθα. ὅπως δὲ |and not; not, even, μηδεὶς ὑμῖν  
 |make an expedi-|tool πρὸς ἡμᾶς κομίσαστε· καὶ τοῖς μὲν  
 |tion, war, cam-  
 |paign  
 |tend; ἔ-bring|peace καὶ ἃ λέγομεν |honest, |as/how many/great  
 |back/away; (mp) |genuine  
 |travel  
 ὅ ἂν τὰ |warlike, μὴ |carry off |tool , ἐπὶ τούτους  
 |hostile  
 ἡμεῖς καὶ δὴ |make an expedition, ἂν δέ τις ὑμῶν καὶ ἰὼν ὡς  
 |war, campaign  
 ἡμᾶς |friendly, καὶ πράττων τι καὶ |teach φαίνηται,  
 |not hostile  
 τούτον ἡμεῖς ὡς |benefactor καὶ φίλον, οὐχ ὡς |born enslaved,  
 |servile  
 περιέψομεν. ταῦτ' οὖν, ἔφη, αὐτοὶ τε ἴστε καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις  
 |send news, proclaim ὅ ἄρα, ἔφη, ὑμῶν βουλομένων ταῦτα  
 μὴ πείθωνταί τινες, ἐπὶ τούτους ἡμᾶς ἄγετε, ὅπως ὑμεῖς  
 ἐκείνων, μὴ ἐκείνοι ὑμῶν ἄρχωσιν. ὁ μὲν δὴ ταῦτ' εἶπεν·  
 οἱ δὲ |kow tow to; kiss - καὶ |promise, agree ταῦτα ποιήσιν.

your own obedience this day that your lives are safe; and for the future if you continue in this conduct, no evil whatsoever shall befall you; true, you will not have the same ruler as before, but you will dwell in the same houses, you will cultivate the same land, you will live with your wives and govern your children as you do now. Moreover you will not have us to fight with, nor any one else. On the contrary, if any wrong is done you, it is we who will fight on your behalf. And to prevent any one from ordering you to take the field, you will bring your arms to us and hand them over. Those who do this can count on peace and the faithful fulfilment of our promises; those who will not, must expect war, and that at once. Further, if any man of you comes to us and shows a friendly spirit, giving us information and helping us in any way, we will treat him not as a servant, but as a friend and benefactor. This," he added, "we wish you to understand yourselves and make known among your fellows. And if it should appear that you yourselves are willing to comply but others hinder you, lead us against them, and you shall be their masters, not they yours."

Such were his words; and they made obeisance and promised to do as he bade.

*vocabulary***ἀκέραιος** unmixed; unharmed**βέλτιστος** best, noblest**δειπνέω** eat, dine**διάγω** lead through; pass a time

~demagogue

**ἐνθάδε** here, hither**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable**ἡδέως** pleasantly ~hedonism**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism**ἡμισυς** half ~hemisphere**ἱμάτιον** toga, cloth**μεταλαμβάνω** share in; swap**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

**οὐπω** no longer**πιέζω** press, squeeze ~piezoelectric**σίτος** grain, bread, food ~parasite**σκηνή** tent; stage

## 4.5

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐκεῖνοι ὄχοντο, ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν· Ὡρα δὴ, ὦ Μῆδοι καὶ Ἀρμένιοι, δειπνεῖν πᾶσιν ἡμῖν· παρεσκεύασται δὲ ὑμῖν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ὡς ἡμεῖς βέλτιστα ἐδυνάμεθα. ἀλλ' ἴτε καὶ ἡμῖν πέμπετε τοῦ πεποιημένου σίτου τὸν ἥμισυν· ἱκανὸς δὲ ἀμφοτέροις πεποίηται· ὄψον δὲ μὴ πέμπετε μηδὲ πιεῖν· ἱκανὰ γὰρ ἔχομεν παρ' ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς παρεσκευασμένα. καὶ ὑμεῖς δέ, ὦ Ὑρκάνιοι, ἔφη, διάγετε αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνάς, τοὺς μὲν ἄρχοντας ἐπὶ τὰς μεγίστας, γιγνώσκετε δέ, τοὺς δ' ἄλλους ὡς ἂν δοκῇ κάλλιστα ἔχειν· καὶ αὐτοὶ δὲ δειπνεῖτε ὅπουπερ ἡδιστον ὑμῖν· σῶαι μὲν γὰρ ὑμῖν καὶ ἀκέραιοι αἱ σκηναί· παρεσκεύασται δὲ καὶ ὑμῖν ἐνθάδε ὥσπερ καὶ τούτοις. καὶ τοῦτο δὲ ἵστε ἀμφοτέροι· ὅτι τὰ μὲν ἔξω ὑμῖν ἡμεῖς νυκτοφυλακήσομεν, τὰ δ' ἐν ταῖς σκηναῖς αὐτοὶ ὁράτε καὶ τὰ ὄπλα εὖ τίθεσθε· οἱ γὰρ ἐν ταῖς σκηναῖς οὐπω φίλοι ἡμῖν. οἱ μὲν δὴ Μῆδοι καὶ οἱ ἀμφὶ Τιγράνην ἐλοῦντο, καί, ἦν γὰρ παρεσκευασμένα, καὶ ἱμάτια μεταλαβόντες ἐδείπνουν, καὶ οἱ ἵπποι αὐτοῖς

## 4.5

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐκείνοι |come, go ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν· Ὡρα δὴ, ὦ Μῆδοι  
καὶ Ἀρμένιοι, |eat, dine πᾶσιν ἡμῖν· |prepare, render δὲ ὑμῖν  
τὰ |fit, suitable ὥς ἡμεῖς |best, |noblest ἐδυνάμεθα. ἀλλ' ἵτε καὶ  
ἡμῖν πέμπετε τοῦ πεποιημένου |grain, τὸν |half |sufficient; fit, em-  
|bread, |powered  
δὲ |both πεποιήται· ὅσον δὲ μὴ πέμπετε |and not; not even  
|sufficient; |fit, |χομεν παρ' ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς |prepare, render . καὶ  
|empowered  
ὑμεῖς δέ, ὦ Ὑρκάνιοι, ἔφη, |lead through; ὕς ἐπὶ τὰς |tent;  
|pass a time |stage ,  
τοὺς μὲν ἄρχοντας ἐπὶ τὰς μεγίστας, γιννώσκετε δέ,  
τοὺς δ' ἄλλους ὥς ἂν δοκῇ κάλλιστα ἔχειν· καὶ αὐτοὶ δὲ  
|eat, dine ὅπουπερ ἡδιστον ὑμῖν· σῶαι μὲν γὰρ ὑμῖν καὶ  
|unmixed; |here,  
|unharmed |stage |prepare, render δὲ καὶ ὑμῖν |hither  
ὥσπερ καὶ τούτοις. καὶ τοῦτο δὲ ἴστε |both ὅτι  
τὰ μὲν ἔξω ὑμῖν ἡμεῖς νυκτοφυλακήσομεν, τὰ δ' ἐν ταῖς  
|tent;  
|stage αὐτοὶ ὁρᾶτε καὶ τὰ |tool εὖ τίθεσθε· οἱ γὰρ ἐν  
ταῖς |tent;  
|stage |no longer ἔλοι ἡμῖν. οἱ μὲν δὲ Μῆδοι καὶ οἱ  
ἀμφὶ Τιγράνην ἐλοῦντο, καί, ἦν γὰρ |prepare, render , καὶ  
|toga, |share in; swap |eat, dine , καὶ οἱ ἵπποι αὐτοῖς  
|cloth

## 4.5

And when they were gone, Cyrus turned to the Medes and the men of Armenia, and said, "It is high time, gentlemen, that we should dine, one and all of us; food and drink are prepared for you, the best we had skill to find. Send us, if you will, the half of the bread that has been baked; there is ample, I know, for both of us; but do not send any relish with it, nor any drink, we have quite enough at hand. And do you," he added, turning to the Hyrcanians, "conduct our friends to their quarters, the officers to the largest tents—you know where they are—and the rest where you think best. For yourselves, you may dine where you like; your quarters are intact, and you will find everything there prepared for you exactly as it is for the others. All of you alike must understand that during the night we Persians will guard the camp outside, but you must keep an eye over what goes on within; and see that your arms are ready to hand; our messmates are not our friends as yet."

So the Medes and Tigranes with his men washed away the stains of battle, and put on the apparel that was laid out for them, and fell to

*vocabulary***ἀλίσκομαι** be captured ~helix**ἀποδιδράσκω** escape**ἀπορέω** be confused, distressed**ἀποσφάζω** cut the throat**ἄρτος** bread, loaf**αὐλέω** play (blow, toot)**ἄφθονος** ungrudging, plentiful**γρηγορέω** be fully awake**δειπνίζω** host at a meal**δεκάς** -δος (f, 3) decade, group of ten

~decimal

**διάγω** lead through; pass a time

~demagogue

**διαπέμπω** send out/over**ἐμπίμπλημι** fill with**ἐξωθεν** from outside**ἐπιτήδειος** fit, suitable**εὐωχέω** fete, feed well**ἥμισυς** half ~hemisphere**κύκλος** circle, wheel ~cycle**λιμός** (i, f) famine**νύκτωρ** by night**παραρρέω** flow past, slip by**Πέρσης** Persian**πιέζω** press, squeeze ~piezoelectric**προσίημι** be allowed near**φυλακή** guard, prison, watch

~phylactery

εἶχον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια· καὶ τοῖς Πέρσαις δὲ ἔπεμπον τῶν  
ἄρτων τοὺς ἡμίσεις. ὄψον δὲ οὐκ ἔπεμπον οὐδ' οἶνον,  
οἰόμενοι ἔχειν τοὺς ἀμφὶ Κῦρον ἔτι ἄφθονα ταῦτα. ὁ  
δὲ Κῦρος ταῦτα ἔλεγεν ὄψον μὲν τὸν λιμόν, πιεῖν δ' ἀπὸ  
τοῦ παραρρέοντος ποταμοῦ. ὁ μὲν οὖν Κῦρος δειπνίσας  
τοὺς Πέρσας, ἐπεὶ συνεσκότασε, κατὰ πεμπάδας καὶ  
κατὰ δεκάδας πολλοὺς αὐτῶν διέπεμψε καὶ ἐκέλευσε  
κύκλῳ τοῦ στρατοπέδου κρυπτεῦν, νομίζων ἅμα μὲν  
φυλακὴν ἔσεσθαι, ἂν τις ἔξωθεν προσίη, ἅμα δέ, ἂν τις  
ἔξω φέρων χρήματα ἀποδιδράσκη, ἀλώσεσθαι αὐτόν· καὶ  
ἐγένετο οὕτω· πολλοὶ μὲν γὰρ ἀπεδίδρασκον, πολλοὶ δὲ  
έάλωσαν. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος τὰ μὲν χρήματα τοὺς λαβόντας  
εἶα ἔχειν, τοὺς δὲ ἀνθρώπους ἀποσφάξαι ἐκέλευσεν·  
ὥστε τοῦ λοιποῦ οὐδὲ βουλόμενος ἂν ἡῦρες ῥαδίως τὸν  
νύκτωρ πορευόμενον. οἱ μὲν δὴ Πέρσαις οὕτω διῆγον·  
οἱ δὲ Μῆδοι καὶ ἔπινον καὶ εὖωχούντο καὶ ἠυλοῦντο  
καὶ πάσης εὐθυμίας ἐνεπίμπλαντο· πολλὰ γὰρ καὶ τὰ  
τοιαῦτα ἦλω, ὥστε μὴ ἀπορεῖν ἔργου τοὺς ἐγρηγορότας.



εἶχον τὰ |fit, suitable καὶ τοῖς Πέρσαις δὲ ἔπεμπον τῶν  
 |bread τοὺς |half . ὄψον δὲ οὐκ ἔπεμπον οὐδ' οἶνον,  
 οἰόμενοι ἔχειν τοὺς ἀμφὶ Κῦρον ἔτι |ungrudging, ἵτα. ὁ  
 |plentiful  
 δὲ Κῦρος ταῦτα ἔλεγεν ὄψον μὲν τὸν |famine πιεῖν δ' ἀπὸ  
 τοῦ |flow past, slip by |river ὁ μὲν οὖν Κῦρος |host at a meal  
 τοὺς Πέρσας, ἐπεὶ συνεσκότασε, κατὰ πεμπάδας καὶ  
 κατὰ |decade πολλοὺς αὐτῶν |send out/over ἵ ἐκέλευσε  
 |circle, τοῦ |army camp κρυπτεύειν, |consider ᾗς- μὲν  
 |wheel  
 |guard, ἔσεσθαι, ἂν τις |from |be allowed ᾗς- ἔ, ἂν τις  
 |prison, |outside  
 |watch, ἐξω φέρων χρήματα |escape , |be captured αὐτόν· καὶ  
 ἐγένετο οὕτω· πολλοὶ μὲν γὰρ |escape , πολλοὶ δὲ  
 |be captured ὁ δὲ Κῦρος τὰ μὲν χρήματα τοὺς λαβόντας  
 εἶα ἔχειν, τοὺς δὲ ἀνθρώπους |cut the throat ἐκέλευσεν·  
 ὥστε τοῦ |left over οὐδὲ βουλόμενος ἂν ἡῦρες |easy τὸν  
 |by night πορευόμενον. οἱ μὲν δὲ Πέρσαι οὕτω |lead through; pass a  
 |time  
 οἱ δὲ Μῆδοι καὶ ἔπινον καὶ |fete, feed well :αὶ |play (blow, toot)  
 καὶ πάσης εὐθυμίας |fill with πολλὰ γὰρ καὶ τὰ  
 τοιαῦτα ἦλω, ὥστε μὴ |be confused, /ου τοὺς ἐγρηγορότας.  
 |distressed

dinner, and the horses had their provender too. They sent half the bread to the Persians but no relish with it and no wine, thinking that Cyrus and his men possessed a store, because he had said they had enough and to spare. But Cyrus meant the relish of hunger, and the draught from the running river. Thus he regaled his Persians, and when the darkness fell he sent them out by fives and tens and ordered them to lie in ambush around the camp, so as to form a double guard, against attack from without, and absconders from within; any one attempting to make off with treasures would be caught in the act. And so it befell; for many tried to escape, and all of them were seized. As for the treasures, Cyrus allowed the captors to keep them, but he had the absconders beheaded out of hand, so that for the future a thief by night was hardly to be found. Thus the Persians passed their time. But the Medes drank and feasted and made music and took their fill of good cheer and all delights; there was plenty to serve their purpose, and work enough for those

*vocabulary***ἀγνώμων** headstrong, unfeeling**ἄτε** as if; since**ἄω** aor: to sate ~sate**δεσπότης** -ου (m, 1) master, despot**ἕζομαι** act: set, seat; pass: sit down, sit up ~sit**ἐνταῦθα** there, here**ἐρῆμος** empty**εὐτυχία** good luck, success**θορυβέω** roar, cheer; disturb**θόρυβος** noise, clamor**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon**κενός** empty, vain**οἰκέτης** -ου (m, 1) household; house slave**οἶχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone**σκηνώ** camp**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**συνδειπνέω** eat with**ώμος** raw

Ὁ Δὲ Κναξάρης ὁ τῶν Μήδων βασιλεὺς τὴν μὲν νύκτα ἐν ἧ  
 ἐξῆλθεν ὁ Κύρος αὐτός τε ἐμεθύσκετο μεθ' ὧνπερ ἐσκήνου  
 ὥς ἐπ' εὐτυχία, καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους δὲ Μήδους ᾤετο παρεῖναι  
 ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ πλὴν ὀλίγων, ἀκούων θόρυβον  
 πολύν· οἱ γὰρ οἰκέται τῶν Μήδων, ἅτε τῶν δεσποτῶν  
 ἀπεληλυθότων, ἀνειμένως ἔπινον καὶ ἐθορύβουν, ἄλλως  
 τε καὶ ἐκ τοῦ Ἀσσυρίου στρατεύματος καὶ οἶνον καὶ  
 ἄλλα πολλὰ εἰληφότες. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμέρα ἐγένετο, καὶ  
 ἐπὶ θύρας οὐδεὶς ἦκε πλὴν οἵπερ καὶ συνεδείπνουν, καὶ  
 τὸ στρατόπεδον ἤκουε κενὸν εἶναι τῶν Μήδων καὶ  
 τῶν ἱππέων, καὶ ἑώρα, ἐπειδὴ ἐξῆλθεν, οὕτως ἔχοντα,  
 ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐβριμοῦτό τε τῷ Κύρῳ καὶ τοῖς Μήδοις τῷ  
 καταλιπόντας αὐτὸν ἔρημον οἴχεσθαι, καὶ εὐθύς, ὥσπερ  
 λέγεται ὦμος εἶναι καὶ ἀγνώμων, τῶν παρόντων κελεύει  
 τινὰ λαβόντα τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ ἱππέας πορεύεσθαι ὥς τάχιστα  
 ἐπὶ τὸ ἀμφὶ Κύρον στράτευμα καὶ λέγειν τάδε. Ὡμην μὲν  
 ἔγωγε, οὐδ' ἂν σέ, ὦ Κύρε, περὶ ἐμοῦ οὕτως ἀπρονοήτως  
 βουλευσαι, εἰ δὲ Κύρος οὕτω γινώσκει, οὐκ ἂν ὑμᾶς,

Ὁ Δὲ Κναζάρης ὁ τῶν Μήδων βασιλεὺς τὴν μὲν νύκτα ἐν ἧ  
 ἐξῆλθεν ὁ Κῦρος αὐτός τε ἐμεθύσκετο μεθ' ὧνπερ |camp  
 ὥς ἐπ' εὐτυχία, καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους δὲ Μήδους ᾤετο παρῆναι  
 ἐν τῷ |army camp |except ὀλίγων, ἀκούων |noise,  
 πολύν· οἱ γὰρ |household; |house slave ἐν Μήδων, ἅτε τῶν |master,  
 |go away, depart , ἀναιμένως |drink καὶ |roar, cheer; , ἄλλως  
 |disturb  
 τε καὶ ἐκ τοῦ Ἀσσυρίου |army καὶ οἶνον καὶ  
 ἄλλα πολλὰ εἰληφότες. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμέρα ἐγένετο, καὶ  
 ἐπὶ |door οὐδεὶς ἦκε |except οἵπερ καὶ |eat with , καὶ  
 τὸ |army camp ἤκουε |empty, vain... τῶν Μήδων καὶ  
 τῶν |rider , καὶ ἑώρα, ἐπειδὴ ἐξῆλθεν, οὕτως ἔχοντα,  
 |there, here ἢ ἐβριμοῦτό τε τῷ Κύρῳ καὶ τοῖς Μήδοις τῷ  
 |leave behind, αὐτὸν ἔρημον |come, go , καὶ εὐθύς, ὥσπερ  
 |abandon  
 λέγεται |raw εἶναι καὶ |headstrong, τῶν παρόντων κελεύει  
 |unfeeling  
 τινὰ λαβόντα τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ |rider πορεύεσθαι ὥς τάχιστα  
 ἐπὶ τὸ ἀμφὶ Κῦρον |army καὶ λέγειν τάδε. Ὡμην μὲν  
 ἔγωγε, οὐδ' ἂν σέ, ὦ Κῦρε, περὶ ἐμοῦ οὕτως ἀπρονοήτως  
 |(mp) to deliberate· Κῦρος οὕτω γινώσκοι, οὐκ ἂν ὑμᾶς,

who did not sleep.

Cyaxares, the king of the Medes, on the very night when Cyrus set forth, drank himself drunk in company with the officers in his own quarters to celebrate their good fortune. Hearing uproar all about him, he thought that the rest of the Medes must have stayed behind in the camp, except perhaps a few, but the fact was that their domestics, finding the masters gone, had fallen to drinking in fine style and were making a din to their hearts' content, the more so that they had procured wine and dainties from the Assyrian camp. But when it was broad day and no one knocked at the palace gate except the guests of last night's revel, and when Cyaxares heard that the camp was deserted—the Medes gone, the cavalry gone—and when he went out and saw for himself that it was so, then he fumed with indignation against Cyrus and his own men, to think that they had gone off and left him in the lurch. It is said that without more ado, savage and mad with anger as he was, he ordered one of his staff to take his troopers and ride at once to Cyrus and his men, and there deliver this message:

"I Should never have dreamed that Cyrus could have acted towards me with such scant respect, or, if he could have thought of it, that the Medes

*vocabulary***ἀνιάω** (ι) vex**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise  
~angel**ἀπειλέω** vow, threaten, boast**ἀπειλή** boast, threat**ἀποκαλέω** call back; call a name**δεσπότης** -ου (m, 1) master, despot**δεῦρο** here, come here!**διασχίζω** tear to pieces ~schism**ἐπιστέλλω** send to, order**ἐρῆμος** empty**ἰσχυρός** (υ) strong, forceful, violent**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon**ναός** (ᾱ) temple, shrine ~nostalgia**νή** yea**οἶχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone**ὀργίζω** anger, provoke, annoy**πλανάω** lead astray; (mp) wander

~plankton

**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)**προστίθηναι** add; impose; (mp) agree;  
side with ~thesis**σπουδή** zeal; (dat) with difficulty,  
hastily ~repudiate**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**φίλιος** friendly**φιλόω** (ι) strip bare ~epsilon

ὦ Μῆδοι, ἐθελῆσαι οὕτως ἔρημον ἐμὲ καταλιπεῖν. καὶ νῦν, ἂν μὲν Κῦρος βούληται, εἰ δὲ μή, ὑμεῖς γε τὴν ταχίστην πάρεστε. ταῦτα δὴ ἐπέστειλεν. ὁ δὲ ταπτόμενος πορεύεσθαι ἔφη· Καὶ πῶς, ὦ δέσποτα, ἐγὼ εὐρήσω ἐκείνους; Πῶς δὲ Κῦρος, ἔφη, καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ ἐφ' οὓς ἐπορεύοντο; Ὅτι νῆ Δί', ἔφη, ἀκούω ἀφεστηκότας τῶν πολεμίων Ὑρκανίους τινὰς καὶ ἐλθόντας δεῦρο οἴχεσθαι ἡγουμένους αὐτῷ. ἀκούσας δὲ ταῦτα ὁ Κναζάρης πολὺ μᾶλλον ἔτι τῷ Κύρῳ ὠργίζετο τῷ μῆδ' εἰπεῖν αὐτῷ ταῦτα, καὶ πολλῇ σπουδῇ μᾶλλον ἔπεμπεν ἐπὶ τοὺς Μήδους, ὥς ψιλώσων αὐτόν, καὶ ἰσχυρότερον ἔτι ἢ πρόσθεν τοῖς Μήδοις ἀπειλῶν ἀπεκάλει, καὶ τῷ πεμπομένῳ δὲ ἡπείλει, εἰ μὴ ἰσχυρῶς ταῦτα ἀπαγγέλλοι.

Ὁ Μὲν δὴ πεμπόμενος ἐπορεύετο ἔχων τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ ἱππέας ὥς ἑκατόν, ἀνιόμενος ὅτι οὐ καὶ αὐτὸς τότε ἐπορεύθη μετὰ τοῦ Κύρου. ἐν δὲ τῇ ὁδῷ πορευόμενοι διασχισθέντες τρίβῳ τινὶ ἐπλανῶντο, καὶ οὐ πρόσθεν ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸ φίλιον στράτευμα πρὶν ἐντυχόντες



ὦ Μῆδοι, ἐθελῆσαι οὕτως ἔρημον ἐμέ |leave behind, καὶ  
 |abandon  
 νῦν, ἂν μὲν Κῦρος βούληται, εἰ δὲ μή, ὑμεῖς γε τὴν  
 ταχίστην πάρεστε. ταῦτα δὴ |send to, order ἵ δὲ |arrange  
 πορεύεσθαι ἔφη· Καὶ |how? why? |master, , ἐγὼ εὐρήσω  
 |despot  
 ἐκείνους; |how? why? ἄρως, ἔφη, καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ ἐφ' οὓς  
 ἐπορεύοντο; Ὅτι νῆ Δί, ἔφη, ἀκούω |stand apart; ex- τῶν  
 |act payment  
 πολεμίων Ὑρκανίους τινὰς καὶ ἐλθόντας |here, |come, go  
 |come  
 ἡγουμένους αὐτῷ. ἀκούσας δὲ ταῦτα ὁ Κρυζάρης πολὺ  
 |here!  
 μᾶλλον ἔτι τῷ Κύρῳ |anger, provoke, |and not; not even, ταῦτα,  
 |annoy  
 καὶ πολλῇ |zeal; (dat) with ν ἔπεμπεv ἐπὶ τοὺς Μήδους,  
 |difficulty, hastily  
 ὥς |strip bare αὐτόν, καὶ |strong, force- ἔτι ἢ πρόσθεν τοῖς  
 |ful, violent  
 Μήδοις ἀπειλῶν |call back; καὶ τῷ πεμπομένῳ δὲ |vow, threaten, boast  
 |call a name  
 εἰ μὴ |strong, forcefūl, vi- |announce, or-  
 |olent |der, promise  
 Ὁ Μὲν δὴ πεμπόμενος ἐπορεύετο ἔχων τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ  
 |rider ὥς |hundred |vex ὅτι οὐ καὶ αὐτὸς τότε  
 ἐπορεύθη μετὰ τοῦ Κύρου. ἐν δὲ τῇ ὁδῷ πορευόμενοι  
 |tear to pieces τρίβῳ τινὶ |lead astray; καὶ οὐ πρόσθεν  
 |(mp) wander  
 |arrive ἐπὶ τὸ |friendly |army |before, formerly; ,  
 |negated: until

could have borne to desert me in this way. And now, whether Cyrus will or no, I command the Medes to present themselves before me without delay.”

Such was the message. But he who was to take it said, “And how shall I find them, my lord?”

“Why,” said Cyaxares, “as Cyrus and his men found those they went to seek.”

“I Only asked,” continued the messenger, “because I was told that some Hyrcanians who had revolted from the enemy came here, and went off with him to act as guides.”

When Cyaxares heard that, he was the more enraged to think that Cyrus had never told him, and the more urgent to have his Medes removed from him at once, and he summoned them home under fiercer threats than ever; threatening the officer as well if he failed to deliver the message in full force.

So the emissary set off with his troopers, about one hundred strong, fervently regretting that he had not gone with Cyrus himself. On the way they took a turning which led them wrong, and they did not reach the Persians until they had chanced upon some of

*vocabulary*

**ἀλλότριος** someone else's; alien ~alien  
**ἀναγκάζω** force, compel  
**ἀναφαίνω** reveal, shine ~phenomenon  
**ἀποχωρέω** go away from, retreat  
**ἐγκρατής** firm, powerful  
**εἴπερ** if indeed  
**εἴτε** if, whenever; either/or  
**ἐξαιρέω** pick, steal; dedicate; destroy  
 ~heresy  
**ἐπιθυμέω** (ὄ) wish, covet  
**ἐπιπέμπω** send after, again, to, besides  
**ἰσχύς** -ος (f) strength; body of troops  
**καθοράω** look down ~panorama

**καταλείπω** leave behind, abandon  
 ~eclipse  
**ὀμότιμος** (ἶ) equally honored  
**ὀπόσος** as many as, how many, how  
 great  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**προφαίνω** show; pass: appear  
 ~photon  
**πυρά** pyre ~pyre  
**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy  
**συγκαλέω** call together ~gallo  
**ὕποφαίνω** show a little ~photon  
**φύλαξ** -χος (m) guard; sentry  
 ~phylactery

ἀποχωροῦσί τισι τῶν Ἀσσυρίων ἠνάγκασαν αὐτοὺς  
 ἡγεῖσθαι· καὶ οὕτως ἀφικνοῦνται τὰ πυρὰ κατιδόντες  
 ἀμφὶ μέσας πως νύκτας. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐγένοντο πρὸς τῷ  
 στρατοπέδῳ, οἱ φύλακες, ὥσπερ εἰρημένον ἦν ὑπὸ Κύρου,  
 οὐκ εἰσέφρηκαν αὐτοὺς πρὸ ἡμέρας. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμέρα  
 ὑπέφαινε, πρῶτον μὲν τοὺς μάγους καλέσας ὁ Κῦρος  
 τὰ τοῖς θεοῖς νομιζόμενα ἐπὶ τοῖς τοιούτοις ἀγαθοῖς  
 ἐξαιρεῖσθαι ἐκέλευε. καὶ οἱ μὲν ἀμφὶ ταῦτα εἶχον· ὁ δὲ  
 συγκαλέσας τοὺς ὁμοτίμους εἶπεν· Ἄνδρες, ὁ μὲν θεὸς  
 προφαίνει πολλὰ καγαθὰ· ἡμεῖς δὲ οἱ Πέρσαι ἐν τῷ  
 παρόντι ὀλίγοι ἐσμέν ὥς ἐγκρατεῖς εἶναι αὐτῶν. εἴτε γὰρ  
 ὅποσα ἂν προσεργασώμεθα, μὴ φυλάξομεν, πάλιν ταῦτα  
 ἀλλότρια ἔσται· εἴτε καταλείψομέν τινας ἡμῶν αὐτῶν  
 φύλακας ἐπὶ τοῖς ἐφ' ἡμῖν γιγνομένοις, αὐτίκα οὐδεμίαν  
 ἰσχὺν ἔχοντες ἀναφανούμεθα. δοκεῖ οὖν μοι ὥς τάχιστα  
 ἵεναι τινὰ ὑμῶν εἰς Πέρσας καὶ διδάσκειν ἅπερ ἐγὼ λέγω,  
 καὶ κελεύειν ὥς τάχιστα ἐπιπέμπειν στράτευμα, εἴπερ  
 ἐπιθυμοῦσι Πέρσαι τὴν ἀρχὴν τῆς Ἀσίας αὐτοῖς καὶ τὴν

|go away from, *τισι τῶν Ἀσσυρίων* |force, compel *αὐτοὺς*  
|retreat

*ἡγείσθαι· καὶ οὕτως* |arrive *τὰ* |pyre |look down

*ἀμφὶ μέσας* |somehow *τας· ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐγένοντο πρὸς τῷ*

|army camp *, οἱ* |guard; *, ὥσπερ εἰρημένον ἦν ὑπὸ Κύρου,*  
|sentry

*οὐκ εἰσέφρηκαν αὐτοὺς* |before, *έρας· ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμέρα*  
|forward

|show a little *πρῶτον μὲν τοὺς μάγους καλέσας ὁ Κῦρος*

*τὰ τοῖς θεοῖς* |consider *cus· τὶ τοῖς τοιούτοις ἀγαθοῖς*  
|tomary; believe

|pick, steal; dedi- *έλευε· καὶ οἱ μὲν ἀμφὶ ταῦτα εἶχον· ὁ δὲ*  
|cate; destroy

|call together *τοὺς* |equally *εἶπεν· Ἄνδρες, ὁ μὲν θεὸς*  
|honored

|show; pass: appear *· κάγαθά· ἡμεῖς δὲ οἱ Πέρσαι ἐν τῷ*

*παρόντι ὀλίγοι ἐσμὲν ὥς* |firm, *εἶναι αὐτῶν·* |if, whenever;  
|powerful *|either/or*

|as/how many/great *, γασώμεθα, μὴ* |guard; *, πάλιν ταῦτα*  
|watch

|someone *ἔσται·* |if, |leave behind, *τινας ἡμῶν αὐτῶν*  
|else's; alien *when* |abandon

|guard; *ἐπὶ τοῖς* |ever; *ἡμῖν γιγνομένοις, |at once οὐδεμίαν*  
|sentry *ei-*  
|ther/or

|strength; *χ* |body of |reveal, shine *· δοκεῖ οὖν μοι ὥς τάχιστα*  
|troops

*ιέναι τινὰ ὑμῶν εἰς Πέρσας καὶ διδάσκειν ἅπερ ἐγὼ λέγω,*

*καὶ κελεύειν ὥς τάχιστα* |send *after* |army *, |if indeed*  
|again, *to,*

|wish, covet *Πέρσαι τὴν ἀρχὴν τῆς Ἀσίας αὐτοῖς καὶ τὴν*  
|besides

the Assyrians in retreat and forced them to be their guides, and so at last arrived, sighting the watch-fires about midnight. But though they had got to the camp, the pickets, acting on the orders of Cyrus, would not let them in till dawn. With the first faint gleam of morning Cyrus summoned the Persian Priests, who are called Magians, and bade them choose the offerings due to the gods for the blessings they had vouchsafed. And while they were about this, Cyrus called the Peers together and said to them:

"Gentlemen, God has put before us many blessings, but at present we Persians are but a scant company to keep them. If we fail to guard what we have toiled for, it will soon fall back into other hands, and if we leave some of our number to watch our gains, it will soon be seen that we have no strength in us. I propose therefore that one of you should go home to Persia without loss of time, and explain what I need and bid them despatch an army forthwith, if they desire Persia to win the empire of Asia and the fruits thereof. Do you," said he,

*vocabulary*

**ἀπειθέω** disobey  
**ἀπειλέω** vow, threaten, boast  
**ἀπειλή** boast, threat  
**ἀπορέω** be confused, distressed  
**ἐπειδάν** when, after  
**ἔρωτάω** ask about something  
**κοινός** communal, ordinary  
**κρύπτω** hide, cover ~cryptic  
**λόχος** ambush, band, childbirth ~lie  
**μέλω** concern, interest, be one's  
 responsibility

**νόμιμος** customary, legal, natural  
**ὀπτήρ** -ος (m) scout ~panorama  
**ὀργή** urge, impulse; anger  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**σιγάω** (ι) be silent  
**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier,  
 mercenary ~strategy  
**συσκευάζω** pack up  
**τροφή** food, upkeep ~atrophy  
**ὕπακούω** listen, reply ~acoustic  
**ὠμότης** -τος (f, 3) rawness, crudity

κάρπωσιν γενέσθαι. ἴθι μὲν οὖν σύ, ἔφη, ὁ πρεσβύτατος, καὶ ἰὼν ταῦτα λέγε, καὶ ὅτι οὓς ἂν πέμπωσι στρατιώτας, ἐπειδὰν ἔλθωσι παρ' ἐμέ, ἐμοὶ μελήσει περὶ τροφῆς αὐτοῖς. ἃ δ' ἔχομεν ἡμεῖς, ὁρᾷς μὲν αὐτός, κρύπτε δὲ τούτων μηδέν, ὅτι δὲ τούτων ἐγὼ πέμπων εἰς Πέρσας καλῶς καὶ νομίμως ποιοῖν ἂν τὰ μὲν πρὸς τοὺς θεοὺς τὸν πατέρα ἐρώτα, τὰ δὲ πρὸς τὸ κοινὸν τὰς ἀρχάς. πεμφάντων δὲ καὶ ὀπτῆρας ὧν πράττομεν καὶ φραστῆρας ὧν ἐρωτῶμεν. καὶ σὺ μὲν, ἔφη, συσκευάζου καὶ τὸν λόχον προπομπὸν ἄγε.

Ἐκ τούτου δὲ καὶ τοὺς Μήδους ἐκάλει, καὶ ἅμα ὁ παρὰ τοῦ Κναξάρου ἄγγελος παρίσταται, καὶ ἐν πᾶσι τήν τε πρὸς Κῦρον ὀργὴν καὶ τὰς πρὸς Μήδους ἀπειλὰς αὐτοῦ ἔλεγε· καὶ τέλος εἶπεν ὅτι ἀπιέναι Μήδους κελεύει, καὶ εἰ Κῦρος μένειν βούλεται. οἱ μὲν οὖν Μῆδοι ἀκούσαντες τοῦ ἀγγέλου ἐσίγησαν, ἀποροῦντες μὲν πῶς χρὴ καλοῦντος ἀπειθεῖν, φοβούμενοι δὲ πῶς χρὴ ἀπειλοῦντι ὑπακούσαι, ἄλλως τε καὶ εἰδότες τὴν ὀμότητα αὐτοῦ. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος



κάρπωσιν γενέσθαι. ἴθι μὲν οὖν σύ, ἔφη, ὁ <sup>|elder</sup>  
 καὶ ἰὼν ταῦτα λέγε, καὶ ὅτι οὓς ἂν πέμπωσι <sup>|soldier, mercenary</sup>  
<sup>|when, after</sup> ἔλθωσι παρ' ἐμέ, ἐμοὶ <sup>|be in/on the mind</sup> - φῆς αὐτοῖς.  
 ἃ δ' ἔχομεν ἡμεῖς, ὁρᾷς μὲν αὐτός, <sup>|hide, cover</sup> δὲ τούτων  
 μηδέν, ὅ τι δὲ τούτων ἐγὼ πέμπων εἰς Πέρσας καλῶς καὶ  
<sup>|customary, legal, natural</sup> ...οίην ἂν τὰ μὲν πρὸς τοὺς θεοὺς τὸν πατέρα  
<sup>|ask</sup> , τὰ δὲ πρὸς τὸ <sup>|communal, ordinary</sup> ἀρχάς. πεμφάντων δὲ  
 καὶ <sup>|scout</sup> ὧν πράττομεν καὶ φραστήρας ὧν <sup>|ask</sup>  
 καὶ σὺ μὲν, ἔφη, <sup>|pack up</sup> καὶ τὸν <sup>|ambush, band, μπόνη childbirth</sup>  
 ἄγε.

Ἐκ τούτου δὲ καὶ τοὺς Μήδους ἐκάλει, καὶ ἅμα ὁ παρὰ  
 τοῦ Κναξάρου <sup>|messenger</sup> <sup>|stand, be present</sup> ἰ ἐν πᾶσι τήν τε  
 πρὸς Κῦρον <sup>|urge, impulse; anger</sup> καὶ τὰς πρὸς Μήδους <sup>|boast, threat</sup> αὐτοῦ  
 ἔλεγε· καὶ <sup>|end</sup> εἶπεν ὅτι <sup>|be absent, away, return</sup> ὅς δ' αὖτε κελεύει, καὶ εἰ  
 Κῦρος μένειν βούλεται. οἱ μὲν οὖν Μῆδοι ἀκούσαντες τοῦ  
<sup>|messenger</sup> <sup>|be silent</sup> , <sup>|be confused, distressed</sup> μὲν <sup>|how? why? must, should</sup>  
<sup>|disobey</sup> , <sup>|scare, away</sup> scare δὲ <sup>|how? why? must, should</sup> <sup>|vow, threaten, boast</sup>  
 ἄλλως τε καὶ εἰδότες τὴν <sup>|rawness, crudity</sup> αὐτοῦ. ὁ δὲ Κῦρος

turning to one of the Peers, "do you, who are the eldest, go and repeat these words, and tell them that it shall be my care to provide for the soldiers they send me as soon as they are here. And as to what we have won—you have seen it yourself—keep nothing back, and ask my father how much I ought to send home for an offering to the gods, if I wish to act in honour and according to the law, and ask the magistrates how much is due to the commonwealth. And let them send commissioners to watch all that we do and answer all that we ask. So, sir," he ended, "you will get your baggage together, and take your company with you as an escort. Fare you well."

With that message he turned to the Medes and at the same moment the messenger from Cyaxares presented himself, and in the midst of the whole assembly announced the anger of the king against Cyrus, and his threats against the Medes, and so bade the latter return home at once, even if Cyrus wished them to stay. The Medes listened, but were silent; for they were sore bested; they could hardly disobey the summons, and yet they were afraid to go back after his threats, being all too well acquainted with the savage temper

*vocabulary*

**ἀναπαύω** cause to cease ~pause  
**ἀπελαύνω** expel, exclude, ward off;  
 (intrans) ride away  
**ἄχθομαι** be burdened with  
**δεῦρο** here, come here!  
**ἔξιμι** go forth; is possible ~ion  
**ἐξίημι** send forth, allow forth ~jet  
**ἐξοδος** (f) leaving, way out  
**ἐπειδάν** when, after  
**ἐπιθυμέω** (ō) wish, covet  
**ἐρῆμος** empty  
**ἐρωτάω** ask about something

**ἤνικα** when  
**ἥτοι** truly; either, or  
**λήγω** cease, (+gen+ppl) cause to cease  
 ~lax  
**μέμψις** blame, complaint  
**ὀκνέω** shrink from, hesitate; worry  
**ὀργή** urge, impulse; anger  
**πεπαίνω** ripen  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**πονέω** work; be busy ~osteopenia  
**προσδέχομαι** await  
**σάφα** with full understanding  
**τήχω** melt

εἶπεν· Ἄλλ' ἐγώ, ὦ ἄγγελέ τε καὶ Μῆδοι, οὐδέν, ἔφη, θαυμάζω εἰ Κναξάρης, πολλοὺς μὲν πολεμίους τότ' ἰδών, ἡμᾶς δὲ οὐκ εἰδὼς ὅ τι πράττομεν, ὀκνεῖ περί τε ἡμῶν καὶ περὶ αὐτοῦ· ἐπειδὴν δὲ αἴσθηται πολλοὺς μὲν τῶν πολεμίων ἀπολωλότας, πάντας δὲ ἀπεληλαμένους, πρῶτον μὲν παύσεται φοβούμενος, ἔπειτα γνώσεται, ὅτι οὐ νῦν ἔρημος γίνεται, ἡνίκα οἱ φίλοι αὐτοῦ τοὺς ἐκείνου ἐχθροὺς ἀπολλύουσιν. ἀλλὰ μὴν μέμψεώς γε πῶς ἐσμεν ἄξιοι, εὖ τε ποιοῦντες ἐκείνον καὶ οὐδὲ ταῦτα αὐτοματίσαντες; ἀλλ' ἐγὼ μὲν ἐκείνον ἔπεισα ἐᾶσαί με λαβόντα ὑμᾶς ἐξελθεῖν· ὑμεῖς δὲ οὐχ ὥς ἐπιθυμοῦντες τῆς ἐξόδου ἠρωτήσατε εἰ ἐξίοιτε καὶ νῦν δεῦρο ἦκετε, ἀλλ' ὑπ' ἐκείνου κελευσθέντες ἐξιέναι ὅτω ὑμῶν μὴ ἀχθομένῳ εἴη. καὶ ἡ ὀργὴ οὖν αὕτη σάφ' οἶδα ὑπό τε τῶν ἀγαθῶν πεπανθήσεται καὶ σὺν τῷ φόβῳ λήγοντι ἅπεισι. νῦν μὲν οὖν, ἔφη, σύ τε, ὦ ἄγγελε, ἀνάπαυσαι, ἐπεὶ καὶ πεπόνηκας, ἡμεῖς τε, ὦ Πέρσαι, ἐπεὶ προσδεχόμεθα πολεμίους ἥτοι μαχομένους γε ἢ πεισομένους παρέσεσθαι, ταχθῶμεν ὥς

εἶπεν· Ἄλλ' ἐγώ, ὦ |messenger : καὶ Μῆδοι, οὐδέν, ἔφη,  
 |marvel εἰ Κναξάρης, πολλοὺς μὲν πολεμίους τὸτ' ἰδών,  
 ἡμᾶς δὲ οὐκ εἰδὼς ὅ τι πράττομεν, |hesitate;..ερί τε  
 |worry  
 ἡμῶν καὶ περὶ αὐτοῦ· |when, δὲ |perceive πολλοὺς μὲν  
 |after  
 τῶν πολεμίων ἀπολωλότας, πάντας δὲ |expel, exclude, ward off; (in-  
 |trans) ride away  
 πρῶτον μὲν |stop |scare, scare, ἔπειτα γνώσεται,  
 |away  
 ὅτι οὐ νῦν ἔρημος γίγνεται, |when οἱ φίλοι αὐτοῦ τοὺς  
 ἐκείνου |hated, distasteful ὀύουσιν. ἀλλὰ μὴν |blame, γε  
 |complaint  
 πῶς ἐσμὲν |worthy ὃ τε ποιοῦντες ἐκείνον καὶ οὐδὲ ταῦτα  
 αὐτοματίσαντες; ἀλλ' ἐγὼ μὲν ἐκείνον ἔπεισα ἑᾶσαί με  
 λαβόντα ὑμᾶς ἐξελθεῖν· ὑμεῖς δὲ οὐχ ὥς |wish, covet τῆς  
 |leaving, |ask εἰ ἐξίοιτε καὶ νῦν |here, |be present, ὅ  
 |way out |come |have arrived  
 |here!  
 ὑπ' ἐκείνου κελευσθέντες ἐξιέναι ὅτῳ ὑμῶν μὴ |be burdened with  
 εἴη. καὶ ἡ |urge, ἡν αὕτη |clearly ἰδα ὑπό τε τῶν ἀγαθῶν  
 |impulse;  
 |ripen |anger καὶ σὺν τῷ |fear |cease |be absent, go μὲν  
 |away, return  
 οὖν, ἔφη, σύ τε, ὦ |messen- |cause to cease ὅτι καὶ |work  
 |ger  
 ἡμεῖς τε, ὦ Πέρσαι, ἐπεὶ |await πολεμίους |truly;  
 |either,  
 μαχουμένους γε ἢ πεισομένους παρέσεσθαι, ταχθῶμεν ὥς  
 |or

of their lord. But Cyrus spoke:

"Herald," said he, "and sons of the Medes, I am not surprised that Cyaxares, who saw the host of the enemy so lately, and knows so little of what we have done now, should tremble for us and for himself. But when he learns how many have fallen, and that all have been dispersed, his fears will vanish, and he will recognise that he is not deserted on this day of all days when his friends are destroying his foes. Can we deserve blame for doing him a service? And that not even without his own consent? I am acting as I am, only after having gained his leave to take you out; it is not as though you had come to me in your own eagerness, and begged me to let you go, and so were here now; he himself ordered you out, those of you who did not find it a burthen. Therefore, I feel sure, his anger will melt in the sunshine of success, and, when his fears are gone, it will vanish too. For the moment then," he added, turning to the messenger, "you must recruit yourself; you have had a heavy task; and for ourselves," said he, turning to the Persians, "since we are waiting for an enemy who will either offer us battle or render us submission, we must draw up

*vocabulary***ἀποκαλέω** call back; call a name**δῆλος** visible, conspicuous**διάγω** lead through; pass a time

~demagogue

**εἰκός** likely**ἐξοπλίζω** prepare, arm ~hoplite**ἐπιδείκνυμι** (ὑ) display, exhibit**ἡγεμών** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide,

chief ~hegemony

**ἡδομαι** be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism**ξύνεσις** confluence**ὅπου** where**πειράζω** test a person ~pierce**προσέρχομαι** come forward, surrender, come in**προσλαμβάνω** add, borrow, take hold, help**προστάσσω** post at, attach to, command**σκηνή** tent; stage**στρατιώτης** -ου (m, 1) soldier, mercenary ~strategy**συμφέρω** bring together; be expedient; agree; (mp) happen ~bear**ὑπομένω** stay behind, await ~remain**φιλία** friendship ~philanthropy**φίλιος** friendly**χρήζω** need ~chresard

κάλλιστα· οὕτω γὰρ ὀρωμένους εἰκὸς πλέον προανύτειν  
 ὧν χρῆζομεν. σὺ δ', ἔφη, ὁ τῶν Ὑρκανίων ἄρχων,  
 ὑπόμεινον προστάξας τοῖς ἡγεμόσι τῶν σῶν στρατιωτῶν  
 ἐξοπλίζειν αὐτούς. ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα ποιήσας ὁ Ὑρκάνιος  
 προσῆλθε, λέγει ὁ Κῦρος· Ἐγὼ δέ, ἔφη, ὦ Ὑρκάνιε,  
 ἡδομαι αἰσθανόμενος ὅτι οὐ μόνον φιλίαν ἐπιδεικνύμενος  
 πάρει, ἀλλὰ καὶ ξύνεσιν φαίνῃ μοι ἔχειν. καὶ νῦν  
 ὅτι συμφέρεи ἡμῖν ταῦτ' ἀδηλον· ἐμοί τε γὰρ πολέμοι  
 Ἀσσύριοι, σοί τε νῦν ἔτι ἐχθιόνες εἰσιν ἢ ἐμοί· οὕτως  
 οὖν ἡμῖν ἀμφοτέροις βουλευτέον ὅπως τῶν μὲν νῦν  
 παρόντων μηδεὶς ἀποστατήσῃ ἡμῖν συμμάχων, ἄλλους  
 δέ, ἂν δυνώμεθα, προσληψόμεθα. τοῦ δὲ Μήδου ἤκουες  
 ἀποκαλοῦντος τοὺς ἱππέας· εἰ δ' οὗτοι ἀπίασιν, ἡμεῖς  
 μόνοι οἱ πεζοὶ μενουῦμεν. οὕτως οὖν δεῖ ποιεῖν ἐμὲ  
 καὶ σὲ ὅπως ὁ ἀποκαλὼν οὗτος καὶ αὐτὸς μένειν παρ'  
 ἡμῖν βουλήσεται. σὺ μὲν οὖν εὐρὼν σκηνὴν δὸς αὐτῷ  
 ὅπου κάλλιστα διάξει πάντα τὰ δέοντα ἔχων· ἐγὼ δ' αὖ  
 πειράσομαι αὐτῷ ἔργον τι προστάξαι ὅπερ αὐτὸς ἡδίων



κάλλιστα· οὕτω γὰρ ὁρωμένους |likely πλέον προανύτειν

ὦν |need . σὺ δ', ἔφη, ὁ τῶν Ὑρκανίων ἄρχων,

|stay behind, |post at, attach to, |leader τῶν σῶν |soldier,  
|await |command |mercenary

|prepare, arm αὐτούς. ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα ποιήσας ὁ Ὑρκάνιος

|come forward, |sur- ὁ Κῦρος· Ἐγὼ δέ, ἔφη, ὦ Ὑρκάνιε,  
|render, come in

|ᾗδομαι?: |perceive ὅτι οὐ μόνον φιλίαν |display, exhibit  
|be

|pleased, ἀλλὰ καὶ |confluence, αἴνη μοι ἔχειν. καὶ νῦν  
|enjoy, or  
|ᾗδομαι?:

|be |bring together; be expedi- |visible, ὅτι τε γὰρ πολέμοι  
|pleased |ent; agree; (mp) happen |conspicuous  
|enjoy

Ἀσσύριοι, σοί τε νῦν ἔτι ἐχθιόνες εἰσιν ἢ ἐμοί· οὕτως

οὖν ἡμῖν |both βουλευτέον ὅπως τῶν μὲν νῦν

παρόντων μηδεὶς ἀποστατήσῃ ἡμῖν συμμάχων, ἄλλους

δέ, ἂν δυνώμεθα, |add, borrow, take τοῦ δὲ Μήδου ἥκουες  
|hold, help

|call back; call a τούς |rider εἰ δ' οὐτοί |be absent, γόμοις  
|name |away, return

μόνοι οἱ |on foot; footsō |dier οὕτως οὖν δεῖ ποιεῖν ἐμέ

καὶ σὲ ὅπως ὁ |call back; οὗτος καὶ αὐτὸς μένειν παρ'  
|call a name

ἡμῖν βουλήσεται. σὺ μὲν οὖν εὐρὼν |tent; δὸς αὐτῷ  
|stage

|where κάλλιστα |lead through; τὰ δέοντα ἔχων· ἐγὼ δ' αἶ  
|pass a time

πειράσομαι αὐτῷ ἔργον τι |post at, attach |περ αὐτὸς |sweet  
|to, command

in our finest style; the spectacle, perhaps, will bring us more than we could dare to hope. And do you," he said, taking the Hyrcanian chieftain aside, "after you have told your officers to arm their men, come back and wait with me a moment."

So the Hyrcanian went and returned. Then Cyrus said to him, "Son of Hyrcania, it gives me pleasure to see that you show not only friendliness, but sagacity. It is clear that our interests are the same; the Assyrians are my foes as well as yours, only they hate you now even more bitterly than they hate me. We must consult together and see that not one of our present allies turns his back on us, and we must do what we can to acquire more. You heard the Mede summon the cavalry to return, and if they go, we shall be left with nothing but infantry. This is what we must do, you and I; we must make this messenger, who is sent to recall them, desirous to stay here himself. You must find him quarters where he will have a merry time and everything heart can wish, and I will offer him work which he will like far better than

*vocabulary***ἀκίνδυνος** (ὑ) safe**ἀναγιγνώσκω** recognize, read, understand, persuade**ἀπελαύνω** expel, exclude, ward off; (intrans) ride away**ἀπέχω** ward off, drive off, refrain, be at some distance**ἀποχωρέω** go away from, retreat**ἀσφάλεια** safeguard**γράμμα** -τος (n, 3) writing, letter**δηλώω** show, disclose**διαλέγω** go through, debate ~legion**ἐγγύς** near**ἕζομαι** act: set, seat; pass: sit down, sit up ~sit**ἔνιμι** be in ~ion**ἐπιστέλλω** send to, order**ἐπιστολή** message, letter**ἐρήμος** empty**ἐρωτάω** ask about something**ἔχθρη** hate**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon**κῦρος** -εος (n, 3) authority; validity**μήκιστος** tallest; at long last**μήκος** -ους (n, 3) length, stature**οἴχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone**ὁμολογέω** agree with/to**ὁπόσος** as many as, how many, how great**Πέρσης** Persian**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)**προστίθιμι** add; impose; (mp) agree; side with ~thesis**σκηνή** tent; stage**συσκευάζω** pack up

πράξει ἢ ἄπεισι· καὶ διαλέγου δὲ αὐτῷ ὅποσα ἐλπίς  
γενέσθαι ἀγαθὰ πᾶσι τοῖς φίλοις, ἂν ταῦτ' εὖ γένηται·  
ποιήσας μέντοι ταῦτα ἦκε πάλιν παρ' ἐμέ.

Ὁ Μὲν δὴ Ὑρκάνιος τὸν Μῆδον ὥχετο ἄγων ἐπὶ σκηνήν·  
ὁ δ' εἰς Πέρσας ἰὼν παρῆν συνεσκευασμένος· ὁ δὲ Κῦρος  
αὐτῷ ἐπέστελλε πρὸς μὲν Πέρσας λέγειν ἂ καὶ πρόσθεν  
ἐν τῷ λόγῳ δεδήλωται, Κυαξάρη δὲ ἀποδοῦναι τὰ  
γράμματα. ἀναγνῶναι δέ σοι καὶ τὰ ἐπιστελλόμενα, ἔφη,  
βούλομαι, ἵνα εἰδῶς αὐτὰ ὁμολογῇς, ἂν τί σε πρὸς ταῦτα  
ἐρωτᾷ. ἐνῆν δὲ ἐν τῇ ἐπιστολῇ τάδε.

Κῦρος Κυαξάρη χαίρειν. ἡμεῖς σε οὔτε ἔρημον  
κατελίπομεν· οὐδεὶς γάρ, ὅταν ἐχθρῶν κρατῇ, τότε φίλων  
ἔρημος γίγνεται· οὐδὲ μὴν ἀποχωροῦντές γέ σε οἰόμεθα ἐν  
κινδύνῳ καθιστάναι· ἀλλὰ ὅσω πλέον ἀπέχομεν, τοσούτῳ  
πλέονά σοι τὴν ἀσφάλειαν ποιεῖν νομίζομεν· οὐ γὰρ οἱ  
ἐγγύτατα τῶν φίλων καθήμενοι μάλιστα τοῖς φίλοις τὴν  
ἀσφάλειαν παρέχουσιν, ἀλλ' οἱ τοὺς ἐχθροὺς μήκιστον  
ἀπελαύνοντες μᾶλλον τοὺς φίλους ἐν ἀκινδύνῳ καθιστᾶσι.

πράξει ἢ |be absent, go|go through, debate ᾧ |as/how |hope  
away, return |many/great

γενέσθαι ἀγαθὰ πᾶσι τοῖς φίλοις, ἃν ταῦτ' εὖ γένηται·

ποιήσας μέντοι ταῦτα ἦκε πάλιν παρ' ἐμέ.

Ὁ Μὲν δὴ Ὑρκάνιος τὸν Μῆδον |come, go ᾧγων ἐπὶ |tent;  
stage

ὁ δ' εἰς Πέρσας ἰὼν παρήν |pack up ὁ δὲ |authority;  
validity

αὐτῷ |send to, order ᾧδὲς μὲν Πέρσας λέγειν ᾧ καὶ πρόσθεν

ἐν τῷ λόγῳ |show, disclose, Κυαξάρῃ δὲ |repay τὰ

|writing, letter |read δέ σοι καὶ τὰ |send to, order, ἔφη,

βούλομαι, ἵνα εἰδῶς αὐτὰ |agree with/to ᾧν τί σε πρὸς ταῦτα

|ask ἐνῆν δὲ ἐν τῇ |message, letter τάδε.

Κῦρος Κυαξάρῃ χαίρειν. ἡμεῖς σε οὔτε ἔρημον

|leave behind, abandon οὐδεὶς γάρ, ὅταν ἐχθρῶν κρατῇ, τότε φίλων

ἔρημος γίνεταί· οὐδὲ μὲν |go away from, re- γέ σε οἴομεθα ἐν  
treat

|danger καθιστάναι· ἀλλὰ ὅσω πλέον |ward off, so much  
drive off,

πλέονά σοι τὴν |safeguard ποιεῖν νομίζομεν· οὐ γὰρ οἱ  
at some distance

|near τῶν φίλων |sit μάλιστα τοῖς φίλοις τὴν

|safeguard παρέχουσιν, ἀλλ' οἱ τοὺς |hated, distasteful .ον

|expel, exclude, ward off; (intrans) ride away ν τοὺς φίλους ἐν |safe καθιστᾷσι.

going back. And do you talk to him yourself, and dilate on all the wonders we expect for our friends if things go well. And when you have done this, come back again and tell me.”

So the chieftain took the Mede away to his own quarters, and meanwhile the messenger from Persia presented himself equipped for the journey, and Cyrus bade him tell the Persians all that had happened, as it has been set out in this story, and then he gave him a letter to Cyaxares. “I would like to read you the very words,” he added, “so that what you say yourself may agree with it, in case you have questions asked you.”

The letter ran as follows: —” Cyrus to Cyaxares, greeting. We do not admit that we have deserted you; for no one is deserted when he is being made the master of his enemies. Nor do we consider that we put you in jeopardy by our departure; on the contrary, the greater the distance between us the greater the security we claim to have won for you. It is not the friend at a man’s elbow who serves him and puts him out of danger, but he who drives his enemies farthest and furthest away. And I pray you to remember what

*vocabulary***ἄημι** blow**ἀκολουθέω** follow**ἀναγκάζω** force, compel**ἀπειλέω** vow, threaten, boast**ἀποκαλέω** call back; call a name**ἀφαιρέω** take away ~heresy**ἐπιλανθάνω** mp: forget ~Lethe**ἐπιστέλλω** send to, order**ἐρῆμος** empty**ἔχθρη** hate**καίπερ** even if**μέμφομαι** blame; reject**μεταπέμπω** send; (mid) summon

~pomp

**ὅμοιος** like ~homoerotic**ὅπόσος** as many as, how many, how great**ὀφείλω** owe, should, if only**Πέρσης** Persian**σκέπτομαι** look, look at, watch

~skeptic

**στράτευμα** -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy**συμβουλευώ** give advice; (mid) consult

~volunteer

**τοιγάρ** therefore**φάσκω** declare, promise, think ~fame**φίλιος** friendly**φροντίζω** consider, ponder

σκέψαι δὲ οἷω ὄντι μοι περὶ σὲ οἶος ὢν περὶ ἐμὲ ἔπειτά μοι μέμφη. ἐγὼ μὲν γέ σοι ἡγαγον συμμάχους, οὐχ ὅσους σὺ ἔπεισας, ἀλλ' ὅπόσους ἐγὼ πλείστους ἐδυνάμην· σὺ δέ μοι ἔδωκας μὲν ἐν τῇ φιλίᾳ ὄντι ὅσους πείσαι δυνασθεῖν· νῦν δ' ἐν τῇ πολεμίᾳ ὄντος οὐ τὸν θέλοντα ἀλλὰ πάντας ἀποκαλεῖς. τοιγαροῦν τότε μὲν ὥοιμην ἀμφοτέροις ὑμῖν χάριν ὀφείλειν· νῦν δὲ σύ με ἀναγκάζεις σοῦ μὲν ἐπιλαθέσθαι, τοῖς δὲ ἀκολουθήσασι πειράσθαι πᾶσαν τὴν χάριν ἀποδιδόναι. οὐ μέντοι ἔγωγε σοὶ ὅμοιος δύναμαι γενέσθαι, ἀλλὰ καὶ νῦν πέμπων ἐπὶ στράτευμα εἰς Πέρσας ἐπιστέλλω, ὅπόσοι ἂν ἴωσιν ὡς ἐμέ, ἢν τι σὺ αὐτῶν δέῃ πρὶν ἡμᾶς ἐλθεῖν, σοὶ ὑπάρχειν, οὐχ ὅπως ἂν θέλωσιν, ἀλλ' ὅπως ἂν σὺ βούλῃ χρῆσθαι αὐτοῖς. συμβουλεύω δέ σοι καίπερ νεώτερος ὢν μὴ ἀφαιρεῖσθαι ἅ ἂν δῶς, ἵνα μὴ σοι ἀντὶ χαρίτων ἔχθραι ὀφείλωνται, μηδ' ὅταν τινὰ βούλῃ πρὸς σὲ ταχὺ ἐλθεῖν, ἀπειλοῦντα μεταπέμπεσθαι, μηδὲ φάσκοντα ἔρημον εἶναι ἅμα πολλοῖς ἀπειλεῖν, ἵνα μὴ διδάσκης αὐτοὺς σοῦ μὴ φροντίζειν. ἡμεῖς



|look, look at, watch τι μοι περὶ σὲ οἶος ὢν περὶ ἐμὲ ἔπειτά  
 μοι |blame; ἐγὼ μὲν γέ σοι ἡγαγον συμμάχους, οὐχ  
 |reject  
 ὅσους σὺ ἔπεισας, ἀλλ' |as/how many/great ὅσους ἐδυνάμην·  
 σὺ δέ μοι ἔδωκας μὲν ἐν τῇ |friendly ἔντι ὅσους πείσαι  
 δυνασθεῖν· νῦν δ' ἐν τῇ πολεμίας ὄντος οὐ τὸν θέλοντα  
 ἀλλὰ πάντας |call back; τοιγαροῦν τότε μὲν ὠόμην  
 |call a name  
 ἀμφοτέροις ὑμῖν χάριν |owe, should, if only ὅς με |force, compel  
 σοῦ μὲν ἐπιλαθέσθαι, τοῖς δὲ |follow |try, test  
 πᾶσαν τὴν χάριν |repay οὐ |however ἔγωγες σοὶ |like  
 δύναμαι γενέσθαι, ἀλλὰ καὶ νῦν πέμπων ἐπὶ |army  
 εἰς Πέρσας |send to, order |as/how many/great ὥς ἐμέ, ἦν τι  
 σὺ αὐτῶν δέη |before, formerly; ἔν, σοὶ |there is οὐχ ὅπως  
 |negated: until  
 ἂν θέλωσιν, ἀλλ' ὅπως ἂν σὺ βούλῃ χρῆσθαι αὐτοῖς.  
 |give advice; δέ σοι |even if νεώτερος ὢν μὴ |take away  
 |(mid) consult  
 ἂ ἂν δῶς, ἵνα μὴ σοι ἀντὶ χαρίτων |hate |owe, should, if only  
 |and |whenever ἡ βούλῃ πρὸς σὲ ταχὺ ἐλθεῖν, |vow, threaten, boast  
 |not;  
 |not  
 |send; (mid) sum- |and |declare, promise, |on εἶναι ἅμα πολλοῖς  
 |even |not; |think  
 |mon  
 |vow, threaten, boast |even |ἀσκησας αὐτοὺς σοῦ μὴ |consider, |ἡμεῖς  
 |ponder

I have done for you, and you for me, before you blame me. I brought you allies, not limiting myself to those you asked for, but pressing in every man that I could find; you allowed me while we were on friendly soil only to take those whom I could persuade to follow me, and now that I am in hostile territory you insist that they must all return; you do not leave it to their own choice. Yesterday I felt that I owed both you and them a debt of gratitude, but to-day you drive me to forget your share, you make me wish to repay those, and those only, who followed me. Not that I could bring myself to return you like for like; even now I am sending to Persia for more troops, and instructing all the men who come that, if you need them before we return, they must hold themselves at your service absolutely, to act not as they wish, but as you may care to use them. In conclusion, I would advise you, though I am younger than yourself, not to take back with one hand what you give with the other, or else you will win hatred instead of gratitude; nor to use threats if you wish men to come to you speedily; nor to speak of being deserted when you threaten an army, unless you would teach them to despise you. For ourselves, we will do

*vocabulary*

**ἀπάγω** lead away, back ~demagogue  
**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp  
**ἀποφέρω** carry off, carry back ~bear  
**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish  
 ~practice  
**ἐξοπλίζω** prepare, arm ~hoplite  
**ἐπιστέλλω** send to, order  
**ἐπιστολή** message, letter  
**ἔρωτάω** ask about something  
**ἡώς ἡῶθι** (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene  
**καίω** burn ~caustic  
**καταβάλλω** throw down, cast off  
 ~ballistic  
**κοινός** communal, ordinary  
**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
 ~hoplite  
**ὅπόσος** as many as, how many, how  
 great

**παλτός** brandished, hurled  
**πειράζω** test a person ~pierce  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)  
**προστίθηναι** add; impose; (mp) agree;  
 side with ~thesis  
**πρόσχωρος** neighboring  
**ῥώννυμι** (ō) strengthen; (pf pass) be  
 strong, eager, healthy  
**ῥόομαι** move nimbly, rush, stream  
**σημαίνω** give orders to; show; mark  
 ~semaphore  
**σπεύδω** 'push on,' get going, hurry  
 ~repudiate  
**συμφέρω** bring together; be expedient;  
 agree; (mp) happen ~bear  
**σύμφημι** assent, concede  
**τοιόσδε** such

δὲ πειρασόμεθα παρῆναι, ὅταν τάχιστα διαπραξώμεθα ἃ σοί τ' ἂν καὶ ἡμῖν νομίζομεν πραχθέντα κοινὰ γενέσθαι ἀγαθὰ. ἔρρωσο.

Ταύτην αὐτῷ ἀπόδος καὶ ὅ τι ἂν σε τούτων ἐρωτᾷ, ἥ γέγραπται σύμφαθι. καὶ γὰρ ἐγὼ ἐπιστέλλω σοι περὶ Περσῶν ἥπερ γέγραπται. τούτῳ μὲν οὕτως εἶπε, καὶ δοὺς τὴν ἐπιστολὴν ἀπέπεμπε, προσεντειλάμενος οὕτω σπεύδειν ὥσπερ οἶδεν ὅτι συμφέρει ταχὺ παρῆναι.

Ἐκ τούτου δὲ ἐώρα μὲν ἐξωπλισμένους ἤδη πάντας καὶ τοὺς Μήδους καὶ τοὺς Ὑρκανίους καὶ τοὺς ἀμφὶ Τιγράνην· καὶ οἱ Πέρσαι δὲ ἐξωπλισμένοι ἦσαν· ἤδη δέ τινες τῶν προσχώρων καὶ ἵππους ἀπῆγον καὶ ὅπλα ἀπέφερον. ὁ δὲ τὰ μὲν παλὰ ὅπουπερ τοὺς πρόσθεν καταβάλλειν ἐκέλευσε, καὶ ἕκαιον οἷς τοῦτο ἔργον ἦν ὁπόσων μὴ αὐτοὶ ἐδέοντο· τοὺς δ' ἵππους ἐκέλευε φυλάττειν μένοντας τοὺς ἀγαγόντας ἕως ἄν τι σημαυνθῇ αὐτοῖς· τοὺς δὲ ἄρχοντας τῶν ἱππέων καὶ Ὑρκανίων καλέσας τοιάδε ἔλεξεν.

δὲ πειρασόμεθα παρῆναι, |whenever |travel over, ac-  
 |accomplish  
 σοί τ' ἂν καὶ ἡμῖν |consider cus- |communal, ὅσθαι  
 |tomary; believe |ordinary  
 ἀγαθά. ἔρρωσο.

Ταύτην αὐτῷ |repay καὶ ὅ τι ἂν σε τούτων |ask , ἥ

|write; |assent, καὶ γὰρ ἐγὼ |send to, order οἱ περὶ  
 |scratch |concede

Περσῶν ἥπερ |write; τούτῳ μὲν οὕτως εἶπε, καὶ  
 |scratch

δοὺς τὴν |message, |send away , προσεντειλάμενος οὕτω  
 |letter

|'push on,' get |τερ οἶδεν ὅτι |bring together; be expedi-  
 |going, hurry |ent; agree; (mp) happen

Ἐκ τούτου δὲ ἑώρα μὲν |prepare, arm ἥδη πάντας καὶ

τοὺς Μήδους καὶ τοὺς Ὑρκανίους καὶ τοὺς ἀμφὶ Τιγράνην·

καὶ οἱ Πέρσαι δὲ |prepare, arm ἦσαν· ἥδη δέ τινες τῶν

|neighboring καὶ ἵππους |lead away, back |tool |carry off . ὁ

δὲ τὰ μὲν |brandished, |υπερ τοὺς πρόσθεν |throw down, cast off  
 |hurled

ἐκέλευσε, καὶ |burn οἷς τοῦτο ἔργον ἦν |as/how many/great `

ἐδέοντο· τοὺς δ' ἵππους ἐκέλευε |guard; μένοντας τοὺς  
 |watch

ἀγαγόντας ἕως ἂν τι |give orders to; οἷς· τοὺς δὲ ἄρχοντας  
 |show; mark

τῶν |rider καὶ Ὑρκανίων καλέσας |such ἔλεξεν.

our best to rejoin you as soon as we have concluded certain matters which we believe will prove a common blessing to yourself and us. Farewell.”

”Deliver this,” said Cyrus, ”to Cyaxares, and whatever questions he puts to you, answer in accordance with it. My injunctions to you about the Persians agree exactly with what is written here.” With that he gave him the letter and sent him off, bidding him remember that speed was of importance.

Then he turned to review his troops, who were already fully armed, Medes, Hyrcanians, the men Tigranes had brought, and the whole body of the Persians. And already some of the neighbouring folk were coming up, to bring in their horses or hand over their arms. The javelins were then piled in a heap as before and burnt at his command, after his troops had taken what they needed for themselves, but he bade the owners stay with their horses until they received fresh

*vocabulary*

**αἰχμάλωτος** captive ~acute  
**ἀπορέω** be confused, distressed  
**δεσπότης** -ου (m, 1) master, despot  
**διορίζω** delimit; determine  
**ἐκπληρόω** fill, fulfill  
**ἐνδέω** tie to, entangle; lack  
**ἐνταῦθα** there, here  
**ἐσθής** clothes ~vest  
**ἡώς ἡῶθι** (f, 2) dawn ~Eocene  
**καινός** new, fresh, strange  
**κατασκηνόω** set up camp  
**οἰκεῖος** household, familiar, proper  
**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics  
**περαίνω** finish, accomplish

**περισσός** prodigious, superfluous  
**ποῖος** what kind  
**ποτή** flight? ~petal  
**ποτός** potable  
**προσγίγνομαι** become ally to  
**σίτος** grain, bread, food ~parasite  
**σκέπτομαι** look, look at, watch  
 ~skeptic  
**σκηνή** tent; stage  
**στρατιωτικός** military  
**στρωμνή** bed, bedding  
**συγκαλέω** call together ~gallo  
**σχεδόν** near, approximately at  
 ~ischemia  
**ὑπηρετέω** serve

Ἄνδρες φίλοι τε καὶ σύμμαχοι, μὴ θαυμάζετε ὅτι πολλάκις  
 ὑμᾶς συγκαλῶ· καινὰ γὰρ ἡμῖν ὄντα τὰ παρόντα πολλὰ  
 αὐτῶν ἐστὶν ἀσύντακτα· ἃ δ' ἂν ἀσύντακτα ἦ, ἀνάγκη  
 ταῦτα αἰεὶ πράγματα παρέχειν, ἕως ἂν χώραν λάβῃ. καὶ  
 νῦν ἔστι μὲν ἡμῖν πολλὰ τὰ αἰχμάλωτα χρήματα, καὶ  
 ἄνδρες ἐπ' αὐτοῖς· διὰ δὲ τὸ μήτε ἡμᾶς εἰδέναι ποῖα τούτων  
 ἐκάστου ἐστὶν ἡμῶν, μήτε τούτους εἰδέναι ὅστις ἐκάστῳ  
 αὐτῶν δεσπότης, περαίνοντας μὲν δὴ τὰ δέοντα οὐ πάνυ  
 ἔστιν ὁρᾶν αὐτῶν πολλούς, ἀποροῦντας δὲ ὅ τι χρὴ ποιεῖν  
 σχεδὸν πάντας. ὥς οὖν μὴ οὕτως ἔχη, διορίσατε αὐτά· καὶ  
 ὅστις μὲν ἔλαβε σκηνὴν ἔχουσιν ἱκανὰ καὶ σῖτα καὶ ποτὰ  
 καὶ τοὺς ὑπηρετήσοντας καὶ στρωμνὴν καὶ ἐσθῆτα καὶ  
 τᾶλλα οἷς οἰκεῖται σκηνὴ καλῶς στρατιωτικῇ, ἐνταῦθα  
 μὲν οὐδὲν ἄλλο δεῖ προσγενέσθαι ἢ τὸν λαβόντα εἰδέναι ὅτι  
 τούτων ὥς οἰκεῖων ἐπιμέλῃσθαι δεῖ· ὅστις δ' εἰς ἐνδεόμενά  
 του κατεσκήνωσε, τούτοις ὑμεῖς σκεψάμενοι τὸ ἐλλείπον  
 ἐκπληρώσατε, πολλὰ δὲ καὶ τὰ περιττὰ οἶδ' ὅτι ἔσται·  
 πλείω γὰρ ἅπαντα ἢ κατὰ τὸ ἡμέτερον πλῆθος εἶχον οἱ



Ἄνδρες φίλοι τε καὶ σύμμαχοι, μὴ |marvel ὅτι |often  
 ὑμᾶς |call together |new, fresh, strange ἔντα τὰ παρόντα πολλὰ  
 αὐτῶν ἐστὶν ἀσύντακτα· ἃ δ' ἂν ἀσύντακτα ᾖ, |necessity  
 ταῦτα αἰὲν πράγματα παρέχειν, ἕως ἂν χώραν λάβῃ. καὶ  
 νῦν ἔστι μὲν ἡμῖν πολλὰ τὰ |captive χρήματα, καὶ  
 ἄνδρες ἐπ' αὐτοῖς· διὰ δὲ τὸ μήτε ἡμᾶς εἰδέναι |what kind οὐ  
 ἐκάστου ἐστὶν ἡμῶν, μήτε τούτους εἰδέναι ὅστις ἐκάστῳ  
 αὐτῶν |master, despotic, |finish, accomplish μὲν δὴ τὰ δέοντα οὐ |altogether, very  
 ἔστιν ὁρᾶν αὐτῶν πολλούς, |be confused, |distressed δὲ ὅ τι χρὴ ποιεῖν  
 |about πάντας. ὥς οὖν μὴ οὕτως ἔχῃ, |delimit; αὐτά· καὶ  
 |determine  
 ὅστις μὲν ἔλαβε |tent; stage ἔχουσιν |sufficient; |grain, |αι ποτὰ  
 |fit, empow- |bread,  
 καὶ τοὺς |serve καὶ |bed, bedding |αι |clothes καὶ  
 τᾶλλα οἷς |inhabit |tent; stage καλῶς |military , |there, here  
 μὲν οὐδὲν ἄλλο δεῖ |become ally to ἢ τὸν λαβόντα εἰδέναι ὅτι  
 τούτων ὥς οἰκεῖων ἐπιμέλῃσθαι δεῖ· ὅστις δ' εἰς |tie to  
 του |set up camp , τούτοις ὑμεῖς |look, look at, watch ἵκεισθαι  
 |fill, fulfill , πολλὰ δὲ καὶ τὰ περιττὰ οἶδ' ὅτι ἔσται·  
 πλείω γὰρ ἅπαντα ἢ κατὰ τὸ |our, my πλῆθος εἶχον οἱ

orders. This done, Cyrus called together the officers of the Hyrcanians and of the cavalry, and spoke as follows:

”My friends and allies, you must not be surprised that I summon you so often. Our circumstances are so novel that much still needs adjustment, and we must expect difficulty until everything has found its place. At present we have a mass of spoil, and prisoners set to guard it. But we do not ourselves know what belongs to each of us, nor could the guards say who the owners are: and thus it is impossible for them to be exact in their duties, since scarcely any of them know what these duties may be. To amend this, you must divide the spoil. There will be no difficulty where a man has won a tent that is fully supplied with meat and drink, and servants to boot, bedding, apparel, and everything to make it a comfortable home; he has only to understand that this is now his private property, and he must look after it himself. But where the quarters are not furnished so well, there you must make it your business to supply what is lacking. There will be more than enough for this; of that I am sure; the enemy had a stock of everything quite out of proportion to our scanty numbers.

*vocabulary*

**ἀγορά** open assembly; place of, speech  
in ~agora

**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not  
needing ~Sp. sin

**ἁπλός** single; simple ~haploid

**ἁπλώω** spread, unfold

**ἀποφέρω** carry off, carry back ~bear

**ἀρκέω** satisfy; ward off, defend; suffice

**δασμός** portion, tax, tribute

**διαδίδωμι** distribute, send out

**διανέμω** distribute, divide

**διατίθηναι** arrange; set out goods for  
sale ~thesis

**διπλός** double, overlapping

**ἐπίσημον** mark, badge

**ἐπίσημος** marked, significant

**καθέζομαι** act: set, seat; pass: sit

down, sit up

**κάπηλος** merchant

**κηρύσσω** be a henchman, summon  
people

**οἰκέω** inhabit ~economics

**ὀνέω** help, please, be available

**ὄνομαι** blame ~name

**ὅπου** where

**παραγγέλλω** transmit; order, summon,  
recommend, encourage

**προσδέω** bind also; need also

**προσφέρω** present; resemble; add

**πωλέω** sell

**ταμία** (ᾱα) housekeeper ~tonsure

**ταμίας** -ως (m, 3) manager,  
quartermaster

**χρυσίον** (ῑ) gold coin

**ὠνέομαι** buy

πολέμιοι. ἦλθον δὲ πρὸς ἐμὲ καὶ χρημάτων ταμίαι, οἳ τε τοῦ Ἀσσυρίων βασιλέως καὶ ἄλλων δυναστῶν, οἱ ἔλεγον ὅτι χρυσίον εἷη παρὰ σφίσιν ἐπίσημον, δασμούς τινας λέγοντες. καὶ ταῦτα οὖν κηρύττετε πάντα ἀποφέρειν πρὸς ὑμᾶς ὅπου ἂν καθέζησθε· καὶ φόβον ἐπιτίθεσθε τῷ μὴ ποιοῦντι τὸ παραγγελλόμενον· ὑμεῖς δὲ διάδοτε λαβόντες ἱππεῖ μὲν τὸ διπλοῦν, πεζῷ δὲ τὸ ἀπλοῦν, ἵνα ἔχητε, ἣν τινος προσδέησθε, καὶ ὅτου ὠνήσεσθε. τὴν δ' ἀγορὰν τὴν οὖσαν ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ κηρυξάτω μὲν ἤδη, ἔφη, μὴ ἀδικεῖν μηδένα, πωλεῖν δὲ τοὺς καπήλους ὅ τι ἔχει ἕκαστος πράσιμον, καὶ ταῦτα διαθεμένους ἄλλα ἄγειν, ὅπως εὖ οἰκῇται ἡμῖν τὸ στρατόπεδον. ταῦτα μὲν ἐκήρυττον εὐθύς. οἱ δὲ Μῆδοι καὶ Ὑρκάνιοι εἶπον ὧδε· Καὶ πῶς ἂν, ἔφασαν, ἡμεῖς ἄνευ σοῦ καὶ τῶν σῶν διανέμοιμεν ταῦτα; ὁ δ' αὖ Κῦρος πρὸς τοῦτον τὸν λόγον ὧδε προσηνέχθη· Ἡ γὰρ οὕτως, ἔφη, ὦ ἄνδρες, γινώσκετε ὡς ὅ τι ἂν δέηπραχθῆναι, ἐπὶ πᾶσι πάντας ἡμᾶς δεῖσει παρεῖναι, καὶ οὔτε ἐγὼ ἀρκέσω πράττων τι πρὸ ὑμῶν ὅ τι ἂν

πολέμιοι. ἦλθον δὲ πρὸς ἐμέ καὶ |possession, money, business, |ῖται, οἱ τε  
τοῦ Ἀσσυρίων βασιλέως καὶ ἄλλων δυναστῶν, οἳ ἔλεγον  
ὅτι |gold coin εἷη παρὰ σφίσιν ἐπίσημον, |portion, tax, tribute  
λέγοντες. καὶ ταῦτα οὖν |be a henchman, summon, carry off |πρὸς  
|mon people  
ἡμᾶς |where ἂν |act: set, seat; pass; sit down, sit up |put on, apply; (mid) undertake, attack  
ποιοῦντι τὸ |transmit; order, summon, recommend, encourage |ς δὲ διάδοτε λαβόντες  
|rider μὲν τὸ διπλοῦν, |on foot; footsoldier οὖν, ἵνα ἔχητε, ἦν  
τινος προσδέσθε, καὶ ὅτου ὠνήσεσθε. τὴν δ' |assembly τὴν  
οὔσαν ἐν τῷ |army camp |be a henchman, summon people |ἥδη, ἔφη, μὴ  
|be, do, wrong; sell |δὲ τοὺς |merchant ὅτι ἔχει ἕκαστος  
|wrong someone  
πράσιμον, καὶ ταῦτα |arrange; set out |ἄλλα ἄγειν, ὅπως εἶ  
|goods for sale  
|inhabit ἡμῖν τὸ |army camp |ταῦτα μὲν |be a henchman, summon people  
|summon people  
οἱ δὲ Μῆδοι καὶ Ὑρκάνιοι εἶπον |thus Καὶ |how? why? ἵσαν,  
ἡμεῖς |away from; not having; ing; not needing |σῶν |distribute, divide |ταῦτα; ὁ δ'  
|divide  
αὖ Κῦρος πρὸς τοῦτον τὸν λόγον |thus |present; resemble; add |Ἡ  
|semble; add  
γὰρ οὕτως, ἔφη, ὦ ἄνδρες, γινώσκετε ὡς ὅτι ἂν δέη  
πραχθῆναι, ἐπὶ πᾶσι πάντας ἡμᾶς δεήσει παρεῖναι, καὶ  
οὔτε ἐγὼ |satisfy; ward off, defend; suffice |before, forward |ὅτι ἂν

Moreover, certain treasurers have come to me, men who were in the service of the king of Assyria and other potentates, and according to what they tell me, they have a supply of gold coin, the produce of certain tributes they can name. You will send out a proclamation that this deposit must be delivered up to you in your quarters; you must terrify those who fail to execute the order, and then you must distribute the money; the mounted men should have two shares apiece for the foot-soldier's one; and you should keep the surplus, so that in case of need you may have wherewith to make your purchases. With regard to the camp-market, proclamation must be made at once, forbidding any injustice; the hucksters must be allowed to sell the goods they have brought, and when these are disposed of they may bring more, so that the camp may be duly supplied."

So the proclamations were issued forthwith. But the Medes and the Hyrcanians asked Cyrus:

"How are we to distribute the spoil alone, without your men and yourself?"

But Cyrus met question by question: "Do you really think, gentlemen, that we must all preside over every detail, each and all of us together? Can I never act for

*vocabulary*

**αἰσχύνω** (ō) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar

**ἄνευ** away from; not having; not needing ~Sp. sin

**ἀπαλλάσσω** free from, remove; be freed, depart

**διανέμω** distribute, divide

**διαπράσσω** travel over, accomplish ~practice

**διαφυλάσσω** guard, observe

**ἡδύς** sweet, pleasant ~hedonism

**ἰσχύς** -ος (f) strength; body of troops

**κινδυνεύω** encounter danger; (+inf)

there is a danger that

**κοινός** communal, ordinary

**παρέξιμι** pass by; transgress

**πειράζω** test a person ~pierce

**προσάγω** bring to a place

~demagogue

**προσελαύνω** go to, approach ~elastic

**προσθέω** run to

**προστίθιμι** add; impose; (mp) agree; side with ~thesis

**ὠφελέω** help, be useful

δέη, οὔτε ὑμεῖς πρὸ ἡμῶν; καὶ πῶς ἂν ἄλλως πλείω  
 μὲν πράγματα ἔχοιμεν, μείω δὲ διαπραττοίμεθα ἢ οὕτως;  
 ἀλλ' ὁράτε, ἔφη· ἡμεῖς μὲν γὰρ διεφυλάξαμέν τε ὑμῖν  
 τάδε, καὶ ὑμεῖς ἡμῖν πιστεύετε καλῶς διαπεφυλάχθαι·  
 ὑμεῖς δ' αὖ διανείμετε, καὶ ἡμεῖς πιστεύσομεν ὑμῖν καλῶς  
 διανενεμηκέναι. καὶ ἄλλο δέ τι αὖ ἡμεῖς πειρασόμεθα  
 κοινὸν ἀγαθὸν πράττειν. ὁράτε γὰρ δῆ, ἔφη, νυνὶ  
 πρῶτον ἵπποι ὅσοι ἡμῖν πάρεσιν, οἱ δὲ προσάγονται·  
 τούτους οὖν εἰ μὲν ἐάσομεν ἀναμβάτους, ὠφελήσουσι μὲν  
 οὐδὲν ἡμᾶς, πράγματα δὲ παρέξουσιν ἐπιμέλестhai· ἣν  
 δὲ ἱππέας ἐπ' αὐτοὺς καταστήσωμεν, ἅμα πραγμάτων  
 τε ἀπαλλαξόμεθα καὶ ἰσχὺν ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς προσθησόμεθα.  
 εἰ μὲν οὖν ἄλλους ἔχετε οἰστισιν ἂν δοίητε αὐτούς, μεθ'  
 ὧν ἂν καὶ κινδυνεύοιτε ἥδιον, εἴ τι δέοι, ἢ μεθ' ἡμῶν,  
 ἐκείνοις δίδοτε· εἰ μέντοι ἡμᾶς βούλεσθε παραστάτας  
 μάλιστα ἔχειν ἡμῖν αὐτοὺς δότε. καὶ γὰρ νῦν ὅτε ἄνευ  
 ἡμῶν προσελάσαντες ἐκινδυνεύετε, πολλὴν μὲν φόβον ἡμῖν  
 παρείχετε μὴ τι πάθῃτε, μάλα δὲ αἰσχύνεσθαι ἡμᾶς



δέη, οὔτε ὑμεῖς |before, forward; and |how? why? ἄλλως πλείω  
 μὲν |deed, fact, thing, affair; difficulty, μείω δὲ |travel over, accomplish ἢ οὕτως;  
 ἀλλ' ὁρᾶτε, ἔφη· ἡμεῖς μὲν γὰρ |guard, observe τε ὑμῖν  
 τάδε, καὶ ὑμεῖς ἡμῖν πιστεύετε καλῶς |guard, observe  
 ὑμεῖς δ' αὖ |distribute, divide, καὶ ἡμεῖς πιστεύσομεν ὑμῖν καλῶς  
 |distribute, divide. καὶ ἄλλο δέ τι αὖ ἡμεῖς πειρασόμεθα  
 |communal, ordinary, ἀθὼν πράττειν. ὁρᾶτε γὰρ δῆ, ἔφη, νυνὶ  
 πρῶτον ἵπποι ὅσοι ἡμῖν πάρεισιν, οἱ δὲ |bring to a place  
 τούτους οὖν εἰ μὲν |let (+acc+inf), leave; leave|help, be useful, ἔν  
 οὐδὲν ἡμᾶς, |deed, fact, thing, affair; difficulty παρέξουσιν ἐπιμέλῃσθαι ἢν  
 δὲ |rider ἐπ' αὐτοὺς |set down, land; ἅμα |deed, fact, thing, affair; become, be |difficulty  
 τε |free from, remove; be|strength; body |τοῖς προσθησόμεθα.  
 |freed, depart |of troops  
 εἰ μὲν οὖν ἄλλους ἔχετε οἷσιν αὖν δοίητε αὐτούς, μεθ'  
 ὧν αὖν καὶ |encounter danger; sweet, εἰ τι δέοι, ἢ μεθ' ἡμῶν,  
 ἐκείνοις δίδυτε εἰ |is a danger that |however ἡμᾶς βούλεσθε παραστάτας  
 μάλιστα ἔχειν ἡμῖν αὐτοὺς δότε. καὶ γὰρ νῦν ὅτε |away from; not  
 ἡμῶν |go to, approach |encounter danger; (+inf)|fear |needing  
 |furnish μή τι πάθητε, μάλα δὲ |spoil, disgrace ἡμᾶς

you, and you for me? I could scarcely conceive a surer way of creating trouble, or of reducing results. See," said he, "I will take a case in point. We Persians guarded this booty for you, and you believe that we guarded it well: now it is for you to distribute it, and we will trust you to be fair. And there is another benefit that I should be glad to obtain for us all. You see what a number of horses we have got already, and more are being brought in. If they are left riderless we shall get no profit out of them; we shall only have the burden of looking after them. But if we set riders on them, we shall be quit of the trouble and add to our strength. Now if you have other men in view, men whom you would choose before us to share the brunt of danger with you, by all means give these horses to them. But if you would rather have us fight at your side than any others, bestow them upon us. To-day when you dashed ahead to meet danger all alone, great was our fear lest you might come to harm, and bitter our shame

*vocabulary***ἄημι** blow**ἀναβιβάζω** make to mount, promote**γελάω** laugh, smile, laugh at**διαιρέω** divide, distinguish, distribute**ἐκλέγω** pick, single out**ἐξαιρέω** pick, steal; dedicate; destroy

~heresy

**ἐξάλλομαι** break away from ~sally**ἐξηγέομαι** lead forth; set out, describe

~hegemony

**ἐπειδάν** when, after**ἔπω** (mid) follow, accompany; (act,

uncommon) handle, take care of

**ἔψω** boil, be boiling**κοινός** communal, ordinary**μηχανάομαι** build, contrive

~mechanism

**ὅποῖος** whatever kind**προθυμία** (ὑ) zeal, alacrity ~fume**συναγωνίζομαι** contend with; help, be allied**τοίνυν** well, then**χαρίζομαι** gratify ~charisma**ώφελέω** help, be useful

ἐποιήσατε ὅτι οὐ παρήμην ὅπουπερ ὑμεῖς· ἦν δὲ λάβωμεν τοὺς ἵππους, ἐφόμεθα ὑμῖν. κὰν μὲν δοκῶμεν ὠφελεῖν πλέον ἀπ' αὐτῶν συναγωνιζόμενοι, οὕτω προθυμίας οὐδὲν ἐλλείβομεν· ἦν δὲ πεζοὶ γενόμενοι δοκῶμεν καιριωτέρως ἂν παρεῖναι, τό τε καταβῆναι ἐν μέσῳ καὶ εὐθὺς πεζοὶ ὑμῖν παρεσόμεθα· τοὺς δ' ἵππους μηχανησόμεθα οἷς ἂν παραδοίημεν. ὁ μὲν οὕτως ἔλεξεν· οἱ δὲ ἀπεκρίναντο· Ἄλλ' ἡμεῖς μὲν, ὦ Κῦρε, οὐτ' ἄνδρας ἔχομεν οὓς ἀναβιβάσαιμεν ἂν ἐπὶ τούτους τοὺς ἵππους, οὐτ' εἰ ἔχομεν, σοῦ ταῦτα βουλομένου ἄλλο ἂν ἀντὶ τούτων ἡρούμεθα. καὶ νῦν, ἔφασαν, τούτους λαβὼν ποίει ὅπως ἄριστόν σοι δοκεῖ εἶναι. Ἄλλὰ δέχομαί τε, ἔφη, καὶ ἀγαθῇ τύχῃ ἡμεῖς τε ἱππεῖς γενοίμεθα καὶ ὑμεῖς διέλοιτε τὰ κοινά. πρῶτον μὲν οὖν τοῖς θεοῖς, ἔφη, ἐξαιρεῖτε ὅ τι ἂν οἱ μάγοι ἐξηγῶνται· ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ Κυμαζάρη ἐκλέξασθε ὅποῖ ἂν οἴεσθε αὐτῷ μάλιστα χαρίζεσθαι. καὶ οἱ γελάσαντες εἶπον ὅτι γυναῖκας ἐξαιρετέον εἶη. Γυναϊκάς τε τοῖνυν ἐξαιρεῖτε, ἔφη, καὶ ἄλλο ὅ τι ἂν δοκῇ ὑμῖν. ἐπειδὴν δ' ἐκείνῳ ἐξέλητε,

ἐποιήσατε ὅτι οὐ παρήμεν ὅπου περ ὑμεῖς· ἦν δὲ λάβωμεν

τοὺς ἵππους, ἐψόμεθα ὑμῖν. κὰν μὲν δοκῶμεν |help, be useful

πλέον ἀπ' αὐτῶν |contend with; help, be allied, οὕτω προθυμίας οὐδὲν

ἐλλεύφομεν· ἦν δὲ |on foot; footsoldier ἵκωμεν καιριωτέρως

ἂν παρεῖναι, τό τε |go down ἐν μέσῳ καὶ εὐθὺς |on foot; footsoldier

ὑμῖν παρεσόμεθα· τοὺς δ' ἵππους |build, contrive οἷς ἂν

|hand over . ὁ μὲν οὕτως ἔλεξεν· οἱ δὲ |to separate; reject; (mp) answer, defend oneself

ἡμεῖς μὲν, ὦ Κῦρε, οὗτ' ἀνδρας ἔχομεν οὓς |make to mount, promote

ἂν ἐπὶ τούτους τοὺς ἵππους, οὗτ' εἰ ἔχομεν, σοῦ ταῦτα

βουλομένου ἄλλο ἂν ἀντὶ τούτων ἡρούμεθα. καὶ νῦν,

ἔφασαν, τούτους λαβὼν ποίει ὅπως ἄριστόν σοι δοκεῖ

εἶναι. Ἀλλὰ |accept, receive, await, ἔφη, καὶ ἀγαθῇ τύχῃ ἡμεῖς τε

|rider γενοίμεθα καὶ ὑμεῖς |divide, distinguish, distribute, discommunal, ordinary

οὖν τοῖς θεοῖς, ἔφη, |pick, steal; dedicate; destroy, οἱ μάγοι |lead forth; set out, describe

ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ Κναξάρῃ |pick, single out, whatever kind ἢ αὐτῶ

μάλιστα |gratify καὶ οἱ |laugh, smile εἶπον ὅτι γυναῖκας

|pick, steal; dedicate; destroy, Γυναῖκας τε |well, then, |pick, steal; dedicate; destroy, καὶ

ἄλλο ὅ τι ἂν δοκῇ ὑμῖν. |when, after, δ' ἐκείνῳ ἐξέλητε,

to think that where you were we were not. But if once we have horses, we can follow at your heels. And if it is clear that we do more good so mounted, shoulder to shoulder with yourselves, we shall not fail in zeal; or if it appears better to support you on foot, why, to dismount is but the work of a moment, and you will have your infantry marching by your side at once, and we will find men to hold our horses for us."

To which they answered:

"In truth, Cyrus, we have not men for these horses ourselves, and even if we had them, we should not do anything against your wish. Take them, we beg you, and use them as you think best."

"I Will," said he, "and gladly, and may good fortune bless us all, you in your division of the spoil and us in our horsemanship. In the first place," he added, "you will set apart for the gods whatever our priests prescribe, and after that you must select for Cyaxares what you think will please him most."

At that they laughed, and said they must choose him a bevy of fair women. "So let it be," said Cyrus, "fair women, and anything else you please. And when you have chosen his share, the Hyrcanians must see to it that our friends among the

*vocabulary*

**ἀπαγγέλλω** announce, order, promise  
 ~angel  
**ἀρκέω** satisfy; ward off, defend; suffice  
**γελάω** laugh, smile, laugh at  
**γέλως** laughter  
**ἐθελούσιος** voluntary, optional  
**ἐφέπω** drive, meet, follow ~sequel  
**ἵππικός** of horses ~hippo  
**καταγελάω** laugh at, deride  
**καταπίπτω** fall down ~petal

**κατασκευάζω** equip, build  
**νέμω** to allot, to pasture ~nemesis  
**πέρθω** sack, ravage, plunder  
**περισσός** prodigious, superfluous  
**περιτίθημι** put around, endow with  
 ~thesis  
**Πέρσης** Persian  
**σεμνός** revered, holy  
**συνδοκέω** seem good also  
**ταξίαρχος** military rank  
**τιμάω** (ἱ) honor, exalt

τοὺς ἐμοί, ὦ Ὑρκάνιοι, ἐθελουσίους τούτους ἐπισπομένους  
 πάντας ἀμέμπτους ποιείτε εἰς δύναμιν. ὑμεῖς δ' αὖ,  
 ὦ Μῆδοι, τοὺς πρώτους συμμάχους γενομένους τιμᾶτε  
 τούτους, ὅπως εὖ βεβουλεῦσθαι ἡγήσωνται ἡμῖν φίλοι  
 γενόμενοι. νείματε δὲ πάντων τὸ μέρος καὶ τῷ παρὰ  
 Κναξάρου ἦκοντι αὐτῷ τε καὶ τοῖς μετ' αὐτοῦ· καὶ  
 συνδιαμένειν δὲ παρακαλεῖτε, ὥς ἐμοὶ τοῦτο συνδοκοῦν,  
 ἵνα καὶ Κναξάρῃ μᾶλλον εἰδὼς περὶ ἐκάστου ἀπαγγέλλῃ  
 τὰ ὄντα. Πέρσαις δ', ἔφη, τοῖς μετ' ἐμοῦ, ὅσα ἂν περιττὰ  
 γένηται ὑμῶν καλῶς κατεσκευασμένων, ταῦτα ἀρκέσει·  
 καὶ γάρ, ἔφη, μάλα πως ἡμεῖς οὐκ ἐν χλιδῇ τεθράμμεθα  
 ἀλλὰ χωριτικῶς, ὥστε ἴσως ἂν ἡμῶν καταγελάσαιτε, εἴ  
 τι σεμνὸν ἡμῖν περιτεθείη, ὥσπερ, ἔφη, οἶδ' ὅτι πολλὸν ὑμῖν  
 γέλωτα παρέξομεν καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ἵππων καθήμενοι, οἶμαι δ',  
 ἔφη, καὶ ἐπὶ τῆς γῆς καταπίπτοντες.

Ἐκ τούτου οἱ μὲν ἦσαν ἐπὶ τὴν διαίρεσιν, μάλα ἐπὶ τῷ  
 ἵππικῷ γελῶντες· ὁ δὲ τοὺς ταξιάρχους καλέσας ἐκέλευσε  
 τοὺς ἵππους λαμβάνειν καὶ τὰ τῶν ἵππων



τοὺς ἐμοί, ὦ Ὑρκάνιοι, |voluntary, optional |τούτους |drive, meet, follow  
 πάντας ἀμέμπτους ποιεῖτε εἰς δύναμιν. ὑμεῖς δ' αὖ,  
 ὦ Μῆδοι, τοὺς πρώτους συμμάχους γενομένους |honor  
 τούτους, ὅπως εὖ |βουλευέω?: (mp) τό, deliberate; or, ἡν φίλοι  
 |βουλευέω?: (mp) to deliberate  
 γενόμενοι. |distribute δὲ πάντων τὸ μέρος καὶ τῷ παρὰ  
 Κναξάρου |be present, ὦ τε καὶ τοῖς μετ' αὐτοῦ· καὶ  
 |have arrived  
 συνδιαμένειν δὲ |summon, exhort, ἵς ἐμοὶ τοῦτο |seem good also  
 |(pass) repent  
 ἵνα καὶ Κναξάρῃ μᾶλλον εἰδὼς περὶ ἐκάστου |announce, or-  
 |der, promise  
 τὰ ὄντα. Πέρσαις δ', ἔφη, τοῖς μετ' ἐμοῦ, ὅσα ἂν περιττὰ  
 γένηται ὑμῶν καλῶς |equip, build , ταῦτα ἀρκέσει·  
 καὶ γάρ, ἔφη, |very |somehow οὐκ ἐν χλιδῇ |nurture  
 ἀλλὰ χωριτικῶς, ὥστε |equal ἂν ἡμῶν |laugh at, deride , εἴ  
 τι |revered, ἥρῳ |put around, ὥσπερ, ἔφη, οἶδ' ὅτι πολὺν ὑμῖν  
 |endow with  
 |laughter |furnish καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ἵππων |sit , οἶμαι δ',  
 ἔφη, καὶ ἐπὶ τῆς γῆς |fall down  
 Ἐκ τούτου οἱ μὲν ἦσαν ἐπὶ τὴν διαίρεσιν, |very ἐπὶ τῷ  
 |of horses , ἐλῶντες· ὁ δὲ τοὺς |military rank καλέσας ἐκέλευσε  
 τοὺς ἵππους λαμβάνειν καὶ τὰ τῶν ἵππων

Medes who followed us of their own free will shall have no cause to find fault with their own portion. And the Medes on their side must show honour to the first allies we have won, and make them feel their decision was wise when they chose us for their friends. And be sure to give a share of everything to the messenger who came from Cyaxares and to his retinue; persuade him to stay on with us, say that I would like it, and that he could tell Cyaxares all the better how matters stood. As for my Persians," he added, "we shall be quite content with what is left over, after you are all provided for; we are not used to luxury, we were brought up in a very simple fashion, and I think you would laugh at us if you saw us tricked out in grand attire, just as I am sure you will when you see us seated on our horses, or, rather, rolling off them."

So they dispersed to make the distribution, in great mirth over the thought of the riding; and then Cyrus called his

*vocabulary*

ἄημι blow

ἄλλοθεν from elsewhere ~alien

ἀριθμέω to count ~arithmetic

βέλτιστος best, noblest

βιάζω use force on, violate

γέρρον wicker object

διαλαμβάνω distribute

εἶδος -ους (n, 3) appearance, form  
~oid

ἐκλέγω pick, single out

ἐκφαίνω bring to light ~photon

ἐλεύθερος not enslaved

Ἑλλην Greek

ἐπιτήδειος fit, suitable

ἔπω (mid) follow, accompany; (act,  
uncommon) handle, take care of

ἡδομαι be pleased, enjoy ~hedonism

θώραξ -ηκος (m) breastplate ~thorax

ἵππόκομος with horsehair crest  
~hippo

ἰσόω (i) liken to

κατάραχω hold ready (sacrificial  
materials) ~oligarch

κῆρυξ -κος (m) henchman, functionary

κληρώω cast lots, assign

μάχαιρα knife, dagger

μέλω concern, interest, be one's  
responsibility

ξυστός lance, javelin

ὀμότιμος (i) equally honored

ὄπλον tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
~hoplite

ὀχέω carry; be afflicted with ~wagon

Πέρσης Persian

πόθεν from where?

προφαίνω show; pass: appear  
~photon

σκεῦος -εος (n, 3) thing, tool, vessel

στράτευμα -τος (n, 3) army ~strategy

συνίστημι unite; confront in battle

~station

ταξίαρχος military rank

τάξις -εως (f) arrangement, military  
unit

ὑποφέρω carry out of danger ~bear

φιλός (i) naked, bare ~epsilon

σκεύη καὶ τοὺς ἵπποκόμους, καὶ ἀριθμήσαντας διαλαβεῖν κληρωσαμένους εἰς τάξιν ἴσους ἐκάστοις. αὐθις δὲ ὁ Κῦρος ἀνειπεῖν ἐκέλευσεν, εἴ τις εἴη ἐν τῷ Ἀσσυρίων ἢ Σύρων ἢ Ἀραβίων στρατεύματι ἀνὴρ δοῦλος ἢ Μήδων ἢ Περσῶν ἢ Βακτρίων ἢ Καρῶν ἢ Κιλικῶν ἢ Ἑλλήνων ἢ ἄλλοθέν ποθεν βεβιασμένος, ἐκφαίνεσθαι. οἱ δὲ ἀκούσαντες τοῦ κήρυκος ἄσμενοι πολλοὶ προυφάνησαν· ὁ δ' ἐκλεξάμενος αὐτῶν τοὺς τὰ εἶδη βελτίστους ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἐλευθέρους αὐτοὺς ὄντας δεῖσει ὅπλα ὑποφέρειν ἃ ἂν αὐτοῖς διδώσι· τὰ δ' ἐπιτήδεια ὅπως ἂν ἔχωσιν ἔφη αὐτῷ μελήσειν. καὶ εὐθὺς ἄγων πρὸς τοὺς ταξιάρχους συνέστησεν αὐτούς, καὶ ἐκέλευσε τά τε γέρρα καὶ τὰς ψιλὰς μαχαίρας τούτοις δοῦναι, ὅπως ἔχοντες σὺν τοῖς ἵπποις ἔπωνται, καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια τούτοις ὥσπερ καὶ τοῖς μετ' αὐτοῦ Πέρσαις λαμβάνειν, αὐτοὺς δὲ τοὺς θώρακας καὶ τὰ ξυστὰ ἔχοντας αἰεὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ἵππων ὀχεῖσθαι, καὶ αὐτὸς οὕτω ποιῶν κατῆρχεν, ἐπὶ δὲ τοὺς πεζοὺς τῶν ὁμοτίμων ἀνθ' αὐτοῦ ἕκαστον καθιστάναι ἄλλον ἄρχοντα τῶν ὁμοτίμων.

|thing, tool, vessel |with horsehair, crest |to count |distribute  
 |cast lots, assign εἰς τάξιν ἴσους ἐκάστοις. αὐτῆς δὲ ὁ Κῦρος  
 ἀνειπεῖν ἐκέλευσεν, εἴ τις εἴη ἐν τῷ Ἀσσυρίων ἢ Σύρων ἢ  
 Ἀραβίων |army ἀνὴρ δοῦλος ἢ Μήδων ἢ Περσῶν  
 ἢ Βακτρίων ἢ Καρῶν ἢ Κιλικῶν ἢ |Greek ἢ |from elsewhere  
 ποθεν |βιάζω?: use|bring to light . οἱ δὲ ἀκούσαντες τοῦ  
 κήρυκος |force on; or |βιάζω?: use  
 |be pleased, enjoy. |show; pass: appear ὃ |pick, single  
 |force on |out  
 αὐτῶν τοὺς τὰ |form |best, noblest ἔλεγεν ὅτι |not enslaved  
 αὐτοὺς ὄντας δεήσει ὅπλα |carry away ἃ ἂν αὐτοῖς διδῶσι·  
 τὰ δ' |fit, suitable ὅπως ἂν ἔχωσιν ἔφη αὐτῷ μελήσειν. καὶ  
 εὐθὺς ἄγων πρὸς τοὺς |military rank |unite; confront ἵτους, καὶ  
 |in battle  
 ἐκέλευσε τὰ τε |wicker καὶ τὰς |naked, |knife τούτοις  
 |object |bare  
 δοῦναι, ὅπως ἔχοντες σὺν τοῖς ἵπποις ἔπωνται, καὶ τὰ  
 |fit, suitable τούτοις ὥσπερ καὶ τοῖς μετ' αὐτοῦ Πέρσαις  
 λαμβάνειν, αὐτοὺς δὲ τοὺς |breastplate καὶ τὰ |lance, ἔχοντας  
 |javelin  
 αἰεὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ἵππων |carry; be af- καὶ αὐτὸς οὕτω ποιῶν  
 |flicted with  
 |hold ready ἐπὶ δὲ τοὺς πεζοὺς τῶν |equally ἀνθ' αὐτοῦ  
 |honored  
 ἕκαστον καθιστάναι ἄλλον ἄρχοντα τῶν |equally  
 |honored

own officers and bade them take the horses and their gear, and the grooms with them, number them all, and then distribute them by lot in equal shares for each division. Finally he sent out another proclamation, saying that if there was any slave among the Syrians, Assyrians, or Arabians who was a Mede, a Persian, a Bactrian, a Carian, a Cilician, or a Hellene, or a member of any other nation, and who had been forcibly enrolled, he was to come forward and declare himself. And when they heard the herald, many came forward gladly, and out of their number Cyrus selected the strongest and fairest, and told them they were now free, and would be required to bear arms, with which he would furnish them, and as to necessities, he would see himself that they were not stinted. With that he brought them to the officers and had them enrolled forthwith, saying they were to be armed with shields and light swords, so as to follow the troopers, and were to receive supplies exactly as if they were his own Persians. The Persian officers themselves, wearing corslets and carrying lances, were for the future to appear on horseback, he himself setting the example, and each one was to appoint another of the Peers to lead the infantry for him.

*vocabulary***αἰτέω** ask for ~etiology**ἄπαις** childless**ἄρσῃν** male**δεσπότης** -ου (m, 1) master, despot**ἕζομαι** act: set, seat; pass: sit down, sit

up ~sit

**ἐπάρχω** pass drops of libation

~oligarch

**ἔχθιστος** most hated ~external**θεραπείη** -ας service, tending**ἱκέτης** -ου (m, 1) suppliant, refugee**ἵππικός** of horses ~hippo**ἰσχυρός** (ῥ) strong, forceful, violent**κατακαίω** burn down ~caustic**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon**ξυστός** lance, javelin**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

**παραλαμβάνω** receive, undertake,  
associate with**πρεσβύτες** -ου (ῥ, m, 1) old person**προσπίπτω** attack; befall; kow-tow**τιμωρός** (ι) avenging**ὕπηρέτης** -ου (m, 1) servant, officer**χίλιοι** (ιι) thousand ~kilo-

## 4.6

Οἱ μὲν δὴ ἀμφὶ ταῦτα εἶχον. Γωβρύας δ' ἐν τούτῳ παρῆν Ἀσσύριος πρεσβύτης ἀνὴρ ἐφ' ἵππου σὺν ἱππικῇ θεραπείᾳ· εἶχον δὲ πάντες τὰ ἐφίππων ὅπλα. καὶ οἱ μὲν ἐπὶ τῷ τὰ ὅπλα παραλαμβάνειν τεταγμένοι ἐκέλευον παραδιδόναι τὰ ξυστά, ὅπως κατακαίοιεν ὥσπερ τᾶλλα. ὁ δὲ Γωβρύας εἶπεν ὅτι Κῦρον πρῶτον βούλοιτο ἰδεῖν· καὶ οἱ ὑπηρέται τοὺς μὲν ἄλλους ἱππέας αὐτοῦ κατέλιπον, τὸν δὲ Γωβρύαν ἄγουσι πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον. ὁ δ' ὡς εἶδε τὸν Κῦρον, ἔλεξεν ὦδε· ὦ δέσποτα, ἐγὼ εἶμι τὸ μὲν γένος Ἀσσύριος· ἔχω δὲ καὶ τείχος ἰσχυρὸν καὶ χώρας ἐπάρχῳ πολλῆς· καὶ ἵππον ἔχω εἰς χιλίαν, ἣν τῷ τῶν Ἀσσυρίων βασιλεῖ παρειχόμεν καὶ φίλος ἦν ἐκείνῳ ὡς μάλιστα· ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐκείνος τέθνηκεν ὑφ' ὑμῶν ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς ὢν, ὁ δὲ παῖς ἐκείνου τὴν ἀρχὴν ἔχει ἔχθιστος ὢν ἐμοί, ἤκω πρὸς σέ καὶ ἰκέτης προσπίπτω καὶ δίδωμί σοι ἑμᾶντὸν δοῦλον καὶ σύμμαχον, σέ δὲ τιμωρὸν αἰτουῦμαι ἐμοὶ γενέσθαι· καὶ παῖδα οὕτως ὡς δυνατόν σε ποιουῦμαι· ἅπαις δ' εἰμὶ ἀρρένων παίδων. ὅς



## 4.6

Οἱ μὲν δὴ ἀμφὶ ταῦτα εἶχον. Γωβρύας δ' ἐν τούτῳ παρῆν

Ἀσσύριος |old person ἀνὴρ ἐφ' ἵππου σὺν |of |service,  
|horses |tending

εἶχον δὲ πάντες τὰ ἐφίππων |tool . καὶ οἱ μὲν ἐπὶ τῷ τὰ

|tool |receive, undertake,|arrange ἐκέλευον |hand over  
|associate with

τὰ |lance, , ὅπως |burn down ὥσπερ τὰλλα. ὁ δὲ Γωβρύας  
|javelin

εἶπεν ὅτι Κῦρον πρῶτον βούλοιτο ἰδεῖν· καὶ οἱ |servant,  
|officer

τοὺς μὲν ἄλλους |rider αὐτοῦ |leave behind, ὃν δὲ Γωβρύαν  
|abandon

ἄγουσι πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον. ὁ δ' ὡς εἶδε τὸν Κῦρον, ἔλεξεν

|thus ὦ |master, , ἐγὼ εἰμι τὸ μὲν |race, kind, 'genera-  
|despot |tion, birth, offspring

καὶ |outdoor|strong, force-|place ἐπάρχω πολλῆς· καὶ ἵππον  
|wall |ful, violent

ἔχω εἰς |thousand, τῷ τῶν Ἀσσυρίων βασιλεῖ |furnish

καὶ φίλος ἦν ἐκείνῳ ὡς μάλιστα· ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐκείνος τέθνηκεν

ὑφ' ὑμῶν ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς ὢν, ὁ δὲ παῖς ἐκείνου τὴν ἀρχὴν ἔχει

ἔχθιστος ὢν ἐμοί, ἤκω πρὸς σέ καὶ |suppliant, attack; befall; καὶ  
|refugee |kow-tow

δίδωμί σοι ἐμαυτὸν |born enslaved, ὑμμαχον, σέ δὲ |avenging  
|servile

|ask for ἐμοὶ γενέσθαι· καὶ παῖδα οὕτως ὡς |powerful, τε  
|possible

ποιούμαι· |childless' εἰμὶ |male παίδων. ὅς

## 4.6

While they were concerned with these matters, an old Assyrian prince, Gobryas by name, presented himself before Cyrus, mounted on horseback and with a mounted retinue behind him, all of them armed as cavalry. The Persian officers who were appointed to receive the weapons bade them hand over their lances and have them burnt with the rest, but Gobryas said he wished to see Cyrus first. At that the adjutants led him in, but they made his escort stay where they were. When the old man came before Cyrus, he addressed him at once, saying:

"My lord, I am an Assyrian by birth; I have a strong fortress in my territory, and I rule over a wide domain; I have cavalry at my command, two thousand three hundred of them, all of which I offered to the king of Assyria; and if ever he had a friend, that friend was I. But he has fallen at your hands, the gallant heart, and his son, who is my bitterest foe, reigns in his stead. Therefore I have come to you, a suppliant at your feet. I am ready to be your slave and your ally, and I implore you to be my avenger. You yourself will be a son to me, for I have no male children now. He whom I had, my only

*vocabulary***ἀκοντίζω** throw, (+gen) at ~acute**ἀνιάω** (i) vex**ἀνόσιος** unholy**ἀποπέμπω** send away ~pomp**ἄρα** interrogative pcl**ἄρκτος** (f) bear**γαμέτης** -ου (m, 1) spouse**δεσπότης** -ου (m, 1) master, despot**δῆθεν** strong form of δῆ**δίς** twice**εὐδαίμων** blessed with a good genius**ἐφεξῆς** in order, in a row**θαυμαστός** wonderful; admirable**θήρα** hunt ~fierce**θηράω** hunt, chase**καταβάλλω** throw down, cast off

~ballistic

**κατεργάζομαι** achieve; cultivate; get; kill**κατίσχω** control, keep; land ~ischemia**κράτος** strength, power; victory  
~democracy**κρείσσω** more powerful; better**λάω** grip, pin?**λέων** lion**μῆποτε** absolutely never**οφείλω** owe, should, if only**παρατυγχάνω** happen to be present**σκότος** darkness, shadow ~shadow**συνθηράω** hunt together**τιμάω** (i) honor, exalt**τιμόω** honor, exalt**φθόνος** malice, envy**φρόνις** -τος (f) ideas, information

~frenzy

γὰρ ἦν μοι μόνος καὶ καλὸς κάγαθός, ὦ δέσποτα, καὶ  
 ἐμὲ φιλῶν καὶ τιμῶν ὥσπερ ἂν εὐδαίμονα πατέρα παῖς  
 τιμῶν τιθείη, τοῦτον ὁ νῦν βασιλεὺς οὗτος καλέσαντος  
 τοῦ τότε βασιλέως, πατρὸς δὲ τοῦ νῦν, ὡς δώσοντος  
 τὴν θυγατέρα τῷ ἐμῷ παιδί, ἐγὼ μὲν ἀπεπεμφάμην μέγα  
 φρονῶν ὅτι δῆθεν τῆς βασιλέως θυγατρὸς ὀψοίμην τὸν  
 ἐμὸν υἱὸν γαμέτην· ὁ δὲ νῦν βασιλεὺς εἰς θήραν αὐτὸν  
 παρακαλέσας καὶ ἀνεῖς αὐτῷ θηρᾶν ἀνὰ κράτος, ὡς πολὺ  
 κρείττων αὐτοῦ ἵππεὺς ἡγούμενος εἶναι, ὁ μὲν ὡς φίλῳ  
 συνεθήρα, φανείσης δ' ἄρκτου διώκοντες ἀμφοτέροι, ὁ μὲν  
 νῦν ἄρχων οὗτος ἀκοντίσας ἤμαρτεν, ὡς μήποτε ὥφελεν,  
 ὁ δ' ἐμὸς παῖς βαλὼν, οὐδὲν δέον, καταβάλλει τὴν ἄρκτον.  
 καὶ τότε μὲν δὴ ἀνιαθεὶς ἄρ' οὗτος κατέσχευ ὑπὸ σκότου  
 τὸν φθόνον· ὡς δὲ πάλιν λέοντος παρατυχόντος ὁ μὲν αὖ  
 ἤμαρτεν, οὐδὲν οἶμαι θαυμαστὸν παθὼν, ὁ δ' αὖ ἐμὸς παῖς  
 αὐθις τυχὼν κατειργάσατό τε τὸν λέοντα καὶ εἶπεν· Ἄρα  
 βέβληκα δις ἐφεξῆς καὶ καταβέβληκα θήρα ἑκατεράκις, ἐν  
 τούτῳ δὴ οὐκέτι κατίσχει ὁ ἀνόσιος τὸν φθόνον, ἀλλ'

γὰρ ἦν μοι μόνος καὶ καλὸς ἀγαθός, ὦ <sup>|master,</sup> <sup>|despot</sup> , καὶ  
 ἐμὲ φιλῶν καὶ τιμῶν ὥσπερ ἂν <sup>|blessed with a</sup> <sup>|good genius</sup> <sup>ἰτέρα παῖς</sup>  
 τιμῶν τιθείη, τοῦτον ὁ νῦν βασιλεὺς οὗτος καλέσαντος  
 τοῦ τότε βασιλέως, πατρὸς δὲ τοῦ νῦν, ὡς δώσοντος  
 τὴν θυγατέρα τῷ ἐμῷ παιδί, ἐγὼ μὲν <sup>|send away</sup> μέγα  
 φρονῶν ὅτι <sup>|strong form of</sup> <sup>δὴ</sup> <sup>ἰέως</sup> θυγατρὸς ὀψοίμην τὸν  
 ἐμὸν υἱὸν <sup>|spouse</sup> ὁ δὲ νῦν βασιλεὺς εἰς <sup>|hunt</sup> αὐτὸν  
 παρακαλέσας καὶ ἀνείς αὐτῷ <sup>|hunt,</sup> <sup>|chase</sup> <sup>ἀνὰ</sup> <sup>|strength,</sup> <sup>|power;</sup> <sup>ἰκλῶ</sup> <sup>vic-</sup>  
 κρείττων αὐτοῦ <sup>|rider</sup> ἡγούμενος εἶναι, <sup>|tory</sup> ὁ μὲν ὡς φίλῳ  
<sup>|hunt together</sup> ἀνείσης δ' <sup>|bear</sup> διώκοντες ἀμφοτέροι, ὁ μὲν  
 νῦν ἄρχων οὗτος <sup>|throw,</sup> <sup>(+gen) at</sup> <sup>|miss, fail, lose;</sup> <sup>|absolutely</sup> <sup>ᾤφελεν,</sup>  
<sup>|sin</sup> <sup>|never</sup>  
 ὁ δ' ἐμὸς παῖς βαλὼν, οὐδὲν δέον, <sup>|throw down, cast</sup> <sup>|bear</sup>  
<sup>|off</sup>  
 καὶ τότε μὲν δὴ <sup>|vex</sup> ἄρ' οὗτος <sup>|restrain; stop; continue; keep; take</sup>  
<sup>|possession</sup>  
 τὸν <sup>|malice, envy</sup> δὲ πάλιν λέοντος <sup>|happen to be present</sup> <sup>ἔν</sup> αὐ  
<sup>|miss, fail,</sup> <sup>οὐδὲν οἶμαι</sup> <sup>|wonderful;</sup> <sup>παθῶν, ὁ δ' αὖ ἐμὸς παῖς</sup>  
<sup>|lose; sin</sup> <sup>|admirable</sup>  
 αὐθις τυχὼν <sup>|achieve;</sup> <sup>culti-</sup> <sup>τε τὸν λέοντα καὶ εἶπεν</sup> <sup>|interrogative pcl</sup>  
<sup>|vate; get; kill</sup>  
 βέβληκα <sup>|twice in order, in a</sup> <sup>|throw down, cast off</sup> <sup>ἑκατέρakis, ἐν</sup>  
<sup>|row</sup>  
 τούτῳ δὴ οὐκέτι <sup>|control, keep</sup> <sup>|unholy</sup> τὸν <sup>|malice, envy</sup>

son, he was beautiful and brave, my lord, and loved me and honoured me as a father rejoices to be loved. And this vile king—his father, my old master, had sent for my son, meaning to give him his own daughter in marriage; and I let my boy go, with high hopes and a proud heart, thinking that when I saw him again the king's daughter would be his bride. And the prince, who is now king, invited him to the chase, and bade him do his best, for he thought himself far the finer horseman of the two. So they hunted together, side by side, as though they were friends, and suddenly a bear appeared, and the two of them gave chase, and the king's son let fly his javelin, but alas! he missed his aim, and then my son threw—oh, that he never had!—and laid the creature low. The prince was stung to the quick, though for the moment he kept his rancour hidden. But, soon after that, they roused a lion, and then he missed a second time—no unusual thing for him, I imagine—but my son's spear went home, and he brought the beast down, and cried, 'See, I have shot but twice, and killed each time!' And at this the monster could not contain his jealousy; he snatched a spear from one of

*vocabulary*

ἀγαπητός beloved

ἄημι blow

αἰχμή spear point ~acute

ἀρπάζω carry off, seize ~harpoon

ἄρτι at the same time

ἀφαιρέω take away ~heresy

βιοτεύω live, live on

γῆρας -ος (n, 3) old age

δῆλος visible, conspicuous

διάγω lead through; pass a time

~demagogue

διάκειμαι be in a condition

ἔπω (mid) follow, accompany; (act, uncommon) handle, take care of

ἐρῆμος empty

εὖνοος kindly; favorable

θάπτω bury ~epitaph

κατακαίνω kill

μεταμέλομαι (impers.+dat.) cause regret to; (mp) regret

νυμφίος bridegroom

παίζω play ~pediatrician

παίω hit

πένθος -εος (n, 3) grief, misfortune

~Nepenthe

πότε when?

πρόσθεν before (time, space)

προστίθηναι add; impose; (mp) agree; side with ~thesis

πώποτε never

στέρνον breast, chest, seat of feelings

~sternum

συμφορά collecting; accident, misfortune

τάλας wretched, miserable ~talent

τιμωρία (ti) vengeance, punishment

ὕπηρετέω serve

φαιδρός beaming ~photon

φανερός visible, conspicuous ~photon

φιλικός friendly

φονεύς -ως (m) killer ~offend

αἰχμήν παρά τινος τῶν ἐπομένων ἀρπάσας, παῖσας εἰς  
 τὰ στέρνα τὸν μόνον μοι καὶ φίλον παῖδα ἀφείλετο  
 τὴν ψυχὴν. καὶ γὰρ ἐγὼ μὲν ὁ τάλας νεκρὸν ἀντὶ νυμφίου  
 ἐκομισάμην καὶ ἔθαψα τηλικούτος ὢν ἄρτι γενειάσκοντα  
 τὸν ἄριστον παῖδα τὸν ἀγαπητόν· ὁ δὲ κατακανὼν ὥσπερ  
 ἐχθρὸν ἀπολέσας οὔτε μεταμελόμενος πώποτε φανερός  
 ἐγένετο οὔτε ἀντὶ τοῦ κακοῦ ἔργου τιμῆς τινος ἠξίωσε  
 τὸν κατὰ γῆς. ὃ γε μὴν πατὴρ αὐτοῦ καὶ συνώκτισέ  
 με καὶ δῆλος ἦν συναχθόμενός μοι τῇ συμφορᾷ. ἐγὼ  
 οὖν, εἰ μὲν ἔζη ἐκεῖνος, οὐκ ἂν ποτε ἦλθον πρὸς σὲ ἐπὶ  
 τῷ ἐκείνου κακῷ· πολλὰ γὰρ φιλικὰ ἔπαθον ὑπ' ἐκείνου  
 καὶ ὑπηρέτησα ἐκείνῳ· ἐπεὶ δ' εἰς τὸν τοῦ ἐμοῦ παιδὸς  
 φονέα ἢ ἀρχὴν περιήκει, οὐκ ἂν ποτε τούτῳ ἐγὼ δυναίμην  
 εὖνους γενέσθαι, οὐδὲ οὗτος ἐμὲ εὖ οἶδ' ὅτι φίλον ἂν ποτε  
 ἠγήσαιτο. οἶδε γὰρ ὡς ἐγὼ πρὸς αὐτὸν ἔχω καὶ ὡς  
 πρόσθεν φαιδρῶς βιοτεύων νυνὶ διάκειμαι, ἔρημος ὢν καὶ  
 διὰ πένθους τὸ γῆρας διάγων. εἰ οὖν σύ με δέχηται καὶ ἐλπίδα  
 τινὰ λάβοιμι τῷ φίλῳ παιδί τιμωρίας ἂν τινος μετὰ σοῦ



|spear παρά τινος τῶν ἐπομένων |carry off, seize ἴσας εἰς  
|point

τὰ |chest τὸν μόνον μοι καὶ φίλον παῖδα |take away

τὴν ψυχὴν. καὶ γὰρ μὲν ὁ |wretched corpse ἀντὶ |bridegroom  
|miserable

|tend; bring|bury τηλικούτος ὢν |at the same time ἴτα  
|back/away; (mp)  
|travel

τὸν ἀριστον παῖδα τὸν |beloved ὁ δὲ |kill ὥσπερ

|hated, distasteful ἴς οὔτε |(impers.+dat.) |never |visible,  
|cause regret to; |conspicuous  
(mp) regret

ἐγένετο οὔτε ἀντὶ τοῦ κακοῦ ἔργου |honor, τινος |consider worthy, fit-  
|value |ting

τὸν κατὰ γῆς. ὁ γε μὴν πατὴρ αὐτοῦ καὶ συνώκτισέ

με καὶ |visible, ἵ, |υναχθόμενός μοι τῇ |collecting; accj-`  
|conspicuous |dent, misfortune

οὖν, εἰ μὲν ἔζη ἐκεῖνος, οὐκ ἂν ποτε ἦλθον πρὸς σέ ἐπὶ

τῷ ἐκείνου κακῷ· πολλὰ γὰρ |friendly ἔπαθον ὑπ' ἐκείνου

καὶ |serve ἐκείνῳ· ἐπεὶ δ' εἰς τὸν τοῦ ἐμοῦ παιδὸς

|killer ἡ ἀρχὴ περιήκει, οὐκ ἂν ποτε τούτῳ ἐγὼ δυναίμην

εὖνους γενέσθαι, οὐδὲ οὗτος ἐμὲ εὖ οἶδ' ὅτι φίλον ἂν ποτε

ἡγήσαιτο. οἶδε γὰρ ὡς ἐγὼ πρὸς αὐτὸν ἔχω καὶ ὡς

πρόσθεν |beaming |live, live on ὑνὶ |be in a condition ἴς ὢν καὶ

διὰ |grief τὸ |old age |lead through; ἵν' σύ με δέχη καὶ |hope  
|pass a time

τινὰ λάβοιμι τῷ φίλῳ παιδὶ τιμωρίας ἂν τινος μετὰ σοῦ

his followers and ran my son through the body, my only son, my darling, and took his life. And I, unhappy that I am, I, who thought to welcome a bride-groom, carried home a corpse. I, who am old, buried my boy with the first down on his chin, my brave boy, my well-beloved. And his assassin acted as though it were an enemy that he had done to death. He never showed one sign of remorse, he never paid one tribute of honour to the dead, in atonement for his cruel deed. Yet his own father pitied me, and showed that he could share the burden of my grief. Had he lived, my old master, I would never have come to you to do him harm; many a kindness have I received from him, and many a service have I done him. But now that his kingdom has descended to my boy's murderer—I could never be loyal to that man, and he, I know, could never regard me as a friend. He knows too well how I feel towards him, and how, after my former splendour, I pass my days in mourning, growing old in loneliness and grief. If you can receive me, if you can give me some hope of vengeance for my dear son,

*vocabulary***ἀγαπητός** beloved**ἄημι** blow**αἰσχύνω** (ῶ) spoil, disgrace, disfigure, mar**ἀνιάω** (ῖ) vex**ἀποφέρω** carry off, carry back ~bear**βασιλεύω** be king**γάμος** wedding, sex ~bigamy**γρόω** weep, mourn**δασμός** portion, tax, tribute**ἰκετεύω** approach to beg**ἰκέτης** -ου (m, 1) suppliant, refugee**ἵκω** (ῖ) go, arrive**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle

~hoplite

**ὅποι** to which place**παρθένος** (f) girl, virgin ~Parthenon**πρόσθεν** before (time, space)**προστίθηναι** add; impose; (mp) agree; side with ~thesis**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war, campaign ~strategy**συστρατεύω** join in an expedition**τελευτάω** bring about, finish ~apostle**ὑπηρετέω** serve**ὑπισχνέομαι** promise, agree to do ~ischemia**φονεύς** -ως (m) killer ~offend**φρόνις** -τος (f) ideas, information ~frenzy**ώθέω** push**ώραῖος** ripe; young adult**ὡσαύτως** in the same way

τυχεῖν, καὶ ἀνηβῆσαι ἂν πάλιν δοκῶ μοι καὶ οὔτε ζῶν ἂν  
 ἔτι αἰσχυνοίμην οὔτε ἀποθνήσκων ἀνιώμενος ἂν τελευτᾶν  
 δοκῶ. ὁ μὲν οὕτως εἶπε· Κῦρος δ' ἀπεκρίνατο· Ἄλλ'  
 ἦνπερ, ὦ Γωβρύα, καὶ φρονῶν φαίνη ὅσαπερ λέγεις πρὸς  
 ἡμᾶς, δέχομαί τε ἰκέτην σε καὶ τιμώρησίν σοι τοῦ παιδὸς  
 σὺν θεοῖς ὑπισχνοῦμαι. λέξον δέ μοι, ἔφη, εἴαν σοι ταῦτα  
 ποιῶμεν καὶ τὰ τεῖχῃ σε ἔχειν ἐῶμεν καὶ τὴν χώραν καὶ τὰ  
 ὄπλα καὶ τὴν δύναμιν ἦνπερ πρόσθεν εἶχες, σὺ ἡμῖν τί ἀντὶ  
 τούτων ὑπηρετήσεις; ὁ δὲ εἶπε· Τὰ μὲν τεῖχῃ, ὅταν ἔλθῃς,  
 οἰκόν σοι παρέξω· δασμὸν δὲ τῆς χώρας ὅνπερ ἔφερον  
 ἐκείνῳ σοὶ ἀποίσω, καὶ ὅποι ἂν στρατεύῃ συστρατεύσομαι  
 τὴν ἐκ τῆς χώρας δύναμιν ἔχων. ἔστι δέ μοι, ἔφη, καὶ  
 θυγάτηρ παρθένος ἀγαπητὴ γάμου ἤδη ὡραία, ἣν ἐγὼ  
 πρόσθεν μὲν ὥμην τῷ νῦν βασιλεύοντι γυναῖκα τρέφειν·  
 νῦν δὲ αὐτὴ τέ με ἡ θυγάτηρ πολλὰ γοωμένη ἰκέτευσε μὴ  
 δοῦναι αὐτὴν τῷ τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ φονεῖ, ἐγὼ τε ὡσαύτως  
 γιγνώσκω. νῦν δέ σοι δίδωμι βουλευσασθαι καὶ περὶ  
 ταύτης οὔτως ὥσπερ ἂν καὶ ἐγὼ βουλεύων περὶ σοῦ

τυχεῖν, καὶ ἀνηβῆσαι ἂν πάλιν δοκῶ μοι καὶ οὔτε ζῶν ἂν  
 ἔτι |spoil, disgrace οὔτε ἀποθνήσκων |vex ἂν |bring  
 δοκῶ. ὁ μὲν οὕτως εἶπε· Κῦρος δ' ἀπεκρίνατο |finish Ἀλλ'  
 ἦνπερ, ὦ Γωβρύα, καὶ φρονῶν φαίνη ὅσαπερ λέγεις πρὸς  
 ἡμᾶς, |accept, re- |ceive, await |ικέτην σε καὶ τιμώρησίν σοι τοῦ παιδὸς  
 σὺν θεοῖς |promise, agree. λέξον δέ μοι, ἔφη, ἔάν σοι ταῦτα  
 ποιῶμεν καὶ τὰ |outdoor wall |...ν ἐώμεν καὶ τὴν |place καὶ τὰ  
 |tool καὶ τὴν δύναμιν ἦνπερ πρόσθεν εἶχες, σὺ ἡμῖν τί ἀντὶ  
 τούτων ὑπηρετήσεις; ὁ δὲ εἶπε· Τὰ μὲν |out- |, |whenever ^ |s,  
 οἰκόν σοι |furnish |portion, |τῆς |place |wall ὅνπερ ἔφερον  
 |tax, tribute  
 ἐκείνῳ σοὶ |carry off , καὶ |to which |make |an |join in an expedi-  
 |place |place |expedi- |tion  
 τὴν ἐκ τῆς |place δύναμιν ἔχων, ἔστι δέ μοι, ἔφη, καὶ  
 |campaign  
 θυγάτηρ |girl, virgin |beloved |wedding, |sex |ripe; , ἦν ἐγὼ  
 |young  
 πρόσθεν μὲν ὦμην τῷ νῦν |be king γυναῖκα |adult |nurture  
 νῦν δὲ αὐτὴ τέ με ἡ θυγάτηρ πολλὰ |weep, |approach to |beg  
 |mourn  
 δοῦναι αὐτὴν τῷ τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ |killer , ἐγὼ τε |in the same way  
 γιγνώσκω. νῦν δέ σοι δίδωμι |(mp) to deliberate |...ὲν περὶ  
 ταύτης οὕτως ὥσπερ ἂν καὶ ἐγὼ |(mp) to deliberate - οὔ

I think I should grow young again, I should not feel ashamed to live, and when I came to die I should not die in utter wretchedness.”

So he spoke, and Cyrus answered:

”Gobryas, if your heart be set towards us as you say, I receive you as my suppliant, and I promise, God helping me, to avenge your son. But tell me,” he added, ”if we do this for you, and if we suffer you to keep your stronghold, your land, your arms, and the power which you had, how will you serve us in return?”

And the old man answered:

”My stronghold shall be yours, to live in as often as you come to me; the tribute which I used to pay to Assyria shall be paid to you; and whenever you march out to war, I will march at your side with the men from my own land. Moreover, I have a daughter, a well-beloved maiden, ripe for marriage; once I thought of bringing her up to be the bride of the man who is now king; but she besought me herself, with tears, not to give her to her brother’s murderer, and I have no mind to oppose her. And now I will put her in your hands, to deal with as I shall deal

*vocabulary***ἀληθεύω** speak truth; be true**αὐλίζομαι** live, lodge at**αὔριον** tomorrow**δεξιὰ** right-hand ~dextrous**ἐκπληρόω** fill, fulfill**ἐνδέω** tie to, entangle; lack**ἐξαιρέω** pick, steal; dedicate; destroy  
~heresy**ἐπέρομαι** ask as well; ask then**ἡγεμών** -όνος (m, 3) leader, guide,  
chief ~hegemony**καταλιμπάνω** leave behind, abandon**κράτιστος** best**μάρτυς** witness**οἶχομαι** come, go, leave, be gone**ὄπλον** tool, weapon, ship's tackle  
~hoplite**περισσός** prodigious, superfluous**πόσος** how many, much, far?**προσλαμβάνω** add, borrow, take hold,  
help**σκηνή** tent; stage**στρατεύω** make an expedition, war,  
campaign ~strategy

φαίνωμαι. οὕτω δὲ ὁ Κῦρος εἶπεν· Ἐπὶ τούτοις, ἔφη, ἐγὼ ἀληθευομένοις δίδωμί σοι τὴν ἐμὴν καὶ λαμβάνω τὴν σὴν δεξιάν· θεοὶ δ' ἡμῖν μάρτυρες ἔστων. ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα ἐπράχθη, ἀπιέναι τε κελεύει τὸν Γωβρύαν ἔχοντα τὰ ὄπλα καὶ ἐπήρετο πόση τις ὁδὸς ὡς αὐτὸν εἴη, ὡς ἥξων. ὁ δ' ἔλεγεν· Ἦν αὖριον ἷης πρῶ, τῇ ἐτέρᾳ ἂν αὐλίζιοι παρ' ἡμῖν.

Οὕτω δὲ οὗτος μὲν ὄχετο ἡγεμόνα καταλιπών. οἱ δὲ Μῆδοι παρήσαν, ἃ μὲν οἱ μάγοι ἔφρασαν τοῖς θεοῖς ἐξελεῖν, ἀποδόντες τοῖς μάγοις, Κύρῳ δ' ἐξηρηκότες τὴν καλλίστην σκηνὴν καὶ τὴν Σουσίδα γυναῖκα, ἥ καλλίστη δὴ λέγεται ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ γυνὴ γενέσθαι, καὶ μουσουργοὺς δὲ δύο τὰς κρατίστας, δεύτερον δὲ Κναζάρη τὰ δεύτερα, τοιαῦτα δὲ ἄλλα ὧν ἐδέοντο ἑαυτοῖς ἐκπληρώσαντες, ὡς μηδεὶς ἐνδεόμενος στρατεύονται· πάντα γὰρ ἦν πολλά. προσέλαβον δὲ καὶ Ὑρκάνιοι ὧν ἐδέοντο· ισόμοιρον δὲ ἐποίησαν καὶ τὸν παρὰ Κναζάρου ἄγγελον· τὰς δὲ περιττὰς σκηνὰς ὅσαι ἦσαν Κύρῳ παρέδοσαν, ὡς τοῖς



φαίνωμαι. οὕτω δὴ ὁ Κύρος εἶπεν· Ἐπὶ τούτοις, ἔφη,  
 ἐγὼ |speak truth; be |δίδωμί σοι τὴν ἐμὴν καὶ λαμβάνω τὴν  
 |true  
 σὴν δεξιάν· θεοὶ δ' ἡμῖν |witness ἔστων. ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα  
 ἐπράχθη, |be absent, go |ελεύει τὸν Γωβρύαν ἔχοντα τὰ |tool  
 |away, return  
 καὶ |ask as|how many, much, far? ἵπτον εἶη, ὥς |be present,  
 |well; ask |have arrived  
 ἔλεγεν· Ἦν |tomorrow, |πρῶ, τῇ ἐτέρᾳ ἂν |live, παρ'  
 |then |lodge at  
 ἡμῖν.

Οὕτω δὴ οὗτος μὲν |come, go|leader |leave behind, οἱ δὲ  
 |abandon  
 Μῆδοι παρήσαν, ἃ μὲν οἱ μάγοι |consider τοῖς θεοῖς  
 |pick, |repay τοῖς μάγοις, Κύρω δ' |pick, steal; dedi-,  
 |steal; |cate; destroy  
 |dedicate;  
 |destroy |tent; καὶ τὴν Σουσίδα γυναικα, ἣ καλλίστη  
 |stage  
 δὴ λέγεται ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ γυνὴ γενέσθαι, καὶ μουσουργοὺς  
 δὲ δύο τὰς |best |second δὲ Κναξάρη τὰ |second  
 τοιαῦτα δὲ ἄλλα ὧν ἐδέοντο ἑαυτοῖς |fill, fulfill, ὥς  
 μηδενὸς |tie to |make an expedition, ἵντα γὰρ ἦν πολλά.  
 |war, campaign  
 |add, borrow, δὲ καὶ Ὑρκάνιοι ὧν ἐδέοντο· ἰσόμοιρον  
 |take hold, help  
 δὲ ἐποίησαν καὶ τὸν παρὰ Κναξάρου |messenger τὰς δὲ  
 |prodigious, |tent; ὅσαι ἦσαν Κύρω |hand over, ὥς τοῖς  
 |superflu- |stage  
 |ous

with you.”

So it came to pass that Cyrus said, "On the faith that you have spoken truly and with true intent, I take your hand and I give you mine; let the gods be witness."

And when this was done, Cyrus bade the old man depart in peace, without surrendering his arms, and then he asked him how far away he lived, "Since," said he, "I am minded to visit you." And Gobryas answered, "If you set off early to-morrow, the next day you may lodge with us." With that he took his own departure, leaving a guide for Cyrus.

Then the Medes presented themselves; they had set apart for the gods what the Persian Priests thought right, and had left it in their hands, and they had chosen for Cyrus the finest of all the tents, and a lady from Susa, of whom the story says that in all Asia there was never a woman so fair as she, and two singing-girls with her, the most skilful among the musicians. The second choice was for Cyaxares, and for themselves they had taken their fill of all they could need on the campaign, since there was abundance of everything. The Hyrcanians had all they wanted too, and they made the messenger from Cyaxares share and share alike with them. The tents which were left over they delivered to Cyrus for his Persians; and the

*vocabulary*

**διαδίδωμι** distribute, send out

**ἐπειδάν** when, after

**νόμισμα** -τος (n, 3) institution; current

coin

**Πέρσης** Persian

**συλλέγω** collect, assemble ~legion

Πέρσαις γένοιτο. τὸ δὲ νόμισμα ἔφασαν, ἐπειδὰν ἅπαν  
συλλεχθῇ, διαδώσειν· καὶ διέδωκαν.

Πέρσαις γένοιτο. τὸ δὲ institution; ᾧ, ἄσαν, when, ἅπαν  
current coin | after  
|collect, , |distribute, send|distribute, send out  
|assemble |out

coined money they said should be divided as soon as it was all collected, and divided it